

**$\mu$ PD78083 SUBSERIES**

**8-BIT SINGLE-CHIP MICROCONTROLLER**

**$\mu$ PD78081     $\mu$ PD78081(A)  
 $\mu$ PD78082     $\mu$ PD78082(A)  
 $\mu$ PD78P083    $\mu$ PD78P083(A)  
                   $\mu$ PD78P081(A2)**

## NOTES FOR CMOS DEVICES

### ① PRECAUTION AGAINST ESD FOR SEMICONDUCTORS

Note:

Strong electric field, when exposed to a MOS device, can cause destruction of the gate oxide and ultimately degrade the device operation. Steps must be taken to stop generation of static electricity as much as possible, and quickly dissipate it once, when it has occurred. Environmental control must be adequate. When it is dry, humidifier should be used. It is recommended to avoid using insulators that easily build static electricity. Semiconductor devices must be stored and transported in an anti-static container, static shielding bag or conductive material. All test and measurement tools including work bench and floor should be grounded. The operator should be grounded using wrist strap. Semiconductor devices must not be touched with bare hands. Similar precautions need to be taken for PW boards with semiconductor devices on it.

### ② HANDLING OF UNUSED INPUT PINS FOR CMOS

Note:

No connection for CMOS device inputs can be cause of malfunction. If no connection is provided to the input pins, it is possible that an internal input level may be generated due to noise, etc., hence causing malfunction. CMOS devices behave differently than Bipolar or NMOS devices. Input levels of CMOS devices must be fixed high or low by using a pull-up or pull-down circuitry. Each unused pin should be connected to  $V_{DD}$  or GND with a resistor, if it is considered to have a possibility of being an output pin. All handling related to the unused pins must be judged device by device and related specifications governing the devices.

### ③ STATUS BEFORE INITIALIZATION OF MOS DEVICES

Note:

Power-on does not necessarily define initial status of MOS device. Production process of MOS does not define the initial operation status of the device. Immediately after the power source is turned ON, the devices with reset function have not yet been initialized. Hence, power-on does not guarantee out-pin levels, I/O settings or contents of registers. Device is not initialized until the reset signal is received. Reset operation must be executed immediately after power-on for devices having reset function.

**FIP, IEBus, and QTOP are trademarks of NEC Corporation.**

**MS-DOS and Windows are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.**

**IBM DOS, PC/AT and PC DOS are trademarks of International Business Machines Corporation.**

**HP9000 Series 300, HP9000 Series 700, and HP-UX are trademarks of Hewlett-Packard Company.**

**SPARCstation is a trademark of SPARC International, Inc.**

**Sun OS is a trademark of Sun Microsystems, Inc.**

**Ethernet is a trademark of XEROX Corporation.**

**NEWS and NEWS-OS are trademarks of SONY Corporation.**

**OSF/Motif is a trademark of Open Software Foundation, Inc.**

**TRON is an abbreviation of The Realtime Operating system Nucleus.**

**ITRON is an abbreviation of Industrial TRON.**

The export of these products from Japan is regulated by the Japanese government. The export of some or all of these products may be prohibited without governmental license. To export or re-export some or all of these products from a country other than Japan may also be prohibited without a license from that country. Please call an NEC sales representative.

License not needed:  $\mu$ PD78P083DU

The customer must judge the need for license:

$\mu$ PD78081CU-xxx, 78081GB-xxx-3B4, 78081GB-xxx-3BS-MTX

$\mu$ PD78081GB(A)-xxx-3B4, 78081GB(A2)-xxx-3B4

$\mu$ PD78082CU-xxx, 78082GB-xxx-3B4, 78082GB-xxx-3BS-MTX

$\mu$ PD78082GB(A)-xxx-3B4

$\mu$ PD78P083CU, 78P083GB-3B4, 78P083GB-3BS-MTX

$\mu$ PD78P083CU(A), 78P083GB(A)-3B4, 78P083GB(A)-3BS-MTX

The application circuits and their parameters are for reference only and are not intended for use in actual design-ins.

**The information in this document is subject to change without notice.**

No part of this document may be copied or reproduced in any form or by any means without the prior written consent of NEC Corporation. NEC Corporation assumes no responsibility for any errors which may appear in this document.

NEC Corporation does not assume any liability for infringement of patents, copyrights or other intellectual property rights of third parties by or arising from use of a device described herein or any other liability arising from use of such device. No license, either express, implied or otherwise, is granted under any patents, copyrights or other intellectual property rights of NEC Corporation or others.

While NEC Corporation has been making continuous effort to enhance the reliability of its semiconductor devices, the possibility of defects cannot be eliminated entirely. To minimize risks of damage or injury to persons or property arising from a defect in an NEC semiconductor device, customers must incorporate sufficient safety measures in its design, such as redundancy, fire-containment, and anti-failure features.

NEC devices are classified into the following three quality grades:

"Standard", "Special", and "Specific". The Specific quality grade applies only to devices developed based on a customer designated "quality assurance program" for a specific application. The recommended applications of a device depend on its quality grade, as indicated below. Customers must check the quality grade of each device before using it in a particular application.

Standard: Computers, office equipment, communications equipment, test and measurement equipment, audio and visual equipment, home electronic appliances, machine tools, personal electronic equipment and industrial robots

Special: Transportation equipment (automobiles, trains, ships, etc.), traffic control systems, anti-disaster systems, anti-crime systems, safety equipment and medical equipment (not specifically designed for life support)

Specific: Aircrafts, aerospace equipment, submersible repeaters, nuclear reactor control systems, life support systems or medical equipment for life support, etc.

The quality grade of NEC devices is "Standard" unless otherwise specified in NEC's Data Sheets or Data Books. If customers intend to use NEC devices for applications other than those specified for Standard quality grade, they should contact an NEC sales representative in advance.

Anti-radioactive design is not implemented in this product.

# Regional Information

Some information contained in this document may vary from country to country. Before using any NEC product in your application, please contact the NEC office in your country to obtain a list of authorized representatives and distributors. They will verify:

- Device availability
- Ordering information
- Product release schedule
- Availability of related technical literature
- Development environment specifications (for example, specifications for third-party tools and components, host computers, power plugs, AC supply voltages, and so forth)
- Network requirements

In addition, trademarks, registered trademarks, export restrictions, and other legal issues may also vary from country to country.

## **NEC Electronics Inc. (U.S.)**

Santa Clara, California  
Tel: 800-366-9782  
Fax: 800-729-9288

## **NEC Electronics (Germany) GmbH**

Duesseldorf, Germany  
Tel: 0211-65 03 02  
Fax: 0211-65 03 490

## **NEC Electronics (UK) Ltd.**

Milton Keynes, UK  
Tel: 01908-691-133  
Fax: 01908-670-290

## **NEC Electronics Italiana s.r.l.**

Milano, Italy  
Tel: 02-66 75 41  
Fax: 02-66 75 42 99

## **NEC Electronics (Germany) GmbH**

Benelux Office  
Eindhoven, The Netherlands  
Tel: 040-2445845  
Fax: 040-2444580

## **NEC Electronics (France) S.A.**

Velizy-Villacoublay, France  
Tel: 01-30-67 58 00  
Fax: 01-30-67 58 99

## **NEC Electronics (France) S.A.**

Spain Office  
Madrid, Spain  
Tel: 01-504-2787  
Fax: 01-504-2860

## **NEC Electronics (Germany) GmbH**

Scandinavia Office  
Taebby, Sweden  
Tel: 08-63 80 820  
Fax: 08-63 80 388

## **NEC Electronics Hong Kong Ltd.**

Hong Kong  
Tel: 2886-9318  
Fax: 2886-9022/9044

## **NEC Electronics Hong Kong Ltd.**

Seoul Branch  
Seoul, Korea  
Tel: 02-528-0303  
Fax: 02-528-4411

## **NEC Electronics Singapore Pte. Ltd.**

United Square, Singapore 1130  
Tel: 253-8311  
Fax: 250-3583

## **NEC Electronics Taiwan Ltd.**

Taipei, Taiwan  
Tel: 02-719-2377  
Fax: 02-719-5951

## **NEC do Brasil S.A.**

Sao Paulo-SP, Brasil  
Tel: 011-889-1680  
Fax: 011-889-1689

## Major Revision in This Edition

| Page        | Description  |
|-------------|--|
| Throughout  | The following products have been already developed<br>$\mu$ PD78081CU-xxx, 78081GB-xxx-3B4, 78082CU-xxx, 78082GB-xxx-3B4, 78P083CU, 78P083DU, 78P083GB-3B4   |
|             | The following products have been added<br>$\mu$ PD78081GB-xxx-3BS-MTX, 78082GB-xxx-3BS-MTX, 78P083GB-3BS-MTX, 78081GB(A)-xxx-3B4, 78082GB(A)-xxx-3B4, 78P083CU(A), 78P083GB(A)-3B4, 78P083GB(A)-3BS-MTX, 78081GB(A2)-xxx-3B4 |
|             | Changes supply voltage to $V_{DD} = 1.8$ to $5.5V$ .   |
| p. 9        | <b>1.6 78K/0 Series Development</b> has been changed.  |
| p. 13       | <b>1.9 Differences between the <math>\mu</math>PD78081, 78082, and 78P083, the <math>\mu</math>PD78081(A), 78082(A), and 78P083(A), and the <math>\mu</math>PD78081(A2)</b> has been added.                                  |
| p. 19       | Cautions regarding the use of functions in common with <b>2.2.5 (2) (d) ASCK</b> has been added.   |
| p. 72       | Cautions concerning the Write to OSMS Command has been added to <b>5.3 (2) Oscillation mode select register (OSMS)</b> .   |
| p. 73       | Cautions concerning external clock input in <b>5.4.1 Main system clock oscillator</b> has been changed.  |
| p. 108      | <b>Figure 7-3. Watchdog Timer Mode Register Format</b> , notes and cautions have been added.   |
| p. 110      | Description of <b>7.4.2 Interval timer operation</b> has been changed.   |
| p. 113      | Cautions with regard to rewriting TCL0 to other than same data has been added to <b>8.3 (1) Timer clock select register 0 (TCL0)</b> .   |
| p. 120      | The HSC bit has been added to the A/D Converter Mode Register in <b>Figure10-1. A/D Converter Block Diagram</b> .  |
| p. 122, 193 | <b>10.3 (1) A/D converter mode register (ADM), 13.1.1 Standby function, and Cautions</b> have been added.  |
| p. 137      | <b>Figure 11-1. Serial Interface Channel 2 Block Diagram</b> has been corrected.   |
| p. 146, 155 | <b>11.3 (4) (a), 11.4.2 (1) (d) (i) Generation of baud rate transmit/receive clock by means of main system clock</b> have been added.<br>76800 bps has been added to baud rate generated from the main system clock.         |
| p. 161      | <b>Figure 11-10. Receive Error Timing</b> has been corrected.  |
| p. 165      | <b>11.4.3 (1) (c) Baud rate generator control register (BRGC)</b> has been added.  |
| p. 168      | <b>11.4.3 (3) MSB/LSB switching as start bit</b> has been added.   |
| p. 206      | <b>15.1 Memory Size Switching Register</b> has been changed from W to R/W.   |
| p. 205      | Items and cautions have been added to <b>Table 15-1. Differences between the <math>\mu</math>PD78P083 and Mask ROM Versions</b> .  |
| p. 214      | A description of the QTOP microcontroller has been added to <b>15.5 Screening of One-Time PROM Versions</b> .  |
| p. 232      | <b>Figure A-1. Development Tool Configuration</b> has been changed.  |
| p. 231      | <b>APPENDIX A DEVELOPMENT TOOLS</b><br>The following Development Tools have been added:<br>IE-78000-R-A, IE-70000-98-IF-B, IE-70000-98N-IF, IE-70000-PC-IF-B, IE-78000-R-SV3, SM78K0, ID78K0                                 |
| p. 239      | <b>A.4 OS for IBM PC</b> has been added.   |
| p. 240      | <b>Table A-2. System-Up Method from Other In-Circuit Emulator to IE-78000-R-A</b> has been added.  |
| p. 244      | <b>B.1 Real-time OS</b> has been added.  |
| p. 249      | <b>APPENDIX D REVISION HISTORY</b> has been added.   |

The mark ★ shows major revised points.

## PREFACE

**Readers** This manual has been prepared for user engineers who want to understand the functions of the  $\mu$ PD78083 subseries and design and develop its application systems and programs.

**Caution** **In the  $\mu$ PD78083 Subseries, the  $\mu$ PD78P083DU is not designed to maintain the reliability required for use in customers' mass-produced equipment. Please use this device only for experimentation or for evaluation of functions.**

**Purpose** This manual is intended for users to understand the functions described in the Organization below.

**Organization** The  $\mu$ PD78083 subseries manual is separated into two parts: this manual and the instruction edition (common to the 78K/0 Series).

|   |   |
|---|---|
| $\mu$ PD78083 Subseries<br>User's Manual<br>(This Manual)   | 78K/0 Series<br>User's Manual<br>Instruction  |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>● Pin functions</li><li>● Internal block functions</li><li>● Interrupt</li><li>● Other on-chip peripheral functions</li></ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>● CPU functions</li><li>● Instruction set</li><li>● Explanation of each instruction</li></ul> |

**How to Read This Manual** Before reading this manual, you should have general knowledge of electric and logic circuits and microcontrollers.

- For those who will be using this as a manual for the  $\mu$ PD78081(A), 78082(A), 78P083(A) and 78081(A2):
  - The  $\mu$ PD78081, 78082, 78P083 are explained as being representative devices.
  - In case this is used as a manual for the  $\mu$ PD78081(A), 78082(A), 78P083(A), or 78081(A2), please reread the product names as follows.  
 $\mu$ PD78081 →  $\mu$ PD78081(A) or  $\mu$ PD78081(A2)  
 $\mu$ PD78082 →  $\mu$ PD78082(A)  
 $\mu$ PD78P083 →  $\mu$ PD78P083(A)
- When you want to understand the functions in general:
  - Read this manual in the order of the contents.
- To know the  $\mu$ PD78083 Subseries instruction function in detail:
  - Refer to the **78K/0 Series User's Manual: Instructions (IEU-1372)**
- How to interpret the register format:
  - For the circled bit number, the bit name is defined as a reserved word in RA78K/0, and in CC78K/0, already defined in the header file named sfrbit.h.
- To learn the function of a register whose register name is known:
  - Refer to **Appendix C Register Index**.
- To know the electrical specifications of the  $\mu$ PD78083 Subseries:
  - Refer to separately available Data Sheet.

- To know application examples of the functions provided in the  $\mu$ PD78083 Subseries:  
→ Refer to Application Note separately provided.

|               |                            |   |  |
|---------------|----------------------------|---|--|
| <b>Legend</b> | Data representation weight | : | High digits on the left and low digits on the right            |
|               | Active low representations | : | $\overline{\text{xxx}}$ (line over the pin and signal names)   |
|               | Note                       | : | Description of note in the text.                               |
|               | Caution                    | : | Information requiring particular attention                     |
|               | Remarks                    | : | Additional explanatory material                                |
|               | Numeral representations    | : | Binary ... xxxxB<br>Decimal ... xxxxD<br>Hexadecimal ... xxxxH |

Examples of use in this manual are prepared for “Standard” quality level devices for general electronic equipment. In the case of examples of use in this manual for devices which meet “Special” quality level requirements, please use each device only after studying each part that is actually to be used, the circuitry and the quality level of each component before use.



**Related Documents**

The related documents indicated in this publication may include preliminary versions. However, preliminary versions are not marked as such.

**● Related documents for  $\mu$ PD78054 subseries**

| Document name   |              | Document No.   |                |
|---|--------------|----------------|----------------|
|   |              | Japanese       | English        |
| $\mu$ PD78083 Subseries User's Manual                   |              | U12176J        | This Manual    |
| $\mu$ PD78081, 78082 Data Sheet                         |              | U11415J        | U11415E        |
| $\mu$ PD78P083 Data Sheet                               |              | U11006J        | U11006E        |
| $\mu$ PD78081(A), 78082(A), 78081(A2) Data Sheet        |              | In preparation | To be prepared |
| $\mu$ PD78P083(A) Data Sheet                            |              | U12175J        | U12175E        |
| $\mu$ PD78083 Subseries Special Function Register Table |              | IEM-5599       | —              |
| 78K/0 Series User's Manual—Instruction                  |              | IEU-849        | IEU-1372       |
| 78K/0 Series Instruction Table                          |              | U10903J        | —              |
| 78K/0 Series Instruction Set                            |              | U10904J        | —              |
| 78K/0 Series Application Note                           | Basics (III) | IEA-767        | U10182E        |

**Caution: The above documents are subject to change without prior notice. Be sure to use the latest version document when starting design.**

● Development Tool Documents (User's Manuals)

| Document name   |   | Document No. |          |
|---|---|--------------|----------|
|   |   | Japanese     | English  |
| RA78K Series Assembler Package                          | Operation   | EEU-809      | EEU-1399 |
|   | Language  | EEU-815      | EEU-1404 |
| RA78K Series Structured Assembler Preprocessor          |   | EEU-817      | EEU-1402 |
| RA78K0 Assembler Package                                | Structured assembly language                          | U11789J      | U11789E  |
|   | Assembly language                                     | U11801J      | U11801E  |
|   | Operation   | U11802J      | U11802E  |
| CC78K Series C Compiler                                 | Operation   | EEU-656      | EEU-1280 |
|   | Language  | EEU-655      | EEU-1284 |
| CC78K/0 C Compiler                                      | Operation   | U11517J      | U11517E  |
|   | Language  | U11518J      | U11518E  |
| CC78K/0 C Compiler Application Note                     | Programming know-how                                  | EEA-618      | EEA-1208 |
| CC78K Series Library Source File                        |   | EEU-777      | —        |
| PG-1500 PROM Programmer                                 |   | U11940J      | EEU-1335 |
| PG-1500 Controller PC-9800 Series (MS-DOS™) Base        |   | EEU-704      | EEU-1291 |
| PG-1500 Controller IBM PC Series (PC DOS™) Base         |   | EEU-5008     | U10540E  |
| IE-78000-R  |   | EEU-810      | U11376E  |
| IE-78000-R-A  |   | U10057J      | U10057E  |
| IE-78000-R-BK   |   | EEU-867      | EEU-1427 |
| IE-78078-R-EM   |   | U10775J      | U10775E  |
| EP-78083  |   | EEU-5003     | EEU-1529 |
| SM78K0 System Simulator Windows™ Base                   | Reference   | U10181J      | U10181E  |
| SM78K Series System Simulator                           | External component user open interface specifications | U10092J      | U10092E  |
| ID78K0 Integrated Debugger EWS Base                     | Reference   | U11151J      | —        |
| ID78K0 Integrated Debugger PC Base                      | Reference   | U11539J      | —        |
| ID78K0 Integrated Debugger Windows™ Base                | Guide   | U11649J      | U11649E  |
| SD78K/0 Screen Debugger<br>PC-9800 Series (MS-DOS) Base | Introduction  | EEU-852      | U10539E  |
|   | Reference   | U10952J      | —        |
| SD78K/0 Screen Debugger                                 | Introduction  | EEU-5024     | EEU-1414 |
| IBM PC/AT™ (PC DOS) Base                                | Reference   | U11279J      | U11279E  |

**Caution: The above documents are subject to change without prior notice. Be sure to use the latest version document when starting design.**

● Documents for Embedded Software (User's Manual)

| Document name  |              | Document No. |          |
|--|--------------|--------------|----------|
|  |              | Japanese     | English  |
| 78K/0 Series Real-Time OS  | Basics       | U11537J      | —        |
|  | Installation | U11536J      | —        |
|  | Technicals   | U11538J      | —        |
| OS for 78K/0 Series MX78K0   | Basics       | EEU-5010     | —        |
| Fuzzy Knowledge Data Creation Tool   |              | EEU-829      | EEU-1438 |
| 78K/0, 78K/II, 87AD Series Fuzzy Inference Development Support System—Translator |              | EEU-862      | EEU-1444 |
| 78K/0 Series Fuzzy Inference Development Support System—Fuzzy Inference Module   |              | EEU-858      | EEU-1441 |
| 78K/0 Series Fuzzy Inference Development Support System—Fuzzy Inference Debugger |              | EEU-921      | EEU-1458 |

● Other Documents

| Document name   |  | Document No. |         |
|---|--|--------------|---------|
|   |  | Japanese     | English |
| IC PACKAGE MANUAL   |  | C10943X      |         |
| Semiconductor Device Mounting Technology Manual                 |  | C10535J      | C10535E |
| Quality Grade on NEC Semiconductor Devices                      |  | C11531J      | C11531E |
| Reliability Quality Control on NEC Semiconductor Devices        |  | C10983J      | C10983E |
| Electric Static Discharge (ESD) Test                            |  | MEM-539      | —       |
| Semiconductor Devices Quality Assurance Guide                   |  | C11893J      | C11893E |
| Microcontroller Related Product Guide—Third Party Manufacturers |  | U11416J      | —       |

**Caution: The above documents are subject to change without prior notice. Be sure to use the latest version document when starting design.**

# CONTENTS

|   |           |
|---|-----------|
| <b>CHAPTER 1 OUTLINE</b> .....  | <b>1</b>  |
| <b>1.1 Features</b> .....   | <b>1</b>  |
| <b>1.2 Applications</b> .....   | <b>2</b>  |
| <b>1.3 Ordering Information</b> .....   | <b>2</b>  |
| <b>1.4 Quality Grade</b> .....  | <b>3</b>  |
| <b>1.5 Pin Configuration (Top View)</b> .....   | <b>4</b>  |
| <b>1.6 78K/0 Series Development</b> .....   | <b>9</b>  |
| <b>1.7 Block Diagram</b> .....  | <b>11</b> |
| <b>1.8 Outline of Function</b> .....  | <b>12</b> |
| ★ <b>1.9 Differences between the <math>\mu</math>PD78081, 78082 and 78P083, the <math>\mu</math>PD78081(A), 78082(A) and 78P083(A), and the <math>\mu</math>PD78081(A2)</b> ..... | <b>13</b> |
| <br>  |           |
| <b>CHAPTER 2 PIN FUNCTION</b> .....   | <b>15</b> |
| <b>2.1 Pin Function List</b> .....  | <b>15</b> |
| 2.1.1 Normal operating mode pins .....  | 15        |
| 2.1.2 PROM programming mode pins ( $\mu$ PD78P083 only) .....   | 16        |
| <b>2.2 Description of Pin Functions</b> .....   | <b>17</b> |
| 2.2.1 P00 to P03 (Port 0) .....   | 17        |
| 2.2.2 P10 to P17 (Port 1) .....   | 17        |
| 2.2.3 P30 to P37 (Port 3) .....   | 18        |
| 2.2.4 P50 to P57 (Port 5) .....   | 18        |
| 2.2.5 P70 to P72 (Port 7) .....   | 19        |
| 2.2.6 P100 to P101 (Port 10) .....  | 19        |
| 2.2.7 $\overline{AVREF}$ .....  | 20        |
| 2.2.8 $\overline{AVDD}$ .....   | 20        |
| 2.2.9 $\overline{AVSS}$ .....   | 20        |
| 2.2.10 $\overline{RESET}$ .....   | 20        |
| 2.2.11 X1 and X2 .....  | 20        |
| 2.2.12 $V_{DD}$ .....   | 20        |
| 2.2.13 $V_{SS}$ .....   | 20        |
| 2.2.14 $V_{PP}$ ( $\mu$ PD78P083 only) .....  | 20        |
| 2.2.15 IC (Mask ROM version only) .....   | 21        |
| 2.2.16 NC (44-pin plastic QFP versions only) .....  | 21        |
| <b>2.3 Pin Input/Output Circuits and Recommended Connection of Unused Pins</b> .....  | <b>22</b> |
| <br>  |           |
| <b>CHAPTER 3 CPU ARCHITECTURE</b> .....   | <b>25</b> |
| <b>3.1 Memory Spaces</b> .....  | <b>25</b> |
| 3.1.1 Internal program memory space .....   | 28        |
| 3.1.2 Internal data memory space .....  | 29        |
| 3.1.3 Special Function Register (SFR) area .....  | 29        |
| 3.1.4 Data memory addressing .....  | 29        |
| <b>3.2 Processor Registers</b> .....  | <b>33</b> |
| 3.2.1 Control registers .....   | 33        |
| 3.2.2 General registers .....   | 36        |

|                  |   |           |
|------------------|---|-----------|
| 3.2.3            | Special Function Register (SFR) .....                             | 37        |
| <b>3.3</b>       | <b>Instruction Address Addressing .....</b>                       | <b>40</b> |
| 3.3.1            | Relative Addressing .....   | 40        |
| 3.3.2            | Immediate addressing .....  | 41        |
| 3.3.3            | Table indirect addressing .....                                   | 42        |
| 3.3.4            | Register addressing .....   | 43        |
| <b>3.4</b>       | <b>Operand Address Addressing .....</b>                           | <b>44</b> |
| 3.4.1            | Implied addressing .....  | 44        |
| 3.4.2            | Register addressing .....   | 45        |
| 3.4.3            | Direct addressing .....   | 46        |
| 3.4.4            | Short direct addressing .....                                     | 47        |
| 3.4.5            | Special-Function Register (SFR) addressing .....                  | 49        |
| 3.4.6            | Register indirect addressing .....                                | 50        |
| 3.4.7            | Based addressing .....  | 51        |
| 3.4.8            | Based indexed addressing .....                                    | 52        |
| 3.4.9            | Stack addressing .....  | 52        |
| <b>CHAPTER 4</b> | <b>PORT FUNCTIONS .....</b>                                       | <b>53</b> |
| <b>4.1</b>       | <b>Port Functions .....</b>                                       | <b>53</b> |
| <b>4.2</b>       | <b>Port Configuration .....</b>                                   | <b>55</b> |
| 4.2.1            | Port 0 .....  | 55        |
| 4.2.2            | Port 1 .....  | 57        |
| 4.2.3            | Port 3 .....  | 58        |
| 4.2.4            | Port 5 .....  | 59        |
| 4.2.5            | Port 7 .....  | 60        |
| 4.2.6            | Port 10 .....   | 62        |
| <b>4.3</b>       | <b>Port Function Control Registers .....</b>                      | <b>63</b> |
| <b>4.4</b>       | <b>Port Function Operations .....</b>                             | <b>67</b> |
| 4.4.1            | Writing to input/output port .....                                | 67        |
| 4.4.2            | Reading from input/output port .....                              | 67        |
| 4.4.3            | Operations on input/output port .....                             | 67        |
| <b>CHAPTER 5</b> | <b>CLOCK GENERATOR .....</b>                                      | <b>69</b> |
| <b>5.1</b>       | <b>Clock Generator Functions .....</b>                            | <b>69</b> |
| <b>5.2</b>       | <b>Clock Generator Configuration .....</b>                        | <b>69</b> |
| <b>5.3</b>       | <b>Clock Generator Control Register .....</b>                     | <b>71</b> |
| <b>5.4</b>       | <b>System Clock Oscillator .....</b>                              | <b>73</b> |
| 5.4.1            | Main system clock oscillator .....                                | 73        |
| 5.4.2            | Scaler .....  | 75        |
| <b>5.5</b>       | <b>Clock Generator Operations .....</b>                           | <b>76</b> |
| <b>5.6</b>       | <b>Changing CPU Clock Settings .....</b>                          | <b>77</b> |
| 5.6.1            | Time required for CPU clock switchover .....                      | 77        |
| 5.6.2            | CPU clock switching procedure .....                               | 78        |
| <b>CHAPTER 6</b> | <b>8-BIT TIMER/EVENT COUNTERS 5 AND 6 .....</b>                   | <b>79</b> |
| <b>6.1</b>       | <b>8-Bit Timer/Event Counters 5 and 6 Functions .....</b>         | <b>80</b> |
| <b>6.2</b>       | <b>8-Bit Timer/Event Counters 5 and 6 Configurations .....</b>    | <b>82</b> |
| <b>6.3</b>       | <b>8-Bit Timer/Event Counters 5 and 6 Control Registers .....</b> | <b>84</b> |

|                   |   |            |
|-------------------|---|------------|
| <b>6.4</b>        | <b>8-Bit Timer/Event Counters 5 and 6 Operations .....</b>  | <b>90</b>  |
| 6.4.1             | Interval timer operations .....                             | 90         |
| 6.4.2             | External event counter operation .....                      | 93         |
| 6.4.3             | Square-wave output .....                                    | 94         |
| 6.4.4             | PWM output operations .....                                 | 96         |
| <b>6.5</b>        | <b>Cautions on 8-Bit Timer/Event Counters 5 and 6 .....</b> | <b>100</b> |
| <b>CHAPTER 7</b>  | <b>WATCHDOG TIMER .....</b>                                 | <b>103</b> |
| <b>7.1</b>        | <b>Watchdog Timer Functions .....</b>                       | <b>103</b> |
| <b>7.2</b>        | <b>Watchdog Timer Configuration .....</b>                   | <b>105</b> |
| <b>7.3</b>        | <b>Watchdog Timer Control Registers .....</b>               | <b>106</b> |
| <b>7.4</b>        | <b>Watchdog Timer Operations .....</b>                      | <b>109</b> |
| 7.4.1             | Watchdog timer operation .....                              | 109        |
| 7.4.2             | Interval timer operation .....                              | 110        |
| <b>CHAPTER 8</b>  | <b>CLOCK OUTPUT CONTROL CIRCUIT .....</b>                   | <b>111</b> |
| <b>8.1</b>        | <b>Clock Output Control Circuit Functions .....</b>         | <b>111</b> |
| <b>8.2</b>        | <b>Clock Output Control Circuit Configuration .....</b>     | <b>112</b> |
| <b>8.3</b>        | <b>Clock Output Function Control Registers .....</b>        | <b>113</b> |
| <b>CHAPTER 9</b>  | <b>BUZZER OUTPUT CONTROL CIRCUIT .....</b>                  | <b>115</b> |
| <b>9.1</b>        | <b>Buzzer Output Control Circuit Functions .....</b>        | <b>115</b> |
| <b>9.2</b>        | <b>Buzzer Output Control Circuit Configuration .....</b>    | <b>115</b> |
| <b>9.3</b>        | <b>Buzzer Output Function Control Registers .....</b>       | <b>116</b> |
| <b>CHAPTER 10</b> | <b>A/D CONVERTER .....</b>                                  | <b>119</b> |
| <b>10.1</b>       | <b>A/D Converter Functions .....</b>                        | <b>119</b> |
| <b>10.2</b>       | <b>A/D Converter Configuration .....</b>                    | <b>119</b> |
| <b>10.3</b>       | <b>A/D Converter Control Registers .....</b>                | <b>122</b> |
| <b>10.4</b>       | <b>A/D Converter Operations .....</b>                       | <b>126</b> |
| 10.4.1            | Basic operations of A/D converter .....                     | 126        |
| 10.4.2            | Input voltage and conversion results .....                  | 128        |
| 10.4.3            | A/D converter operating mode .....                          | 129        |
| <b>10.5</b>       | <b>A/D Converter Cautions .....</b>                         | <b>131</b> |
| <b>CHAPTER 11</b> | <b>SERIAL INTERFACE CHANNEL 2 .....</b>                     | <b>135</b> |
| <b>11.1</b>       | <b>Serial Interface Channel 2 Functions .....</b>           | <b>135</b> |
| <b>11.2</b>       | <b>Serial Interface Channel 2 Configuration .....</b>       | <b>136</b> |
| <b>11.3</b>       | <b>Serial Interface Channel 2 Control Registers .....</b>   | <b>140</b> |
| <b>11.4</b>       | <b>Serial Interface Channel 2 Operation .....</b>           | <b>148</b> |
| 11.4.1            | Operation stop mode .....                                   | 148        |
| 11.4.2            | Asynchronous serial interface (UART) mode .....             | 150        |
| 11.4.3            | 3-wire serial I/O mode .....                                | 163        |
| <b>CHAPTER 12</b> | <b>INTERRUPT FUNCTION .....</b>                             | <b>171</b> |
| <b>12.1</b>       | <b>Interrupt Function Types .....</b>                       | <b>171</b> |
| <b>12.2</b>       | <b>Interrupt Sources and Configuration .....</b>            | <b>172</b> |
| <b>12.3</b>       | <b>Interrupt Function Control Registers .....</b>           | <b>175</b> |

|                   |   |            |
|-------------------|---|------------|
| <b>12.4</b>       | <b>Interrupt Servicing Operations .....</b>                                   | <b>181</b> |
| 12.4.1            | Non-maskable interrupt request acknowledge operation .....                    | 181        |
| 12.4.2            | Maskable interrupt request acknowledge operation .....                        | 184        |
| 12.4.3            | Software interrupt request acknowledge operation .....                        | 187        |
| 12.4.4            | Multiple interrupt servicing .....  | 187        |
| 12.4.5            | Interrupt request reserve .....   | 191        |
| <b>CHAPTER 13</b> | <b>STANDBY FUNCTION .....</b>   | <b>193</b> |
| <b>13.1</b>       | <b>Standby Function and Configuration .....</b>                               | <b>193</b> |
| 13.1.1            | Standby function .....  | 193        |
| 13.1.2            | Standby function control register .....                                       | 194        |
| <b>13.2</b>       | <b>Standby Function Operations .....</b>                                      | <b>195</b> |
| 13.2.1            | HALT mode .....   | 195        |
| 13.2.2            | STOP mode .....   | 198        |
| <b>CHAPTER 14</b> | <b>RESET FUNCTION .....</b>   | <b>201</b> |
| <b>14.1</b>       | <b>Reset Function .....</b>   | <b>201</b> |
| <b>CHAPTER 15</b> | <b><math>\mu</math>PD78P083 .....</b>   | <b>205</b> |
| <b>15.1</b>       | <b>Memory Size Switching Register .....</b>                                   | <b>206</b> |
| <b>15.2</b>       | <b>PROM Programming .....</b>   | <b>207</b> |
| 15.2.1            | Operating modes .....   | 207        |
| 15.2.2            | PROM write procedure .....  | 209        |
| 15.2.3            | PROM reading procedure .....  | 213        |
| <b>15.3</b>       | <b>Erase Procedure (<math>\mu</math>PD78P083DU Only) .....</b>                | <b>214</b> |
| <b>15.4</b>       | <b>Opaque Film Masking the Window (<math>\mu</math>PD78P083DU Only) .....</b> | <b>214</b> |
| <b>15.5</b>       | <b>Screening of One-Time PROM Versions .....</b>                              | <b>214</b> |
| <b>CHAPTER 16</b> | <b>INSTRUCTION SET .....</b>  | <b>215</b> |
| <b>16.1</b>       | <b>Legends Used in Operation List .....</b>                                   | <b>216</b> |
| 16.1.1            | Operand identifiers and description methods .....                             | 216        |
| 16.1.2            | Description of "operation" column .....                                       | 217        |
| 16.1.3            | Description of "flag operation" column .....                                  | 217        |
| <b>16.2</b>       | <b>Operation List .....</b>   | <b>218</b> |
| <b>16.3</b>       | <b>Instructions Listed by Addressing Type .....</b>                           | <b>226</b> |
| <b>APPENDIX A</b> | <b>DEVELOPMENT TOOLS .....</b>  | <b>231</b> |
| <b>A.1</b>        | <b>Language Processing Software .....</b>                                     | <b>233</b> |
| <b>A.2</b>        | <b>PROM Programming Tools .....</b>   | <b>234</b> |
| A.2.1             | Hardware .....  | 234        |
| A.2.2             | Software .....  | 234        |
| <b>A.3</b>        | <b>Debugging Tools .....</b>  | <b>235</b> |
| A.3.1             | Hardware .....  | 235        |
| A.3.2             | Software (1/3) .....  | 236        |
| A.3.2             | Software (2/3) .....  | 237        |
| A.3.2             | Software (3/3) .....  | 238        |
| <b>★ A.4</b>      | <b>OS for IBM PC .....</b>  | <b>239</b> |

|   |  |            |
|---|--|------------|
|   | <b>A.5 System-Upgrade Method from Other In-Circuit Emulators to 78K/0 Series</b> |            |
|   | In-Circuit Emulator .....  | 240        |
| ★ | <b>APPENDIX B EMBEDDED SOFTWARE .....</b>  | <b>243</b> |
|   | B.1 Real-time OS .....   | 244        |
|   | B.2 Fuzzy Inference Development Support System .....                             | 245        |
|   | <b>APPENDIX C REGISTER INDEX .....</b>   | <b>247</b> |
|   | C.1 Register Index .....   | 247        |
| ★ | <b>APPENDIX D REVISION HISTORY .....</b>   | <b>249</b> |



## FIGURE (1/4)

| Fig. No. | Title  | Page |
|----------|--|------|
| 2-1      | Pin Input/Output Circuit of List .....   | 23   |
| 3-1      | Memory Map ( $\mu$ PD78081) .....  | 25   |
| 3-2      | Memory Map ( $\mu$ PD78082) .....  | 26   |
| 3-3      | Memory Map ( $\mu$ PD78P083) .....   | 27   |
| 3-4      | Data Memory Addressing ( $\mu$ PD78081) .....                                    | 30   |
| 3-5      | Data Memory Addressing ( $\mu$ PD78082) .....                                    | 31   |
| 3-6      | Data Memory Addressing ( $\mu$ PD78P083) .....                                   | 32   |
| 3-7      | Program Counter Configuration .....  | 33   |
| 3-8      | Program Status Word Configuration .....  | 33   |
| 3-9      | Stack Pointer Configuration .....  | 35   |
| 3-10     | Data to be Saved to Stack Memory .....   | 35   |
| 3-11     | Data to be Reset from Stack Memory .....   | 35   |
| 3-12     | General Register Configuration .....   | 36   |
| 4-1      | Port Types .....   | 53   |
| 4-2      | P00 Block Diagram .....  | 56   |
| 4-3      | P01 to P03 Block Diagram .....   | 56   |
| 4-4      | P10 to P17 Block Diagram .....   | 57   |
| 4-5      | P30 to P37 Block Diagram .....   | 58   |
| 4-6      | P50 to P57 Block Diagram .....   | 59   |
| 4-7      | P70 Block Diagram .....  | 60   |
| 4-8      | P71 and P72 Block Diagram .....  | 61   |
| 4-9      | P100 to P101 Block Diagram .....   | 62   |
| 4-10     | Port Mode Register Format .....  | 65   |
| 4-11     | Pull-Up Resistor Option Register Format .....                                    | 66   |
| 5-1      | Block Diagram of Clock Generator .....   | 70   |
| 5-2      | Processor Clock Control Register Format .....                                    | 71   |
| 5-3      | Oscillation Mode Selection Register Format .....                                 | 72   |
| 5-4      | Main System Clock Waveform due to Writing to OSMS .....                          |      |
| 5-5      | External Circuit of Main System Clock Oscillator .....                           | 73   |
| 5-6      | Examples of Oscillator with Bad Connection (1/2) .....                           | 74   |
| 5-7      | CPU Clock Switching .....  | 78   |
| 6-1      | 8-Bit Timer/Event Counters 5 and 6 Block Diagram .....                           | 82   |
| 6-2      | Block Diagram of 8-Bit Timer/Event Counters 5 and 6 Output Control Circuit ..... | 83   |
| 6-3      | Timer Clock Select Register 5 Format .....                                       | 85   |
| 6-4      | Timer Clock Select Register 6 Format .....                                       | 86   |
| 6-5      | 8-Bit Timer Mode Control Register 5 Format .....                                 | 87   |
| 6-6      | 8-Bit Timer Mode Control Register 6 Format .....                                 | 88   |
| 6-7      | Port Mode Register 10 Format .....   | 89   |
| 6-8      | 8-Bit Timer Mode Control Register Settings for Interval Timer Operation .....    | 90   |
| 6-9      | Interval Timer Operation Timings .....   | 91   |

## FIGURE (2/4)

| Fig. No. | Title  | Page |
|----------|--|------|
| 6-10     | 8-Bit Timer Mode Control Register Setting for External Event Counter Operation ..... | 93   |
| 6-11     | External Event Counter Operation Timings (with Rising Edge Specification) .....      | 93   |
| 6-12     | 8-Bit Timer Mode Control Register Settings for Square-Wave Output Operation .....    | 94   |
| 6-13     | 8-Bit Timer Mode Control Register Settings for PWM Output Operation .....            | 96   |
| 6-14     | PWM Output Operation Timing (Active high setting) .....                              | 97   |
| 6-15     | PWM Output Operation Timings (CRn0 = 00H, active high setting) .....                 | 97   |
| 6-16     | PWM Output Operation Timings (CRn0 = FFH, active high setting) .....                 | 98   |
| 6-17     | PWM Output Operation Timings (CRn0 changing, active high setting) .....              | 99   |
| 6-18     | 8-Bit Timer Registers 5 and 6 Start Timing .....                                     | 100  |
| 6-19     | External Event Counter Operation Timing .....  | 100  |
| 6-20     | Timing after Compare Register Change during Timer Count Operation .....              | 101  |
|          |  |      |
| 7-1      | Watchdog Timer Block Diagram .....   | 105  |
| 7-2      | Timer Clock Select Register 2 Format .....   | 107  |
| 7-3      | Watchdog Timer Mode Register Format .....  | 108  |
|          |  |      |
| 8-1      | Remote Controlled Output Application Example .....                                   | 111  |
| 8-2      | Clock Output Control Circuit Block Diagram .....                                     | 112  |
| 8-3      | Timer Clock Select Register 0 Format .....   | 113  |
| 8-4      | Port Mode Register 3 Format .....  | 114  |
|          |  |      |
| 9-1      | Buzzer Output Control Circuit Block Diagram .....                                    | 115  |
| 9-2      | Timer Clock Select Register 2 Format .....   | 117  |
| 9-3      | Port Mode Register 3 Format .....  | 118  |
|          |  |      |
| 10-1     | A/D Converter Block Diagram .....  | 120  |
| 10-2     | A/D Converter Mode Register Format .....   | 123  |
| 10-3     | A/D Converter Input Select Register Format .....                                     | 124  |
| 10-4     | External Interrupt Mode Register 1 Format .....                                      | 125  |
| 10-5     | A/D Converter Basic Operation .....  | 127  |
| 10-6     | Relations between Analog Input Voltage and A/D Conversion Result .....               | 128  |
| 10-7     | A/D Conversion by Hardware Start .....   | 129  |
| 10-8     | A/D Conversion by Software Start .....   | 130  |
| 10-9     | Example of Method of Reducing Current Dissipation in Standby Mode .....              | 131  |
| 10-10    | Analog Input Pin Disposition .....   | 132  |
| 10-11    | A/D Conversion End Interrupt Request Generation .....                                | 133  |
| 10-12    | Handling of AVDD Pin .....   | 133  |
|          |  |      |
| 11-1     | Serial Interface Channel 2 Block Diagram .....                                       | 137  |
| 11-2     | Baud Rate Generator Block Diagram .....  | 138  |
| 11-3     | Serial Operating Mode Register 2 Format .....  | 140  |
| 11-4     | Asynchronous Serial Interface Mode Register Format .....                             | 141  |
| 11-5     | Asynchronous Serial Interface Status Register Format .....                           | 143  |
| 11-6     | Baud Rate Generator Control Register Format (1/2) .....                              | 144  |

## FIGURE (3/4)

| Fig. No. | Title  | Page |
|----------|--|------|
| 11-6     | Baud Rate Generator Control Register Format (2/2) .....  | 145  |
| 11-7     | Asynchronous Serial Interface Transmit/Receive Data Format .....   | 157  |
| 11-8     | Asynchronous Serial Interface Transmission Completion Interrupt Request Timing .....   | 159  |
| 11-9     | Asynchronous Serial Interface Reception Completion Interrupt Request Timing .....  | 160  |
| 11-10    | Receive Error Timing .....   | 161  |
| 11-11    | State of the Receive Buffer Register (RXB) when Reception is Interrupted, and<br>Generation/Non Generation of an Interrupt Request (INTSR) ..... | 162  |
| 11-12    | 3-Wire serial I/O Mode Timing .....  | 168  |
| 11-13    | Circuit of Switching in Transfer Bit Order .....   | 169  |
| 12-1     | Basic Configuration of Interrupt Function (1/2) .....  | 173  |
| 12-1     | Basic Configuration of Interrupt Function (2/2) .....  | 174  |
| 12-2     | Interrupt Request Flag Register Format .....   | 176  |
| 12-3     | Interrupt Mask Flag Register Format .....  | 177  |
| 12-4     | Priority Specify Flag Register Format .....  | 178  |
| 12-5     | External Interrupt Mode Register 0 Format .....  | 179  |
| 12-6     | External Interrupt Mode Register 1 Format .....  | 179  |
| 12-7     | Program Status Word Configuration .....  | 180  |
| 12-8     | Flowchart from Non-Maskable Interrupt Request Generation to Acknowledgment .....   | 182  |
| 12-9     | Non-Maskable Interrupt Request Acknowledge Timing .....  | 182  |
| 12-10    | Non-Maskable Interrupt Request Acknowledge Operation .....   | 183  |
| 12-11    | Interrupt Request Acknowledge Processing Algorithm .....   | 185  |
| 12-12    | Interrupt Request Acknowledge Timing (Minimum Time) .....  | 186  |
| 12-13    | Interrupt Request Acknowledge Timing (Maximum Time) .....  | 186  |
| 12-14    | Example of Multiple Interrupt (1/2) .....  | 189  |
| 12-14    | Example of Multiple Interrupt (2/2) .....  | 190  |
| 12-15    | Interrupt Request Hold .....   | 192  |
| 13-1     | Oscillation Stabilization Time Select Register Format .....  | 194  |
| 13-2     | HALT Mode Clear upon Interrupt Generation .....  | 196  |
| 13-3     | HALT Mode Release by $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ Input .....   | 197  |
| 13-4     | STOP Mode Release by Interrupt Generation .....  | 199  |
| 13-5     | Release by STOP Mode $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ Input .....   | 200  |
| 14-1     | Block Diagram of Reset Function .....  | 201  |
| 14-2     | Timing of Reset Input by $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ Input .....   | 202  |
| 14-3     | Timing of Reset due to Watchdog Timer Overflow .....   | 202  |
| 14-4     | Timing of Reset Input in STOP Mode by $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ Input .....  | 202  |
| 15-1     | Memory Size Switching Register Format .....  | 206  |
| 15-2     | Page Program Mode Flowchart .....  | 209  |
| 15-3     | Page Program Mode Timing .....   | 210  |
| 15-4     | Byte Program Mode Flowchart .....  | 211  |
| 15-5     | Byte Program Mode Timing .....   | 212  |

**FIGURE (4/4)**

| Fig. No. | Title  | Page |
|----------|--|------|
| 15-6     | PROM Read Timing .....                           | 213  |
| A-1      | Development Tool Configuration .....             | 232  |
| A-2      | EV-9200G-44 Drawing (For Reference Only) .....   | 241  |
| A-3      | EV-9200G-44 Footprint (For Reference Only) ..... | 242  |

## TABLE (1/2)

| Table. No. | Title  | Page |
|------------|--|------|
| 1-1        | Differences between the $\mu$ PD78081, 78082 and 78P083, the $\mu$ PD78081(A), 78082(A) and 78P083(A), and the $\mu$ PD78081(A2) ..... | 13   |
| 2-1        | Type of Input/Output Circuit of Each Pin .....   | 22   |
| 3-1        | Vector Table .....   | 28   |
| 3-2        | Special-Function Register List (1/2) .....   | 38   |
| 3-2        | Special-Function Register List (2/2) .....   | 39   |
| 4-1        | Port Functions .....   | 54   |
| 4-2        | Port Configuration .....   | 55   |
| 4-3        | Port Mode Register and Output Latch Settings when Using Dual-Fucntions .....   | 64   |
| 5-1        | Clock Generator Configuration .....  | 69   |
| 5-2        | Maximum Time Required for CPU Clock Switchover .....   | 77   |
| 6-1        | Timer/Event Counter Types and Functions .....  | 79   |
| 6-2        | 8-Bit Timer/Event Counters 5 and 6 Interval Times .....  | 80   |
| 6-3        | 8-Bit Timer/Event Counters 5 and 6 Square-Wave Output Ranges .....   | 81   |
| 6-4        | 8-Bit Timer/Event Counters 5 and 6 Configurations .....  | 82   |
| 6-5        | 8-Bit Timer/Event Counters 5 and 6 Interval Times .....  | 92   |
| 6-6        | 8-Bit Timer/Event Counters 5 and 6 Square-Wave Output Ranges .....   | 95   |
| 7-1        | Watchdog Timer Overrun Detection Times .....   | 103  |
| 7-2        | Interval Times .....   | 104  |
| 7-3        | Watchdog Timer Configuration .....   | 105  |
| 7-4        | Watchdog Timer Overrun Detection Time .....  | 109  |
| 7-5        | Interval Timer Interval Time .....   | 110  |
| 8-1        | Clock Output Control Circuit Configuration .....   | 112  |
| 9-1        | Buzzer Output Control Circuit Configuration .....  | 115  |
| 10-1       | A/D Converter Configuration .....  | 119  |
| 11-1       | Serial Interface Channel 2 Configuration .....   | 136  |
| 11-2       | Serial Interface Channel 2 Operating Mode Settings .....   | 142  |
| 11-3       | Relation between Main System Clock and Baud Rate .....   | 146  |
| 11-4       | Relation between ASCK Pin Input Frequency and Baud Rate (When BRGC is set to 00H) .....  | 147  |
| 11-5       | Relation between Main System Clock and Baud Rate .....   | 155  |
| 11-6       | Relation between ASCK Pin Input Frequency and Baud Rate (When BRGC is set to 00H) .....  | 156  |
| 11-7       | Receive Error Causes .....   | 161  |

**TABLE (2/2)**

| Table. No. | Title   | Page |
|------------|---|------|
| 12-1       | Interrupt Source List .....   | 172  |
| 12-2       | Various Flags Corresponding to Interrupt Request Sources .....                    | 175  |
| 12-3       | Times from Maskable Interrupt Request Generation to Interrupt Service .....       | 184  |
| 12-4       | Interrupt Request Enabled for Multiple Interrupt during Interrupt Servicing ..... | 188  |
| 13-1       | HALT Mode Operating Status .....  | 195  |
| 13-2       | Operation after HALT Mode Release .....   | 197  |
| 13-3       | STOP Mode Operating Status .....  | 198  |
| 13-4       | Operation after STOP Mode Release .....   | 200  |
| 14-1       | Hardware Status after Reset (1/2) .....   | 203  |
| 14-1       | Hardware Status after Reset (2/2) .....   | 204  |
| 15-1       | Differences between the $\mu$ PD78P083 and Mask ROM Versions .....                | 205  |
| 15-2       | Examples of Memory Size Switching Register Settings .....                         | 206  |
| 15-3       | PROM Programming Operating Modes .....  | 207  |
| 16-1       | Operand Identifiers and Description Methods .....                                 | 216  |
| A-1        | System-Up Method from Other In-Circuit Emulator to IE-78000-R .....               | 240  |
| A-2        | System-Up Method from Other In-Circuit Emulator to IE-78000-R-A .....             | 240  |

[MEMO]

## CHAPTER 1 OUTLINE

### 1.1 Features

- On-chip ROM and RAM

| Type<br>Part Number | Program Memory<br>(ROM) | Data Memory<br>(Internal High-Speed RAM) |
|---------------------|-------------------------|--|
| $\mu$ PD78081       | 8 Kbytes                | 256 bytes                                |
| $\mu$ PD78082       | 16 Kbytes               | 384 bytes                                |
| $\mu$ PD78P083      | 24 Kbytes (Note)        | 512 bytes (Note)                         |

**Note** The capacities of internal PROM and internal high-speed RAM can be changed by means of the memory size switching register (IMS).

- Instruction execution time changeable from high speed (0.4  $\mu$ s: In main system clock 5.0 MHz operation) to low speed (12.8  $\mu$ s: In main system clock 5.0 MHz operation)
- Instruction set suited to system control
  - Bit manipulation possible in all address spaces
  - Multiply and divide instructions
- 33 I/O ports
- 8-bit resolution A/D converter: 8 channels
- Serial interface: 1 channel
  - 3-wire serial I/O/UART mode: 1 channel
- Timer: 3 channels
  - 8-bit timer/event counter : 2 channels
  - Watchdog timer : 1 channel
- Vectored Interrupt Source : 13
- Supply voltage:  $V_{DD} = 1.8$  to 5.5 V

★



## 1.2 Applications

### $\mu$ PD78081, 78082, 78P083:

Airbags, CRT displays, keyboards, air conditioners, hot water dispensers, boilers, fan heaters, dashboards, etc.

### ★ $\mu$ PD78081(A), 78082(A), 78P083(A), 78081(A2):

Automobile electrical control devices, gas detector cutoff devices, various safety devices, etc.

## ★ 1.3 Ordering Information

| Part number                                 | Package   | Internal ROM  |
|---|---|---------------|
| $\mu$ PD78081CU-xxx                         | 42-pin plastic shrink DIP (600 mil)               | Mask ROM      |
| $\mu$ PD78081GB-xxx-3B4                     | 44-pin plastic QFP (10 × 10 mm)                   | Mask ROM      |
| $\mu$ PD78081GB-xxx-3BS-MTX                 | 44-pin plastic QFP (10 × 10 mm)                   | Mask ROM      |
| $\mu$ PD78082CU-xxx                         | 42-pin plastic shrink DIP (600 mil)               | Mask ROM      |
| $\mu$ PD78082GB-xxx-3B4                     | 44-pin plastic QFP (10 × 10 mm)                   | Mask ROM      |
| $\mu$ PD78082GB-xxx-3BS-MTX                 | 44-pin plastic QFP (10 × 10 mm)                   | Mask ROM      |
| $\mu$ PD78P083CU                            | 42-pin plastic shrink DIP (600 mil)               | One-Time PROM |
| $\mu$ PD78P083DU                            | 42-pin ceramic shrink DIP (with window) (600 mil) | EPROM         |
| $\mu$ PD78P083GB-3B4                        | 44-pin plastic QFP (10 × 10 mm)                   | One-Time PROM |
| $\mu$ PD78P083GB-3BS-MTX                    | 44-pin plastic QFP (10 × 10 mm)                   | One-Time PROM |
| $\mu$ PD78081GB(A)-xxx-3B4                  | 44-pin plastic QFP (10 × 10 mm)                   | Mask ROM      |
| $\mu$ PD78082GB(A)-xxx-3B4                  | 44-pin plastic QFP (10 × 10 mm)                   | Mask ROM      |
| $\mu$ PD78P083CU(A)                         | 42-pin plastic shrink DIP (600 mil)               | One-Time PROM |
| $\mu$ PD78P083GB(A)-3B4                     | 44-pin plastic QFP (10 × 10 mm)                   | One-Time PROM |
| $\mu$ PD78P083GB(A)-3BS-MTX <sup>Note</sup> | 44-pin plastic QFP (10 × 10 mm)                   | One-Time PROM |
| $\mu$ PD78081GB(A2)-xxx-3B4                 | 44-pin plastic QFP (10 × 10 mm)                   | Mask ROM      |

**Note** Under development

**Remark** xxx indicates ROM code suffix.

★ 1.4 Quality Grade

| Part number                            | Package   | Quality grade  |
|--|---|----------------|
| μPD78081CU-xxx                         | 42-pin plastic shrink DIP (600 mil)               | Standard       |
| μPD78081GB-xxx-3B4                     | 44-pin plastic QFP (10 × 10 mm)                   | Standard       |
| μPD78081GB-xxx-3BS-MTX                 | 44-pin plastic QFP (10 × 10 mm)                   | Standard       |
| μPD78082CU-xxx                         | 42-pin plastic shrink DIP (600 mil)               | Standard       |
| μPD78082GB-xxx-3B4                     | 44-pin plastic QFP (10 × 10 mm)                   | Standard       |
| μPD78082GB-xxx-3BS-MTX                 | 44-pin plastic QFP (10 × 10 mm)                   | Standard       |
| μPD78P083CU                            | 42-pin plastic shrink DIP (600 mil)               | Standard       |
| μPD78P083DU                            | 42-pin ceramic shrink DIP (with window) (600 mil) | Not applicable |
| μPD78P083GB-3B4                        | 44-pin plastic QFP (10 × 10 mm)                   | Standard       |
| μPD78P083GB-3BS-MTX                    | 44-pin plastic QFP (10 × 10 mm)                   | Standard       |
| μPD78081GB(A)-xxx-3B4                  | 44-pin plastic QFP (10 × 10 mm)                   | Special        |
| μPD78082GB(A)-xxx-3B4                  | 44-pin plastic QFP (10 × 10 mm)                   | Special        |
| μPD78P083CU(A)                         | 42-pin plastic shrink DIP (600 mil)               | Special        |
| μPD78P083GB(A)-3B4                     | 44-pin plastic QFP (10 × 10 mm)                   | Special        |
| μPD78P083GB(A)-3BS-MTX <sup>Note</sup> | 44-pin plastic QFP (10 × 10 mm)                   | Special        |
| μPD78081GB(A)-xxx-3B4                  | 44-pin plastic QFP (10 × 10 mm)                   | Special        |

**Note** Under planning

**Remark** xxx indicates ROM code suffix.

Please refer to "Quality grade on NEC Semiconductor Devices" (Document number C11531E) published by NEC Corporation to know the specification of quality grade on the devices and its recommended applications.

## 1.5 Pin Configuration (Top View)

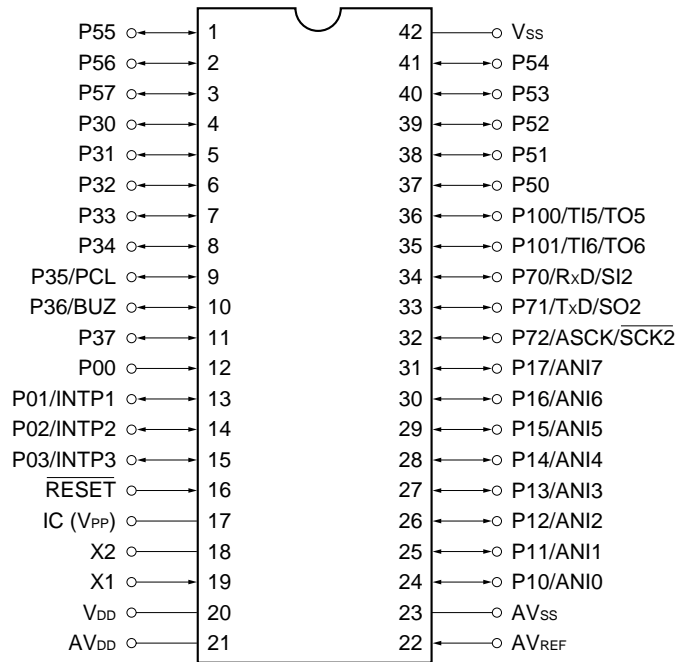
### (1) Normal operating mode

#### 42-pin plastic shrink DIP (600 mil)

$\mu$ PD78081CU-xxx, 78082CU-xxx, 78P083CU, 78P083CU(A)

#### 42-pin ceramic shrink DIP (with window) (600 mil)

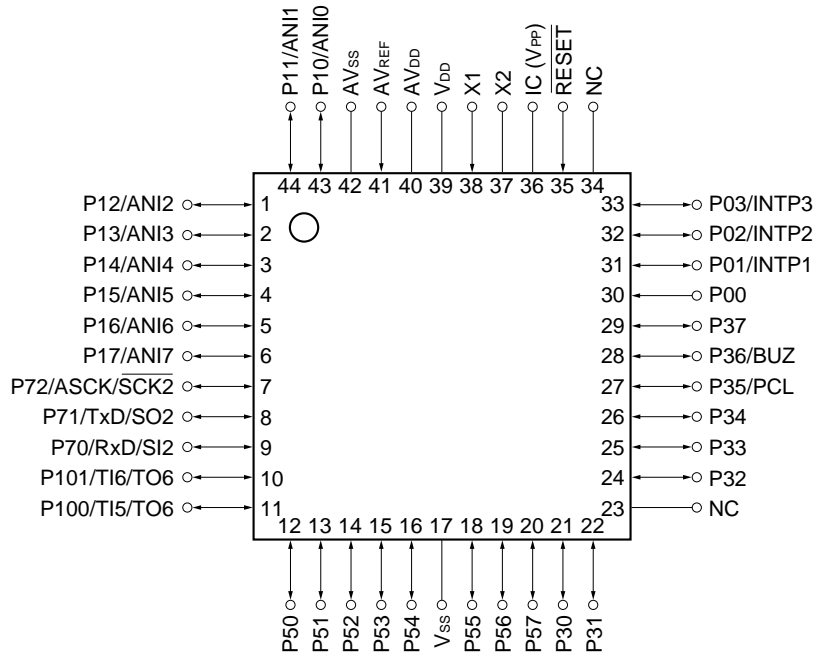
$\mu$ PD78P083DU



- Cautions**
1. Be sure to connect IC (Internally Connected) pin to V<sub>SS</sub> directly.
  2. Connect AV<sub>DD</sub> pin to V<sub>DD</sub>.
  3. Connect AV<sub>SS</sub> pin to V<sub>SS</sub>.

**Remark** Pin connection in parentheses is intended for the  $\mu$ PD78P083.

- **44-pin plastic QFP (10 × 10 mm)**  
 $\mu$ PD78081GB-xxx-3B4, 78081GB-xxx-3BS-MTX  
 $\mu$ PD78082GB-xxx-3B4, 78082GB-xxx-3BS-MTX  
 $\mu$ PD78P083GB-3B4, 78P083GB-3BS-MTX  
 $\mu$ PD78081GB(A)-xxx-3B4, 78082GB(A)-xxx-3B4  
 $\mu$ PD78P083GB(A)-3B4, 78P083GB(A)-3BS-MTX<sup>Note</sup>  
 $\mu$ PD78P081GB(A2)-xxx-3B4



**Note** Under development

- Cautions**
1. Be sure to connect IC (Internally Connected) pin to V<sub>SS</sub> directly.
  2. Connect AV<sub>DD</sub> pin to V<sub>DD</sub>.
  3. Connect AV<sub>SS</sub> pin to V<sub>SS</sub>.
  4. Connect NC pin to V<sub>SS</sub> for noise protection (It can be left open).

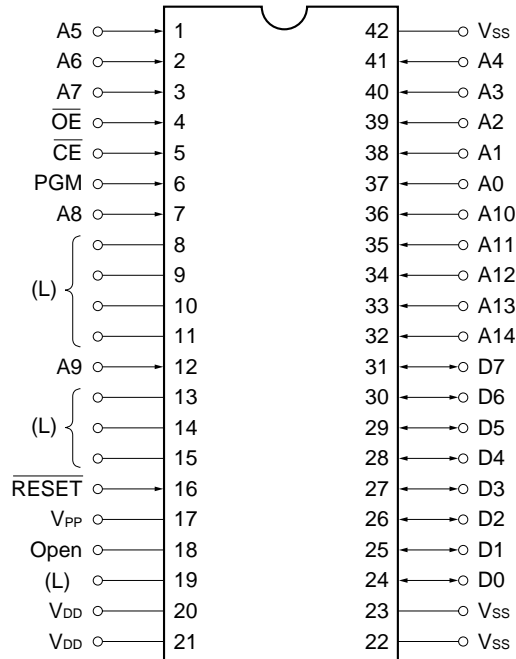
**Remark** Pin connection in parenthesis is intended for the  $\mu$ PD78P083.

**Pin Identifications**

|                   |                              |                 |                               |
|-------------------|------------------------------|-----------------|-------------------------------|
| ANI0 to ANI7      | : Analog Input               | P100, P101      | : Port 10                     |
| ASCK              | : Asynchronous Serial Clock  | PCL             | : Programmable Clock          |
| AV <sub>DD</sub>  | : Analog Power Supply        | <u>RESET</u>    | : Reset                       |
| AV <sub>REF</sub> | : Analog Reference Voltage   | <u>RxD</u>      | : Receive Data                |
| AV <sub>SS</sub>  | : Analog Ground              | <u>SCK2</u>     | : Serial Clock                |
| BUZ               | : Buzzer Clock               | SI2             | : Serial Input                |
| IC                | : Internally Connected       | SO2             | : Serial Output               |
| INTP1 to INTP3    | : Interrupt from Peripherals | TI5, TI6        | : Timer Input                 |
| NC                | : Non-connection             | TO5 to TO6      | : Timer Output                |
| P00 to P03        | : Port 0                     | TxD             | : Transmit Data               |
| P10 to P17        | : Port 1                     | V <sub>DD</sub> | : Power Supply                |
| P30 to P37        | : Port 3                     | V <sub>PP</sub> | : Programming Power Supply    |
| P50 to P57        | : Port 5                     | V <sub>SS</sub> | : Ground                      |
| P70 to P72        | : Port 7                     | X1, X2          | : Crystal (Main System Clock) |

(2) PROM programming mode

- **42-pin plastic shrink DIP (600 mil)**  
 $\mu$ PD78P083CU, 78P083CU(A)
- **42-pin ceramic shrink DIP (with window) (600 mil)**  
 $\mu$ PD78P083DU

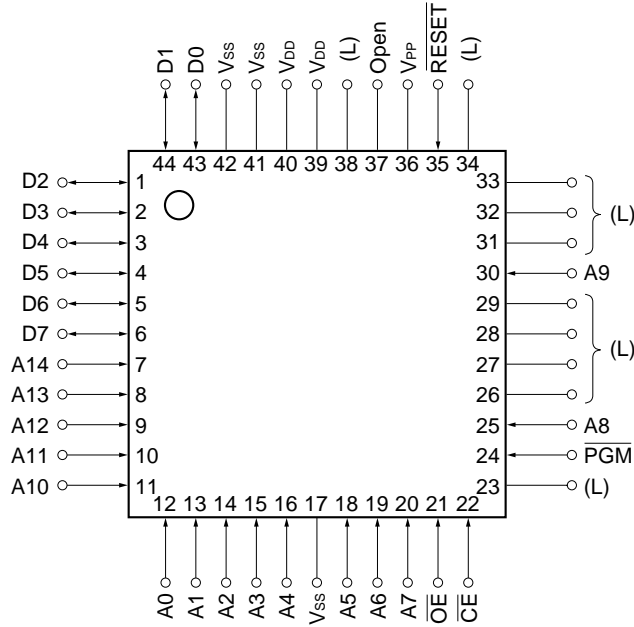


- Cautions**
1. (L) : Individually connect to Vss via a pull-down resistor.
  2. Vss : Connect to the ground.
  3. RESET: Set to the low level.
  4. Open : Do not connect anything.

• **44-pin plastic QFP (10 × 10 mm)**

μPD78P083GB-3B4, 78P083GB-3BS-MTX

μPD78P083GB(A)-3B4, 78P083GB(A)-3BS-MTX<sup>Note</sup>



**Note** Under development

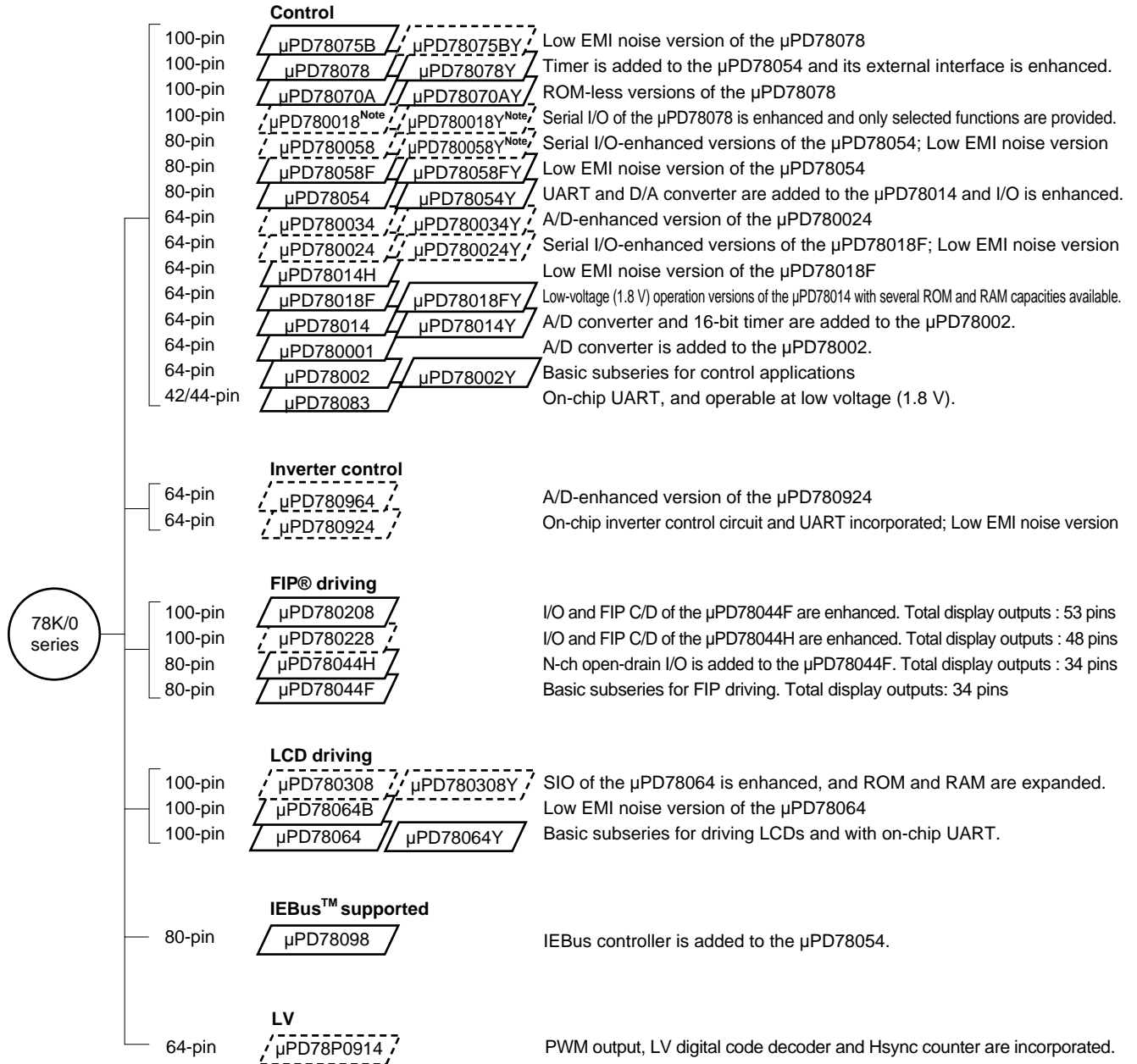
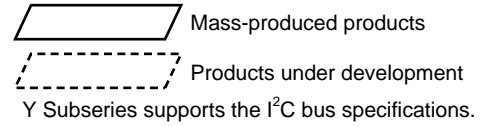
- Cautions**
1. (L) : Connect individually to V<sub>ss</sub> via a pull-down resistor.
  2. V<sub>ss</sub> : Connect to the ground.
  3.  $\overline{\text{RESET}}$  : Set to the low level.
  4. Open : Do not connect anything.

A0 to A14 : Address Bus  
 $\overline{\text{CE}}$  : Chip Enable  
 D0 to D7 : Data Bus  
 $\overline{\text{OE}}$  : Output Enable  
 $\overline{\text{PGM}}$  : Program

$\overline{\text{RESET}}$  : Reset  
 V<sub>DD</sub> : Power Supply  
 V<sub>PP</sub> : Programming Power Supply  
 V<sub>ss</sub> : Ground

1.6 78K/0 Series Development

The following shows the 78K/0 Series products development. Subseries names are shown inside frames.



**Note** Under planning

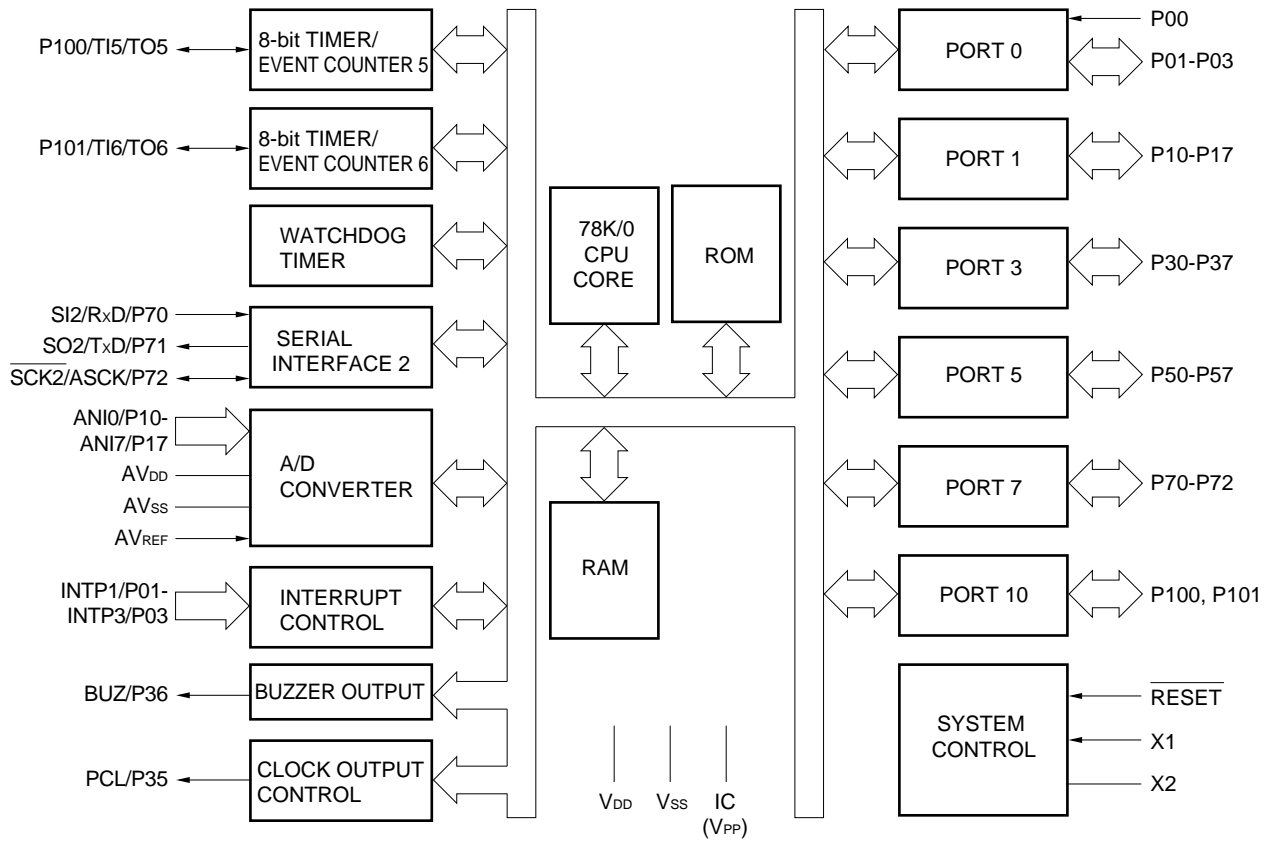


The following table shows the differences among subseries functions.

| Function<br>Subseries name | ROM<br>capacity | Timer      |        |       |      | 8-bit | 10-bit | 8-bit | Serial interface | I/O                                | V <sub>DD</sub><br>MIN.<br>value     | External<br>expansion                            |                   |       |       |           |
|----------------------------|-----------------|------------|--------|-------|------|-------|--------|-------|------------------|------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|--|-------------------|-------|-------|-----------|
|                            |                 | 8-bit      | 16-bit | Watch | WDT  | A/D   | A/D    | D/A   |                  |                                    |                                      |  |                   |       |       |           |
| Control                    | μPD78075B       | 32K to 40K | 4 ch   | 1 ch  | 1 ch | 1 ch  | 8 ch   | —     | 2 ch             | 3 ch (UART: 1 ch)                  | 88                                   | 1.8 V  | Available         |       |       |           |
|                            | μPD78078        | 48K to 60K |        |       |      |       |        |       |                  |                                    | 61                                   | 2.7 V  |                   |       |       |           |
|                            | μPD78070A       | —          |        |       |      |       |        |       |                  |                                    |                                      |  |                   |       |       |           |
|                            | μPD780018       | 48K to 60K |        |       |      |       |        |       |                  | 2 ch                               | 3 ch (Time division<br>3-wire: 1 ch) | 88   |                   |       |       |           |
|                            | μPD780058       | 24K to 60K |        |       |      |       |        |       |                  |                                    |                                      | 68   |                   | 1.8 V |       |           |
|                            | μPD78058F       | 48K to 60K |        |       |      |       |        |       |                  |                                    |                                      |  |                   |       | 69    | 2.7 V     |
|                            | μPD78054        | 16K to 60K |        |       |      |       |        |       |                  |                                    |                                      |  |                   |       |       |           |
|                            | μPD780034       | 8K to 32K  |        |       |      |       |        |       |                  | 2 ch                               | —                                    | 3 ch (UART: 1 ch, Time<br>division 3-wire: 1 ch) |                   | 51    | 1.8 V |           |
|                            | μPD780024       |            |        |       |      |       |        |       |                  |                                    |                                      |  |                   | 8 ch  |       | 53        |
|                            | μPD78014H       | 2 ch       |        |       |      |       |        |       |                  |                                    |                                      |  |                   | 53    | 2.7 V |           |
|                            | μPD78018F       |            |        |       |      |       |        |       |                  |                                    |                                      |  |                   |       |       | 8K to 60K |
|                            | μPD78014        |            |        |       |      |       |        |       |                  |                                    |                                      |  |                   |       |       | 8K to 32K |
|                            | μPD780001       | 8K         |        |       |      |       |        |       |                  |                                    |                                      |  |                   | 39    | —     |           |
|                            | μPD78002        | 8K to 16K  |        |       |      |       |        |       |                  |                                    |                                      |  |                   |       |       | 53        |
| μPD78083                   | 8K              | 33         | 1.8 V  | —     |      |       |        |       |                  |                                    |                                      |  |                   |       |       |           |
| Inverter<br>control        | μPD780964       | 8K to 32K  | 3 ch   | Note  | —    | 1 ch  | —      | 8 ch  | —                |                                    |                                      |  | 2 ch (UART: 2 ch) | 47    | 2.7 V | Available |
|                            | μPD780924       |            |        |       |      |       | 8 ch   |       |                  |                                    |                                      |  |                   |       |       |           |
| FIP driving                | μPD780208       | 32K to 60K | 2 ch   | 1 ch  | 1 ch | 1 ch  | 8 ch   | —     | —                |                                    |                                      |  | 2 ch              | 74    | 2.7 V | —         |
|                            | μPD780228       | 48K to 60K |        |       |      |       |        |       |                  |                                    |                                      |  | 1 ch              | 72    | 4.5 V |           |
|                            | μPD78044H       | 32K to 48K |        |       |      |       |        |       |                  |                                    |                                      |  | 68                | 2.7 V |       |           |
|                            | μPD78044F       | 16K to 40K |        |       |      |       |        |       |                  |                                    |                                      |  |                   |       | 2 ch  |           |
| LCD<br>driving             | μPD780308       | 48K to 60K | 2 ch   | 1 ch  | 1 ch | 1 ch  | 8 ch   | —     | —                | 3 ch (Time division<br>UART: 1 ch) | 57                                   | 2.0 V  | —                 |       |       |           |
|                            | μPD78064B       | 32K        |        |       |      |       |        |       |                  | 2 ch (UART: 1 ch)                  |                                      |  |                   |       |       |           |
|                            | μPD78064        | 16K to 32K |        |       |      |       |        |       |                  |                                    |                                      |  |                   |       |       |           |
| IEBus<br>supported         | μPD78098        | 32K to 60K | 2 ch   | 1 ch  | 1 ch | 1 ch  | 8 ch   | —     | 2 ch             | 3 ch (UART: 1 ch)                  | 69                                   | 2.7 V  | Available         |       |       |           |
| LV                         | μPD78P0914      | 32K        | 6 ch   | —     | —    | 1 ch  | 8 ch   | —     | —                | 2 ch                               | 54                                   | 4.5 V  | Available         |       |       |           |

Note 10 bits timer: 1 channel

1.7 Block Diagram



- Remarks**
1. The internal ROM and high-speed RAM capacities depend on the product.
  2. Pin connection in parentheses is intended for the  $\mu$ PD78P083.

## 1.8 Outline of Function

| Part Number                   |                | $\mu$ PD78081   | $\mu$ PD78082 | $\mu$ PD78083             |
|-------------------------------|----------------|---|---------------|---------------------------|
| Internal memory               | ROM            | Mask ROM  |               | PROM                      |
|                               |                | 8 Kbytes  | 16 Kbytes     | 24 Kbytes <sup>Note</sup> |
|                               | High-speed RAM | 256 bytes   | 384 bytes     | 512 bytes <sup>Note</sup> |
| Memory space                  |                | 64 Kbytes   |               |                           |
| General register              |                | 8 bits $\times$ 32 registers (8 bits $\times$ 8 registers $\times$ 4 banks)   |               |                           |
| Instruction cycle             |                | Instruction execution time variable function is integrated.<br>0.4 $\mu$ s/0.8 $\mu$ s/1.6 $\mu$ s/3.2 $\mu$ s/6.4 $\mu$ s/12.8 $\mu$ s (@5.0-MHz operation with main system clock)   |               |                           |
| Instruction set               |                | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 16-bit operation</li> <li>• Multiply/divide (8 bits <math>\times</math> 8 bits, 16 bits <math>\div</math> 8 bits)</li> <li>• Bit manipulation (set, reset, test, Boolean operation)</li> <li>• BCD adjust, etc.</li> </ul> |               |                           |
| I/O ports                     |                | Total : 33<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• CMOS input : 1</li> <li>• CMOS input/output : 32</li> </ul>  |               |                           |
| A/D converter                 |                | • 8-bit resolution $\times$ 8 channels  |               |                           |
| Serial interface              |                | • 3-wire serial I/O/UART mode selectable: 1 channel   |               |                           |
| Timer                         |                | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 8-bit timer/event counter: 2 channels</li> <li>• Watchdog timer: 1 channel</li> </ul>  |               |                           |
| Timer output                  |                | 2 pins (8-bit PWM output enable)  |               |                           |
| Clock output                  |                | 19.5 kHz, 39.1 kHz, 78.1 kHz, 156 kHz, 313 kHz, 625 kHz, 1.25 MHz, 2.5 MHz, and 5.0 MHz (@ 5.0-MHz operation with main system clock)  |               |                           |
| Buzzer output                 |                | 1.2 kHz, 2.4 kHz, 4.9 kHz, and 9.8 kHz<br>(@ 5.0-MHz operation with main system clock)  |               |                           |
| Vectored interrupt source     | Maskable       | Internal : 8 external : 3   |               |                           |
|                               | Non-maskable   | Internal : 1  |               |                           |
|                               | Software       | 1   |               |                           |
| Supply voltage                |                | $V_{DD} = 1.8$ to 5.5 V   |               |                           |
| Operating ambient temperature |                | $T_A = -40$ to $+85^\circ\text{C}$  |               |                           |
| Package                       |                | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 42-pin plastic shrink DIP (600 mil)</li> <li>• 44-pin plastic QFP (10 <math>\times</math> 10 mm)</li> <li>• 42-pin ceramic shrink DIP (with window) (600 mil) (<math>\mu</math>PD78P083 only)</li> </ul>                   |               |                           |

★ **Note** Internal PROM and high-speed RAM capacities can be changed by setting the internal memory size switching register (IMS).

★ 1.9 Differences between the  $\mu$ PD78081, 78082 and 78P083, the  $\mu$ PD78081(A), 78082(A) and 78P083(A), and the  $\mu$ PD78081(A2)

Table 1-1 Differences between the  $\mu$ PD78081, 78082 and 78P083, the  $\mu$ PD78081(A), 78082(A) and 78P083(A), and the  $\mu$ PD78081(A2)

| Part Number                   | $\mu$ PD78081<br>$\mu$ PD78082<br>$\mu$ PD78P083 | $\mu$ PD78081(A)<br>$\mu$ PD78082(A)<br>$\mu$ PD78P083(A) | $\mu$ PD78081(A2)                   |
|-------------------------------|--|---|-------------------------------------|
| Item                          |  |   |                                     |
| Quality grade                 | Standard   | Special   |                                     |
| Supply voltage                | $V_{DD} = 1.8$ to $5.5$ V                        |   | $V_{DD} = 4.5$ to $5.5$ V           |
| Operating ambient temperature | $T_A = -40$ to $+85^\circ\text{C}$               |   | $T_A = -40$ to $+125^\circ\text{C}$ |
| Electrical specifications     | Please refer to the individual data sheets.      |   |                                     |

[MEMO]

## CHAPTER 2 PIN FUNCTION

### 2.1 Pin Function List

#### 2.1.1 Normal operating mode pins

##### (1) Port pins

| Pin Name | Input/Output | Function   |  | After Reset | Alternate Function |
|----------|--------------|--|--|-------------|--------------------|
| P00      | Input        | Port 0<br>4-bit input/output port  | Input only   | Input       | —                  |
| P01      | Input/output |  | Input/output is specifiable bit-wise. When used as the input port, it is possible to connect a pull-up resistor by software. | Input       | INTP1              |
| P02      |              |  |  |             | INTP2              |
| P03      |              |  |  |             | INTP3              |
| P10-P17  | Input/output | Port 1<br>8-bit input/output port<br>Input/output is specifiable bit-wise.<br>When used as the input port, it is possible to connect a pull-up resistor by software. <small>Note</small>                                       |  | Input       | ANI0-ANI7          |
| P30-P34  | Input/output | Port 3<br>8-bit input/output port<br>Input/output is specifiable bit-wise.<br>When used as the input port, it is possible to connect a pull-up resistor by software.   |  | Input       | —                  |
| P35      |              |  |  |             | PCL                |
| P36      |              |  |  |             | BUZ                |
| P37      |              |  |  |             | —                  |
| P50-P57  | Input/output | Port 5<br>8-bit input/output port<br>A maximum of 7 out of 8 ports can drive LEDs directly.<br>Input/output is specifiable bit-wise.<br>When used as the input port, it is possible to connect a pull-up resistor by software. |  | Input       | —                  |
| P70      | Input/output | Port 7<br>3-bit input/output port<br>Input/output is specifiable bit-wise.<br>When used as the input port, it is possible to connect a pull-up resistor by software.   |  | Input       | SI2/RxD            |
| P71      |              |  |  |             | SO2/TxD            |
| P72      |              |  |  |             | SCK2/ASCK          |
| P100     | Input/output | Port 10<br>2-bit input/output port<br>Input/output is specifiable bit-wise.<br>When used as the input port, it is possible to connect a pull-up resistor by software.  |  | Input       | TI5/TO5            |
| P101     |              |  |  |             | TI6/TO6            |

**Note** When P10/ANI0-P17/ANI7 pins are used as the analog inputs for the A/D converter, set the port 1 to the input mode. The on-chip pull-up resistor is automatically disabled.

(2) Pins other than port pins

| Pin Name                  | Input/Output | Function  | After Reset | Alternate Function            |
|---------------------------|--------------|---|-------------|-------------------------------|
| INTP1                     | Input        | External interrupt request input by which the active edge (rising edge, falling edge, or both rising and falling edges) can be specified. | Input       | P01                           |
| INTP2                     |              |   |             | P02                           |
| INTP3                     |              |   |             | P03                           |
| SI2                       | Input        | Serial interface serial data input.   | Input       | P70/RxD                       |
| SO2                       | Output       | Serial interface serial data output.  | Input       | P71/TxD                       |
| $\overline{\text{SCK2}}$  | Input/output | Serial interface serial clock input/output.   | Input       | P72/ASCK                      |
| RxD                       | Input        | Asynchronous serial interface serial data input.  | Input       | P70/SI2                       |
| TxD                       | Output       | Asynchronous serial interface serial data output.   | Input       | P71/SO2                       |
| ASCK                      | Input        | Asynchronous serial interface serial clock input.   | Input       | P72/ $\overline{\text{SCK2}}$ |
| TI5                       | Input        | External count clock input to 8-bit timer (TM5).  | Input       | P100/TO5                      |
| TI6                       |              | External count clock input to 8-bit timer (TM6).  |             | P101/TO6                      |
| TO5                       | Output       | 8-bit timer output. (also used for 8-bit PWM output)  | Input       | P100/TI5                      |
| TO6                       |              |   |             | P101/TI6                      |
| PCL                       | Output       | Clock output. (for main system clock trimming)  | Input       | P35                           |
| BUZ                       | Output       | Buzzer output.  | Input       | P36                           |
| ANI0-ANI7                 | Input        | A/D converter analog input.   | Input       | P10-P17                       |
| AV <sub>REF</sub>         | Input        | A/D converter reference voltage input.  | —           | —                             |
| AV <sub>DD</sub>          | —            | A/D converter analog power supply. Connected to V <sub>DD</sub> .   | —           | —                             |
| AV <sub>SS</sub>          | —            | A/D converter ground potential. Connected to V <sub>SS</sub> .  | —           | —                             |
| $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ | Input        | System reset input.   | —           | —                             |
| X1                        | Input        | Main system clock oscillation crystal connection.   | —           | —                             |
| X2                        | —            |   | —           | —                             |
| V <sub>DD</sub>           | —            | Positive power supply.  | —           | —                             |
| V <sub>PP</sub>           | —            | High-voltage applied during program write/verification. Connected directly to V <sub>SS</sub> in normal operating mode.                   | —           | —                             |
| V <sub>SS</sub>           | —            | Ground potential.   | —           | —                             |
| IC                        | —            | Internal connection. Connect directly to V <sub>SS</sub> .  | —           | —                             |
| NC                        | —            | Does not internally connected. Connect to V <sub>SS</sub> . (It can be left open)   | —           | —                             |

2.1.2 PROM programming mode pins ( $\mu$ PD78P083 only)

| Pin Name                  | Input/Output | Function   |
|---------------------------|--------------|--|
| $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ | Input        | PROM programming mode setting.<br>When +5 V or +12.5 V is applied to the V <sub>PP</sub> pin or a low level voltage is applied to the $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ pin, the PROM programming mode is set. |
| V <sub>PP</sub>           | Input        | High-voltage application for PROM programming mode setting and program write/verify.   |
| A0 to A14                 | Input        | Address bus  |
| D0 to D7                  | Input/output | Data bus   |
| $\overline{\text{CE}}$    | Input        | PROM enable input/program pulse input  |
| $\overline{\text{OE}}$    | Input        | Read strobe input to PROM  |
| $\overline{\text{PGM}}$   | Input        | Program/program inhibit input in PROM programming mode   |
| V <sub>DD</sub>           | —            | Positive power supply  |
| V <sub>SS</sub>           | —            | Ground potential   |

## 2.2 Description of Pin Functions

### 2.2.1 P00 to P03 (Port 0)

These are 4-bit input/output ports. Besides serving as input/output ports, they function as an external interrupt request input.

The following operating modes can be specified bit-wise.

#### (1) Port mode

P00 functions as input-only port and P01 to P03 function as input/output ports.

P01 to P03 can be specified for input or output ports bit-wise with a port mode register 0 (PM0). When they are used as input ports, on-chip pull-up resistors can be used to them by defining the pull-up resistor option register L (PUOL).

#### (2) Control mode

INTP1 to INTP3 function as external interrupt request input pins which are capable of specifying the valid edges (rising edge, falling edge, and both rising and falling edges).

### 2.2.2 P10 to P17 (Port 1)

These are 8-bit input/output ports. Besides serving as input/output ports, they function as an A/D converter analog input.

The following operating modes can be specified bit-wise.

#### (1) Port mode

These ports function as 8-bit input/output ports.

They can be specified bit-wise as input or output ports with a port mode register 1 (PM1). If used as input ports, on-chip pull-up resistors can be used to these ports by defining the pull-up resistor option register L (PUOL).

#### (2) Control mode

These ports function as A/D converter analog input pins (ANI0-ANI7). The on-chip pull-up resistor is automatically disabled when the pins specified for analog input.



### 2.2.3 P30 to P37 (Port 3)

These are 8-bit input/output ports. Beside serving as input/output ports, they function as clock output and buzzer output.

The following operating modes can be specified bit-wise.

#### (1) Port mode

These ports function as 8-bit input/output ports. They can be specified bit-wise as input or output ports with port mode register 3 (PM3). When they are used as input ports, on-chip pull-up resistors can be used by defining the pull-up resistor option register L (PUOL).

#### (2) Control mode

These ports function as clock output, and buzzer output.

##### (a) PCL

Clock output pin.

##### (b) BUZ

Buzzer output pin.

### 2.2.4 P50 to P57 (Port 5)

These are 8-bit input/output ports. They can be specified bit-wise as input/output ports with port mode register 5 (PM5). When they are used as input ports, on-chip pull-up resistors can be used by defining the pull-up resistor option register L (PUOL). A maximum of 7 out of 8 ports can drive LEDs directly.

### 2.2.5 P70 to P72 (Port 7)

This is a 3-bit input/output port. In addition to its use as an input/output port, it also has serial interface data input/output and clock input/output functions.

The following operating modes can be specified bit-wise.

#### (1) Port mode

Port 7 functions as a 3-bit input/output port. Bit-wise specification as an input port or output port is possible by means of port mode register 7 (PM7). When used as input ports, on-chip pull-up resistors can be used by defining the pull-up resistor option register L (PUOL).

#### (2) Control mode

Port 7 functions as serial interface data input/output and clock input/output.

##### (a) SI2, SO2

Serial interface serial data input/output pins

##### (b) $\overline{\text{SCK2}}$

Serial interface serial clock input/output pin.

##### (c) RxD, TxD

Asynchronous serial interface serial data input/output pins.

##### (d) ASCK

Asynchronous serial interface serial clock input pin.

★ **Caution** When this port is used as a serial interface, the I/O and output latches must be set according to the function the user requires.  
For the setting, see the operation mode setting list in Table 11-2 “Serial Interface Channel 2 Operating Mode Settings”

### 2.2.6 P100 to P101 (Port 10)

These are 2-bit input/output ports. Besides serving as input/output ports, they function as timer input/output. The following operating modes can be specified bit-wise.

#### (1) Port mode

These ports function as 2-bit input/output ports. They can be specified bit-wise as input or output ports with port mode register 10 (PM10). When they are used as input ports, on-chip pull-up resistors can be used by defining the pull-up resistor option register H (PUOH).

#### (2) Control mode

These ports function as timer input/output.

##### (a) TI5, TI6

Pin for external clock input to the 8-bit timer/event counter 5 and 6.

##### (b) TO5, TO6

Timer output pins.

### 2.2.7 AV<sub>REF</sub>

A/D converter reference voltage input pin.

When A/D converter is not used, connect this pin to V<sub>SS</sub>.

### 2.2.8 AV<sub>DD</sub>

Analog power supply pin of A/D converter. Always use the same voltage as that of the V<sub>DD</sub> pin even when A/D converter is not used.

### 2.2.9 AV<sub>SS</sub>

This is a ground voltage pin of A/D converter. Always use the same voltage as that of the V<sub>SS</sub> pin even when A/D converter is not used.

### 2.2.10 $\overline{\text{RESET}}$

This is a low-level active system reset input pin.

### 2.2.11 X1 and X2

Crystal resonator connect pins for main system clock oscillation. For external clock supply, input it to X1 and its inverted signal to X2.

### 2.2.12 V<sub>DD</sub>

Positive power supply pin

### 2.2.13 V<sub>SS</sub>

Ground potential pin

### 2.2.14 V<sub>PP</sub> ( $\mu$ PD78P083 only)

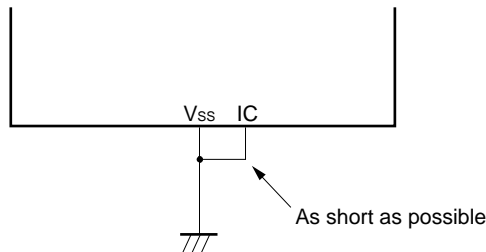
High-voltage apply pin for PROM programming mode setting and program write/verify. Connect directly to V<sub>SS</sub> in normal operating mode.

**2.2.15 IC (Mask ROM version only)**

The IC (Internally Connected) pin is provided to set the test mode to check the  $\mu$ PD78083 Subseries at delivery. Connect it directly to the V<sub>SS</sub> with the shortest possible wire in the normal operating mode.

When a voltage difference is produced between the IC pin and V<sub>SS</sub> pin because the wiring between those two pins is too long or an external noise is input to the IC pin, the user's program may not run normally.

- **Connect IC pins to V<sub>SS</sub> pins directly.**



**2.2.16 NC (44-pin plastic QFP versions only)**

Not internally connected. Please connect to V<sub>SS</sub> (open is also possible)

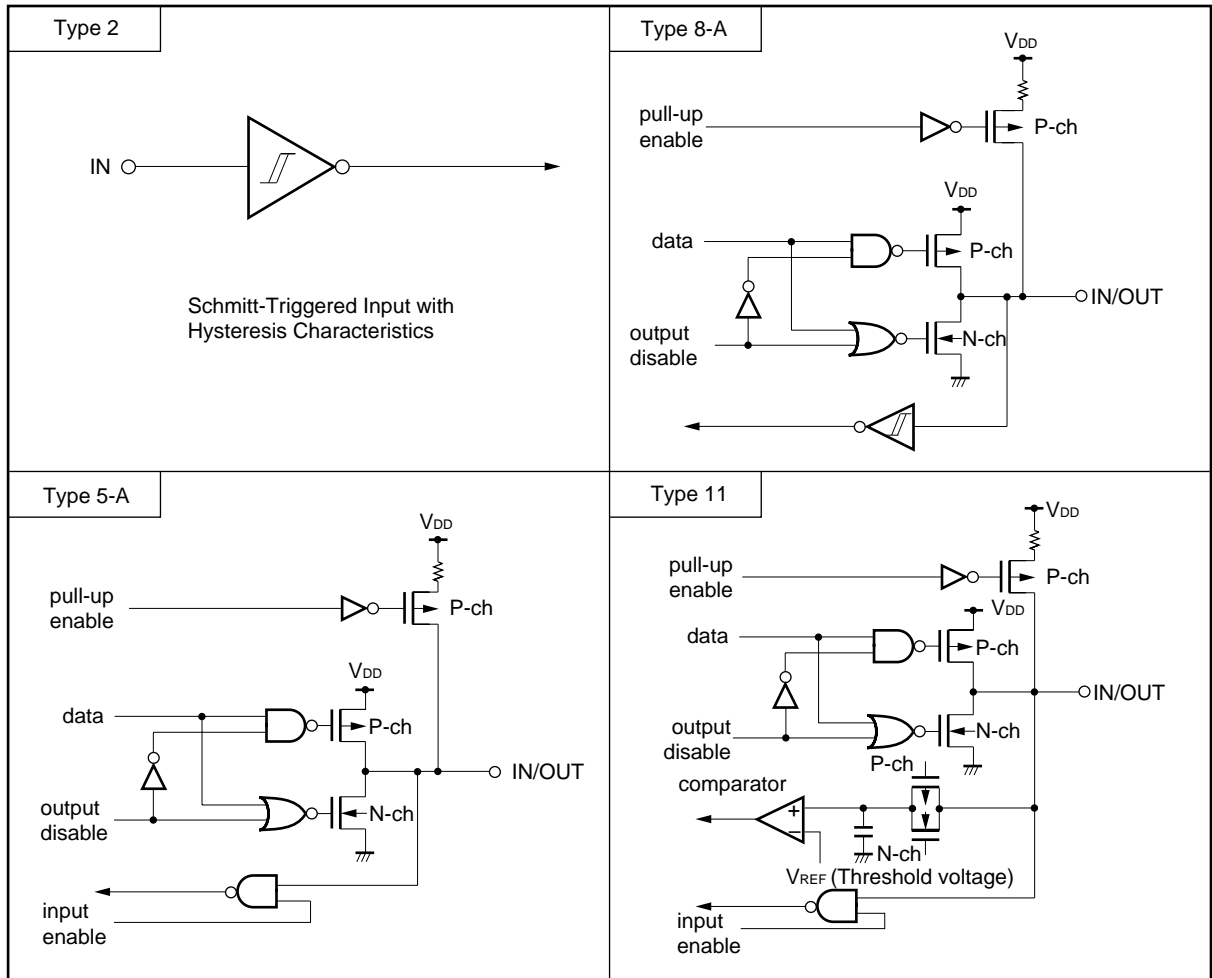
**2.3 Pin Input/Output Circuits and Recommended Connection of Unused Pins**

Types of input/output circuits of the pins and recommended connection of unused pins are shown in Table 2-1. For the configuration of each type of input/output circuit, see Figure 2-1.

**Table 2-1. Type of Input/Output Circuit of Each Pin**

| Pin Name                        | Input/Output Circuit Type | Input/Output                                     | Recommended Connection for Unused Pins                                      |       |                              |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------|--|---|-------|------------------------------|
| P00                             | 2                         | Input  | Connect to V <sub>SS</sub> .  |       |                              |
| P01/INTP1                       | 8-A                       | Input/Output                                     | Independently connect to V <sub>SS</sub> via a resistor.                    |       |                              |
| P02/INTP2                       |                           |  |   |       |                              |
| P03/INTP3                       |                           |  |   |       |                              |
| P10/ANI0-P17/ANI7               | 11                        | Input/Output                                     | Independently connect to V <sub>DD</sub> or V <sub>SS</sub> via a resistor. |       |                              |
| P30-P32                         | 5-A                       |  |   |       |                              |
| P33, P34                        | 8-A                       |  |   |       |                              |
| P35/PCL                         | 5-A                       |  |   |       |                              |
| P36/BUZ                         |                           |  |   |       |                              |
| P37                             |                           |  |   |       |                              |
| P50-P57                         | 5-A                       |  |   |       |                              |
| P70/SI2/RxD                     | 8-A                       |  |   |       |                              |
| P71/SO2/TxD                     | 5-A                       |  |   |       |                              |
| P72/SCK2/ASCK                   | 8-A                       |  |   |       |                              |
| P100/TI5/TO5                    | 8-A                       |  |   |       |                              |
| P101/TI6/TO6                    |                           |  |   |       |                              |
| RESET                           | 2                         |  |   | Input | –                            |
| AV <sub>REF</sub>               | –                         |  |   | –     | Connect to V <sub>SS</sub> . |
| AV <sub>DD</sub>                |                           | Connect to V <sub>DD</sub> .                     |   |       |                              |
| AV <sub>SS</sub>                |                           | Connect to V <sub>SS</sub> .                     |   |       |                              |
| V <sub>PP</sub> (μPD78P083)     |                           | Connect directly to V <sub>SS</sub> .            |   |       |                              |
| NC (44-pin plastic QFP version) |                           | Connect to V <sub>SS</sub> (can also leave open) |   |       |                              |
| IC (Mask ROM version)           |                           | Connect directly to V <sub>SS</sub> .            |   |       |                              |

Figure 2-1. Pin Input/Output Circuit of List



[MEMO]

## CHAPTER 3 CPU ARCHITECTURE

### 3.1 Memory Spaces

Figures 3-1 to 3-3 shows memory maps.

**Figure 3-1. Memory Map ( $\mu$ PD78081)**

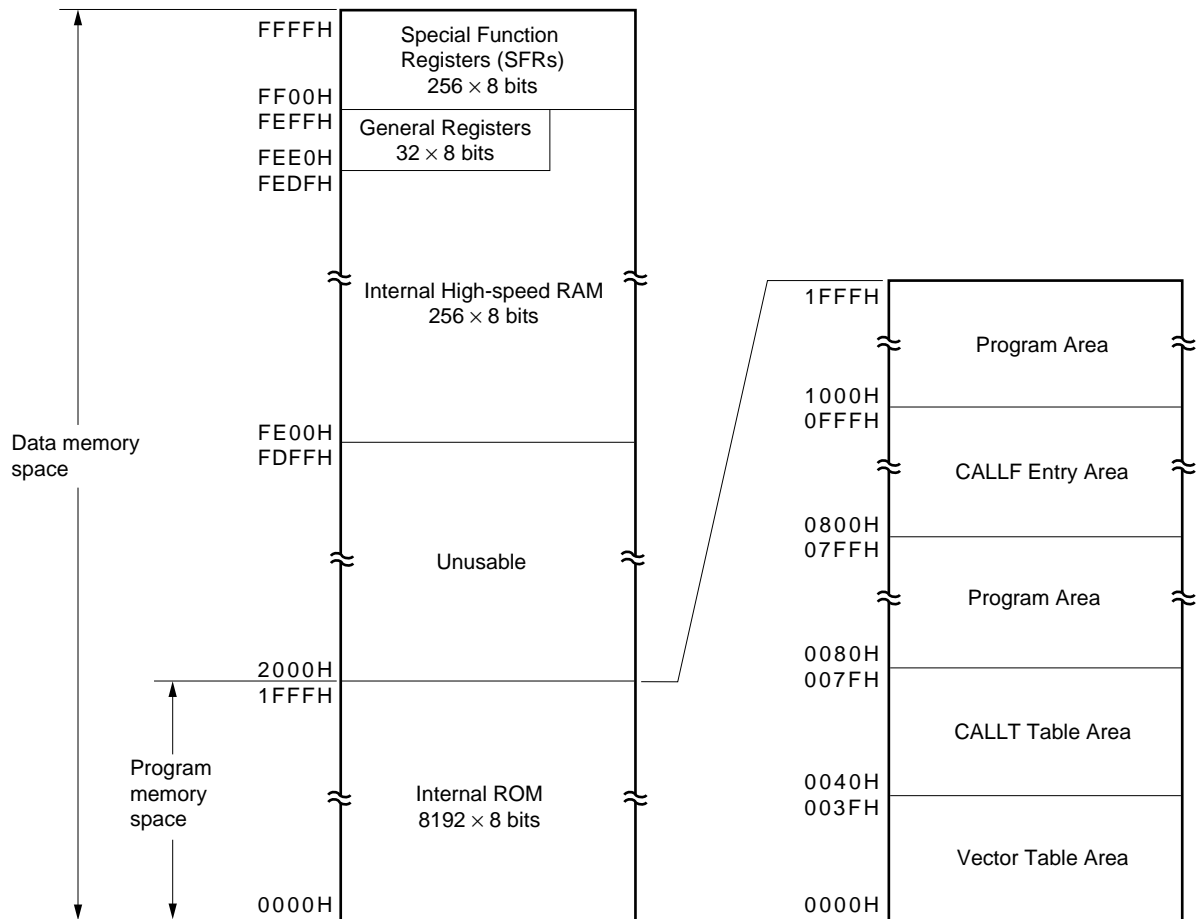




Figure 3-2. Memory Map ( $\mu$ PD78082)

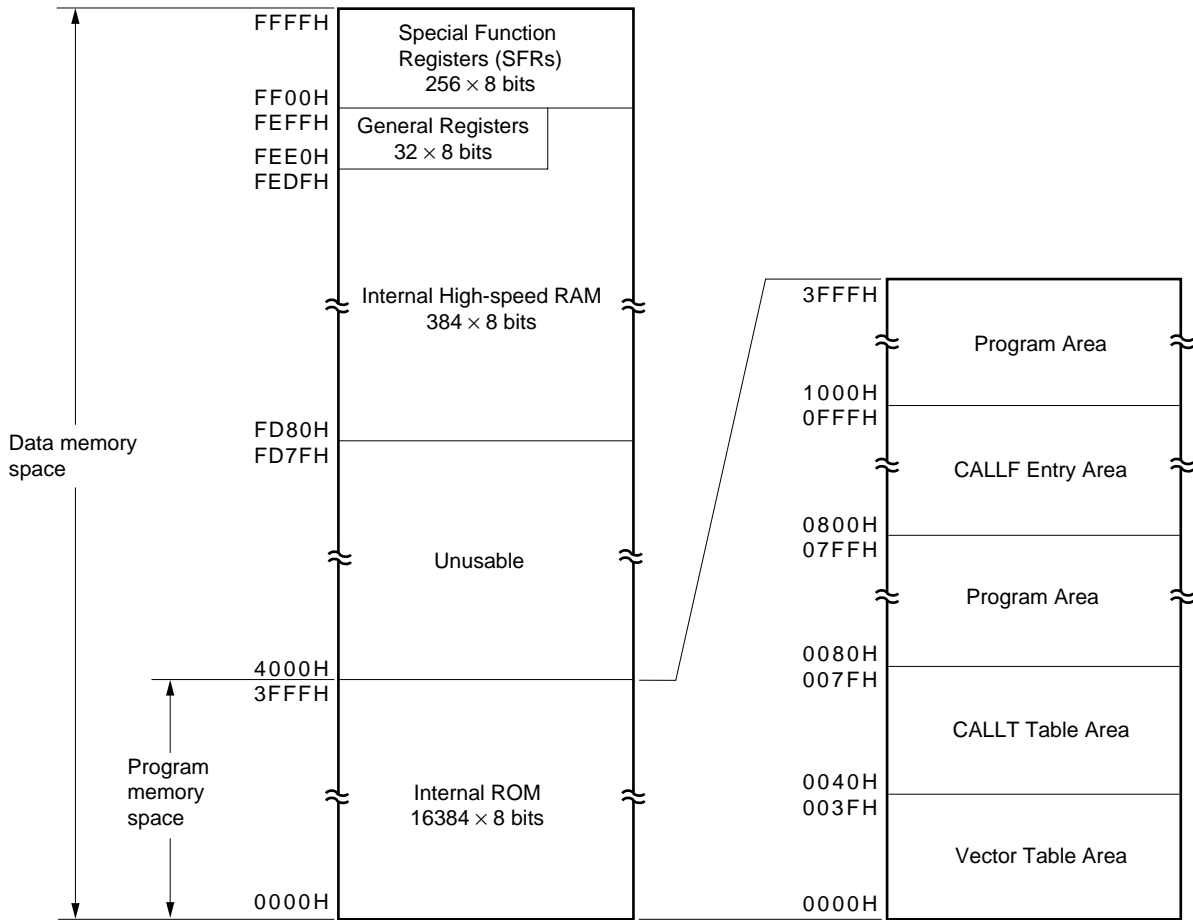
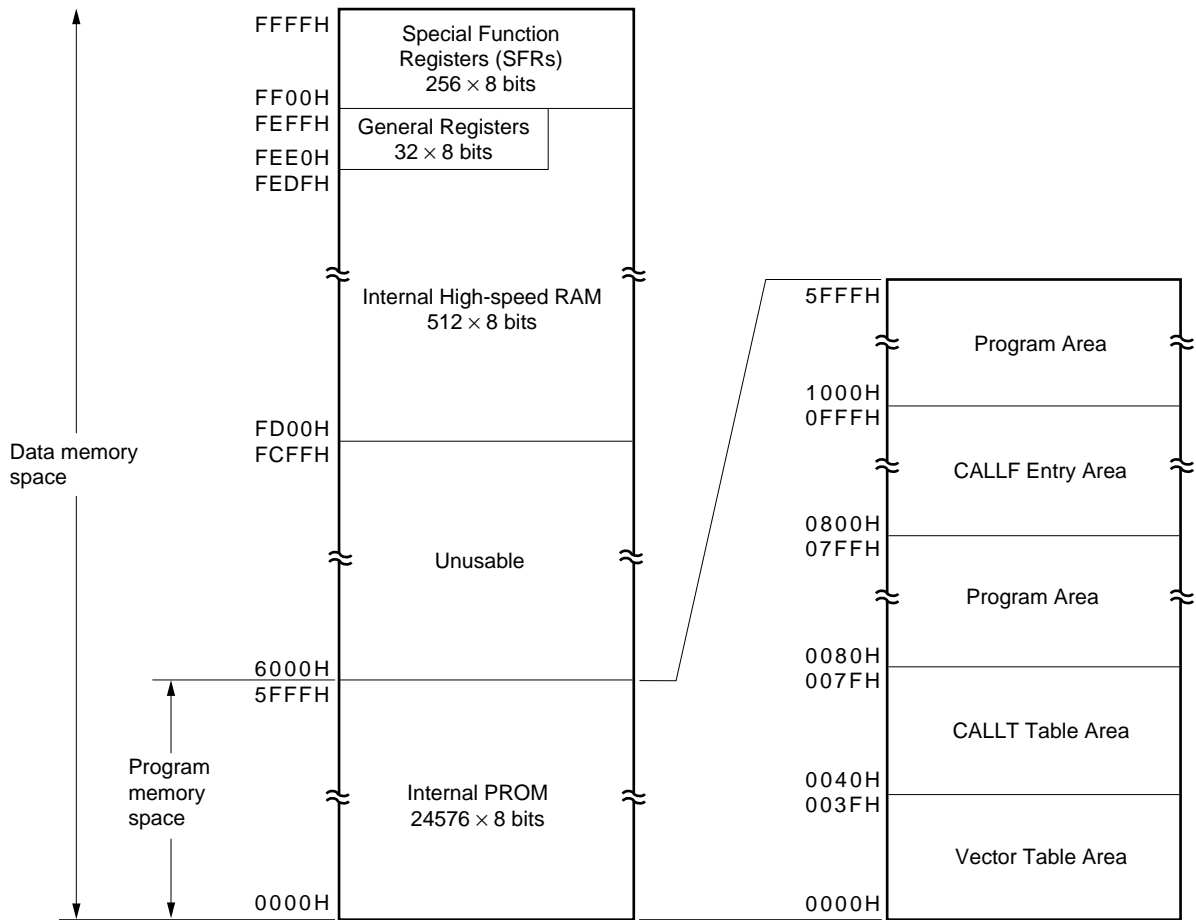


Figure 3-3. Memory Map ( $\mu$ PD78P083)



**3.1.1 Internal program memory space**

The internal program memory is mask ROM with a  $8192 \times 8$ -bit configuration in the  $\mu$ PD78081, and a  $16384 \times 8$ -bit configuration in the  $\mu$ PD78082, and PROM with a  $24576 \times 8$ -bit configuration in the  $\mu$ PD78P083.

The internal program memory space stores programs and table data. Normally, they are addressed with a program counter (PC).

The internal program memory is divided into the following three areas.

**(1) Vector table area**

The 64-byte area 0000H to 003FH is reserved as a vector table area. The  $\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input and program start addresses for branch upon generation of each interrupt request are stored in the vector table area. Of the 16-bit address, low-order 8 bits are stored at even addresses and high-order 8 bits are stored at odd addresses.

**Table 3-1. Vector Table**

| Vector Table Address | Interrupt Request               |
|----------------------|---------------------------------|
| 0000H                | $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ input |
| 0004H                | INTWDT                          |
| 0008H                | INTP1                           |
| 000AH                | INTP2                           |
| 000CH                | INTP3                           |
| 0018H                | INTSER                          |
| 001AH                | INTSR/INTCSI2                   |
| 001CH                | INTST                           |
| 0028H                | INTAD                           |
| 002AH                | INTTM5                          |
| 002CH                | INTTM6                          |
| 003EH                | BRK                             |

**(2) CALLT instruction table area**

The 64-byte area 0040H to 007FH can store the subroutine entry address of a 1-byte call instruction (CALLT).

**(3) CALLF instruction entry area**

The area 0800H to 0FFFH can perform a direct subroutine call with a 2-byte call instruction (CALLF).

### 3.1.2 Internal data memory space

The internal high speed RAM configuration is 256 × 8-bit in the  $\mu$ PD78081, 384 × 8-bit in the  $\mu$ PD78082 and 512 × 8-bit in the  $\mu$ PD8P083. In this area, four banks of general registers, each bank consisting of eight 8-bit registers, are allocated in the 32-byte area FEE0H to FEF7H.

The internal high-speed RAM can also be used as a stack memory area.

### 3.1.3 Special Function Register (SFR) area

An on-chip peripheral hardware special-function register (SFR) is allocated in the area FF00H to FFFFH. (Refer to **Table 3-2. Special-Function Register List** in **3.2.3 Special Function Register (SFR)**).

**Caution** Do not access addresses where the SFR is not assigned.

### 3.1.4 Data memory addressing

The method to specify the address of the instruction to be executed next, or the address of a register or memory to be manipulated when an instruction is executed is called addressing.

The address of the instruction to be executed next is addressed by the program counter PC (for details, refer to **3.3 Instruction Address Addressing**).

To address the memory that is manipulated when an instruction is executed, the  $\mu$ PD78083 Subseries is provided with many addressing modes with a high operability. Especially at addresses corresponding to data memory area, particular addressing modes are possible to meet the functions of the special function registers (SFRs) and general registers. This area is between FE00H and FFFFH for the  $\mu$ PD78081, FD80H and FFFFH for the  $\mu$ PD78082, and between FD00H and FFFFH for the  $\mu$ PD78P083. The data memory space is the entire 64K-byte space (0000H to FFFFH). Figure 3-4 to 3-6 show the data memory addressing modes. For details of each addressing, refer to **3.4 Operand Address Addressing**.

Figure 3-4. Data Memory Addressing ( $\mu$ PD78081)

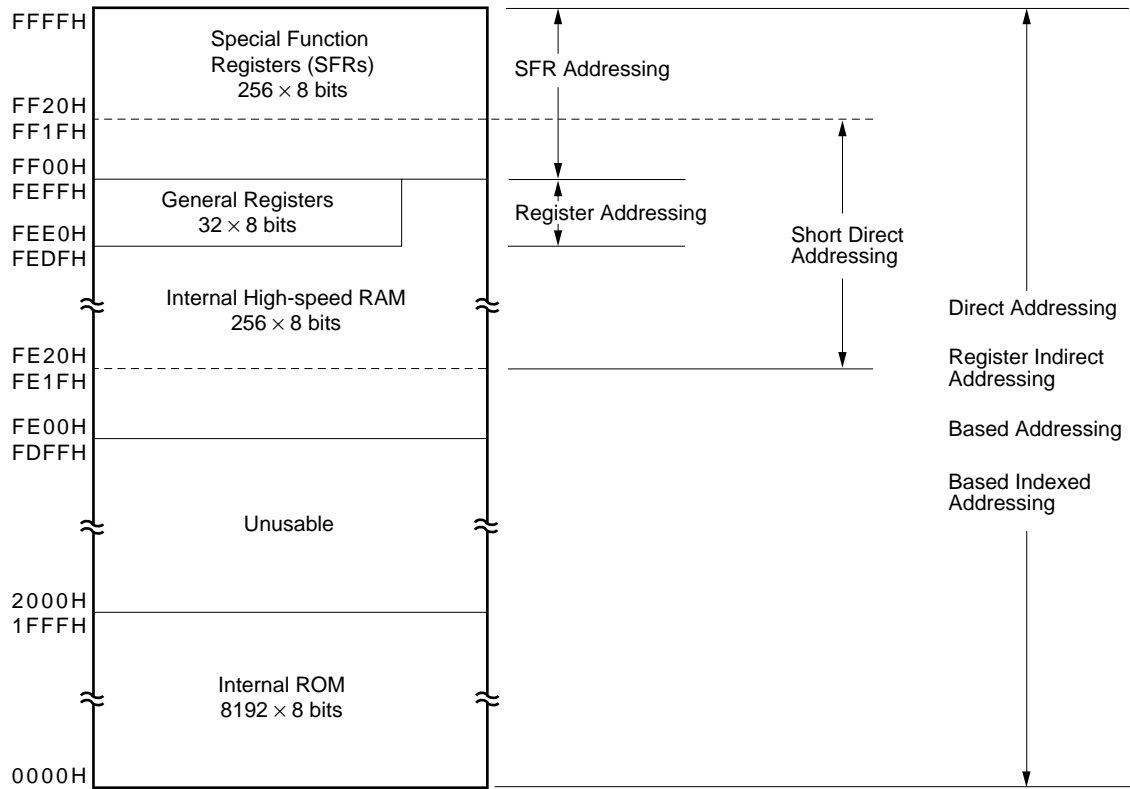


Figure 3-5. Data Memory Addressing ( $\mu$ PD78082)

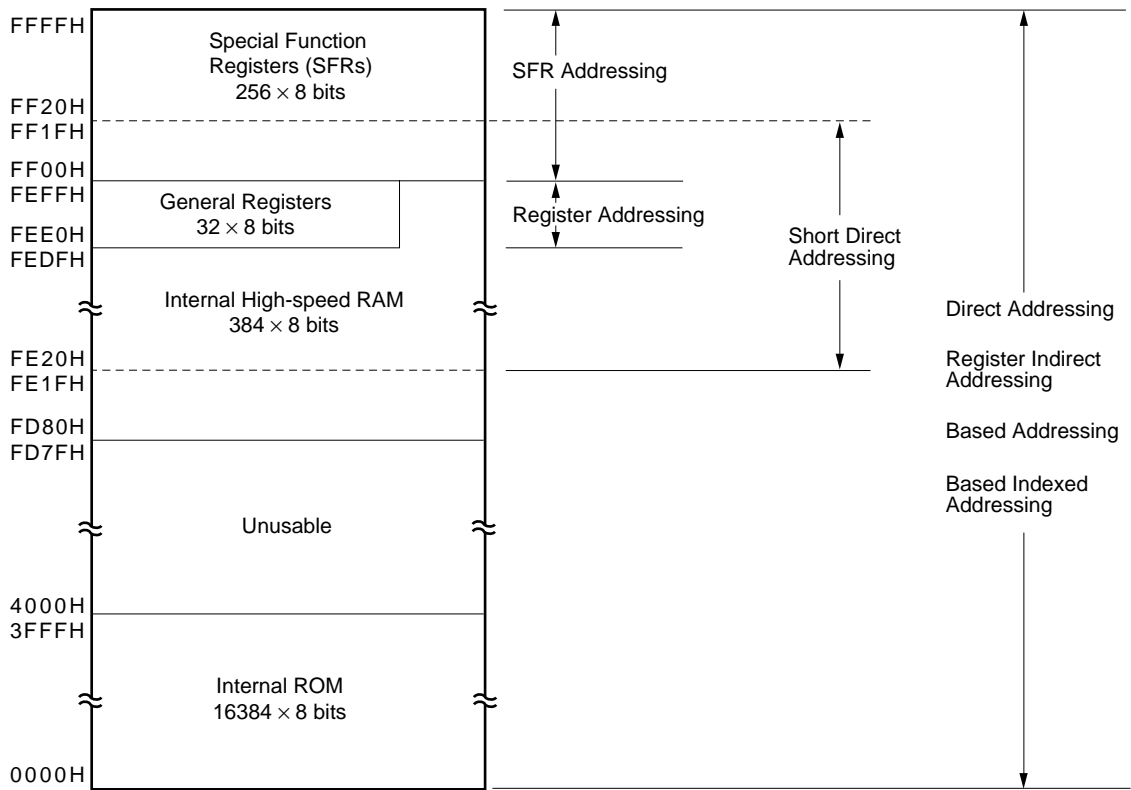
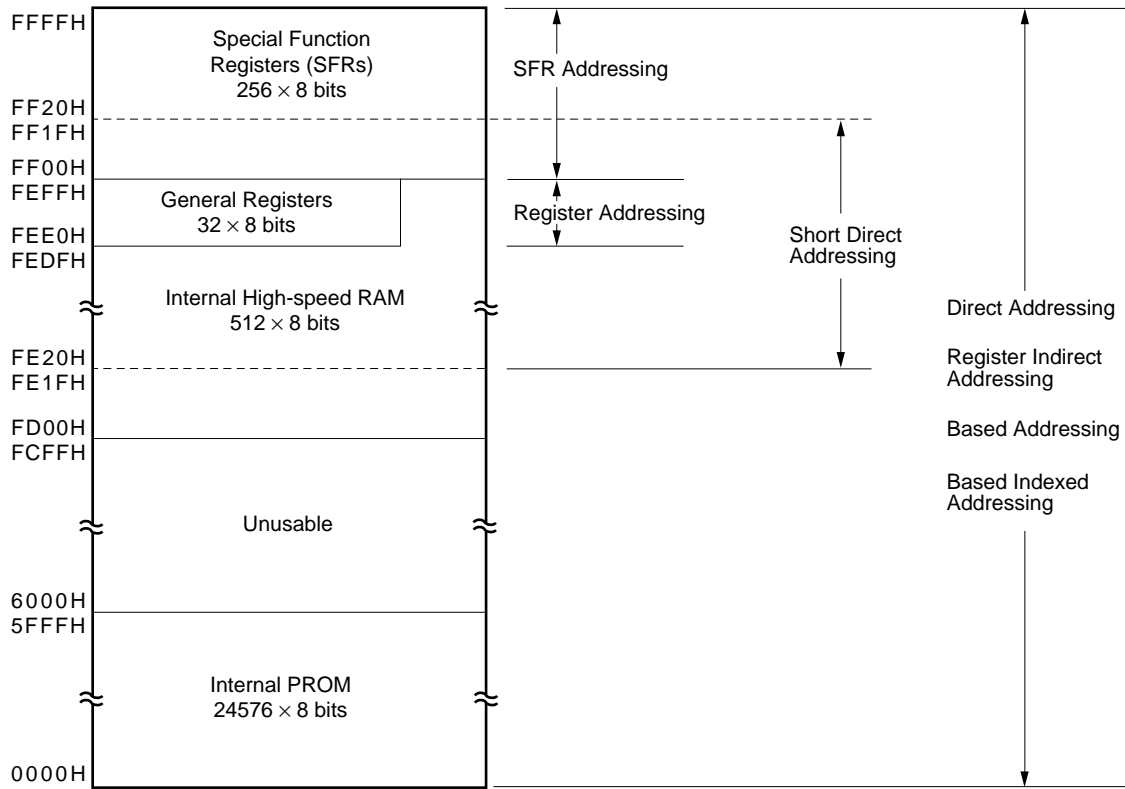


Figure 3-6. Data Memory Addressing ( $\mu$ PD78P083)



### 3.2 Processor Registers

The  $\mu$ PD78083 subseries units incorporate the following processor registers.

#### 3.2.1 Control registers

The control registers control the program sequence, statuses and stack memory. The control registers consist of a program counter, a program status word and a stack pointer.

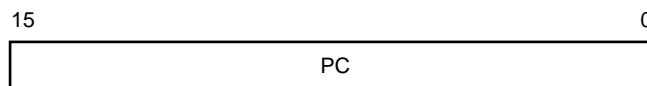
##### (1) Program counter (PC)

The program counter is a 16-bit register which holds the address information of the next program to be executed.

In normal operation, the PC is automatically incremented according to the number of bytes of the instruction to be fetched. When a branch instruction is executed, immediate data and register contents are set.

RESET input sets the reset vector table values at addresses 0000H and 0001H to the program counter.

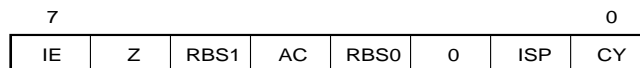
**Figure 3-7. Program Counter Configuration**



##### (2) Program status word (PSW)

The program status word is an 8-bit register consisting of various flags to be set/reset by instruction execution. Program status word contents are automatically stacked upon interrupt request generation or PUSH PSW instruction execution and are automatically reset upon execution of the RETB, RETI and POP PSW instructions. RESET input sets the PSW to 02H.

**Figure 3-8. Program Status Word Configuration**





**(a) Interrupt enable flag (IE)**

This flag controls the interrupt request acknowledge operations of the CPU.

When  $IE = 0$ , all interrupts except the non-maskable interrupt are disabled (DI status).

When  $IE = 1$ , interrupts are enabled (EI status). At this time, acknowledgment of interrupts is controlled with an inservice priority flag (ISP), an interrupt mask flag for various interrupt sources, and a priority specify flag.

The interrupt enable flag is reset to 0 when the DI instruction is executed or when an interrupt request is acknowledged, and set to 1 when the EI instruction is executed.

**(b) Zero flag (Z)**

When the operation result is zero, this flag is set (1). It is reset (0) in all other cases.

**(c) Register bank select flags (RBS0 and RBS1)**

These are 2-bit flags to select one of the four register banks.

In these flags, the 2-bit information which indicates the register bank selected by SEL RBn instruction execution is stored.

**(d) Auxiliary carry flag (AC)**

If the operation result has a carry from bit 3 or a borrow at bit 3, this flag is set (1). It is reset (0) in all other cases.

**(e) In-service priority flag (ISP)**

This flag manages the priority of acknowledgeable maskable vectored interrupts. When  $ISP = 0$ , the vectored interrupt request whose priority is specified by the priority specify flag registers (PR0L, PR0H, and PR1L) (Refer to **12.3 (3) Priority specify flag registers (PR0L, PR0H, and PR1L)**) to be low is disabled. Whether the interrupt request is actually acknowledged is controlled by the status of the interrupt enable flag (IE).

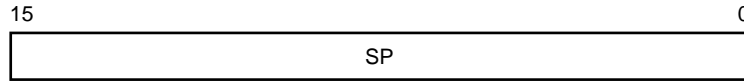
**(f) Carry flag (CY)**

This flag stores overflow and underflow upon add/subtract instruction execution. It stores the shift-out value upon rotate instruction execution and functions as a bit accumulator during bit manipulation instruction execution.

**(3) Stack pointer (SP)**

This is a 16-bit register to hold the start address of the memory stack area. Only the internal high-speed RAM area (FE00H-FEFFFH for the  $\mu$ PD78081, FD80H-FEFFFH for the  $\mu$ PD78082, and FD00H-FEFFFH for the  $\mu$ PD78P083) can be set as the stack area.

**Figure 3-9. Stack Pointer Configuration**

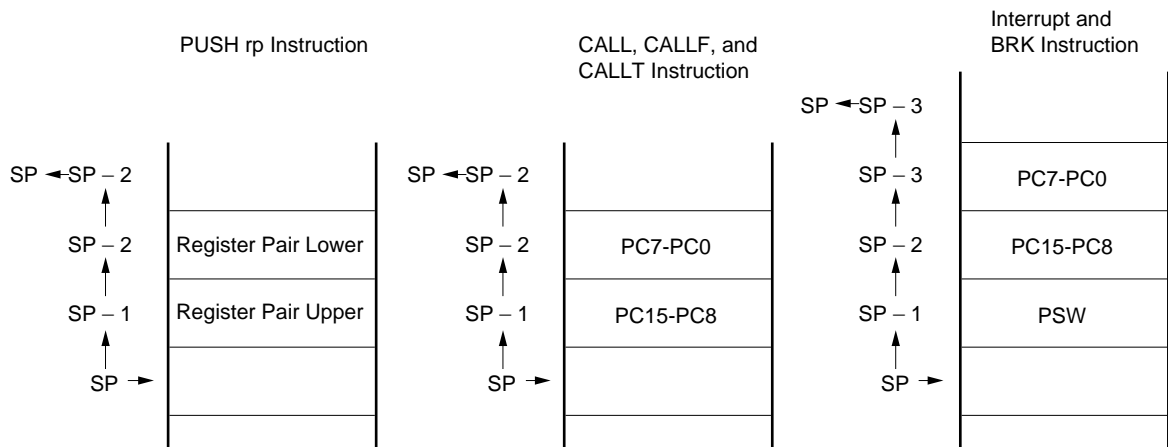


The SP is decremented ahead of write (save) to the stack memory and is incremented after read (reset) from the stack memory.

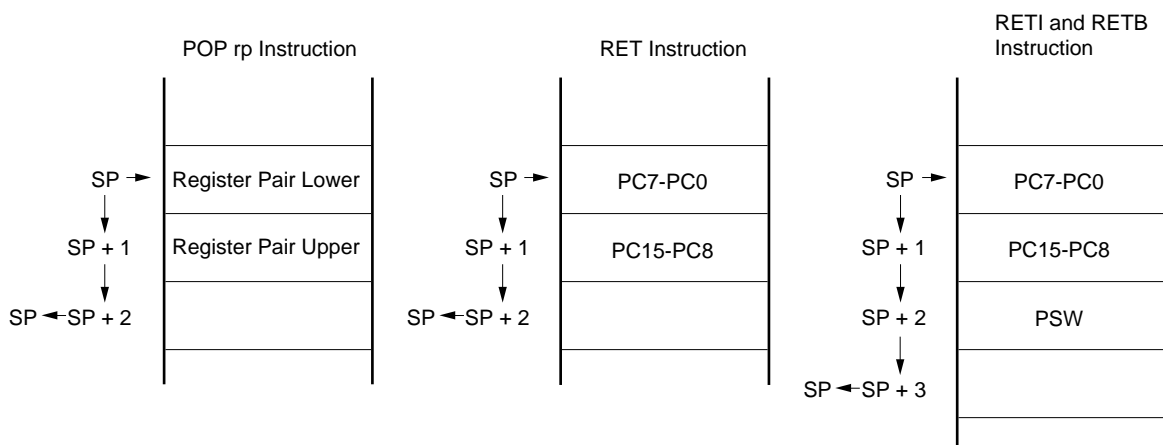
Each stack operation saves/resets data as shown in Figures 3-10 and 3-11.

**Caution** Since  $\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input makes SP contents indeterminate, be sure to initialize the SP before instruction execution.

**Figure 3-10. Data to be Saved to Stack Memory**



**Figure 3-11. Data to be Reset from Stack Memory**



**3.2.2 General registers**

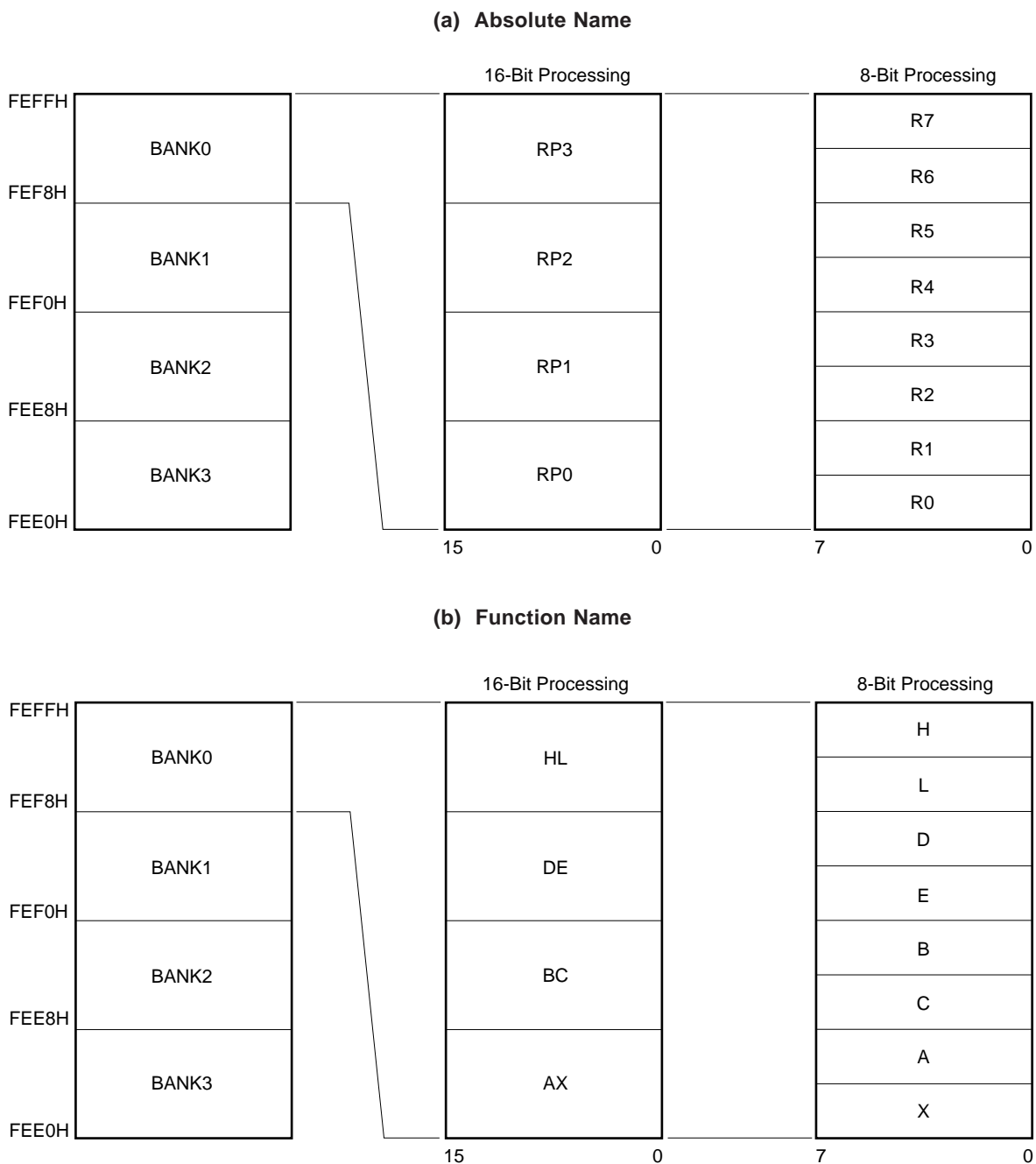
A general register is mapped at particular addresses (FEE0H to FEFFH) of the data memory. It consists of 4 banks, each bank consisting of eight 8-bit registers (X, A, C, B, E, D, L and H).

Each register can also be used as an 8-bit register. Two 8-bit registers can be used in pairs as a 16-bit register (AX, BC, DE and HL).

They can be described in terms of function names (X, A, C, B, E, D, L, H, AX, BC, DE and HL) and absolute names (R0 to R7 and RP0 to RP3).

Register banks to be used for instruction execution are set with the CPU control instruction (SEL RBn). Because of the 4-register bank configuration, an efficient program can be created by switching between a register for normal processing and a register for interruption request for each bank.

**Figure 3-12. General Register Configuration**



### 3.2.3 Special Function Register (SFR)

Unlike a general register, each special-function register has special functions.

It is allocated in the FF00H to FFFFH area.

The special-function register can be manipulated like the general register, with the operation, transfer and bit manipulation instructions. Manipulatable bit units, 1, 8 and 16, depend on the special-function register type.

Each manipulation bit unit can be specified as follows.

- 1-bit manipulation  
Describe the symbol reserved with assembler for the 1-bit manipulation instruction operand (sfr.bit).  
This manipulation can also be specified with an address.
- 8-bit manipulation  
Describe the symbol reserved with assembler for the 8-bit manipulation instruction operand (sfr).  
This manipulation can also be specified with an address.
- 16-bit manipulation  
Describe the symbol reserved with assembler for the 16-bit manipulation instruction operand (sfrp).  
When addressing an address, describe an even address.

Table 3-2 gives a list of special-function registers. The meaning of items in the table is as follows.

- Symbol  
★ Symbols indicating the addresses of special function register. These symbols are reserved words for the RA78K/0 and defined by header file sfrbit.h for the CC78K/0, and can be used as the operands of instructions when the RA78K/0, ID78K0, and SD78K/0 are used.
- R/W  
Indicates whether the corresponding special-function register can be read or written.  
R/W : Read/write enable  
R : Read only  
W : Write only
- Manipulatable bit units  
√ indicates bit units (1, 8 or 16 bits) in which the register can be manipulated. — indicates that the register cannot be manipulated in the indicated bit units.
- After reset  
Indicates each register status upon  $\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input.

Table 3-2. Special-Function Register List (1/2)

| Address | Special-Function Register (SFR) Name          | Symbol |      | R/W  | Manipulatable Bit Unit |        |         | After Reset |     |
|---------|---|--------|------|------|------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|-----|
|         |   |        |      |      | 1 bit                  | 8 bits | 16 bits |             |     |
| FF00H   | Port0   | P0     |      | R/W  | √                      | √      | —       | 00H         |     |
| FF01H   | Port1   | P1     |      |      | √                      | √      | —       |             |     |
| FF03H   | Port3   | P3     |      |      | √                      | √      | —       |             |     |
| FF05H   | Port5   | P5     |      |      | √                      | √      | —       |             |     |
| FF07H   | Port7   | P7     |      |      | √                      | √      | —       |             |     |
| FF0AH   | Port10  | P10    |      |      | √                      | √      | —       |             |     |
| FF1FH   | A/D conversion result register                | ADCR   |      | R    | √                      | √      | —       | Undefined   |     |
| FF20H   | Port mode register 0                          | PM0    |      | R/W  | √                      | √      | —       | FFH         |     |
| FF21H   | Port mode register 1                          | PM1    |      |      | √                      | √      | —       |             |     |
| FF23H   | Port mode register 3                          | PM3    |      |      | √                      | √      | —       |             |     |
| FF25H   | Port mode register 5                          | PM5    |      |      | √                      | √      | —       |             |     |
| FF27H   | Port mode register 7                          | PM7    |      |      | √                      | √      | —       |             |     |
| FF2AH   | Port mode register 10                         | PM10   |      |      | √                      | √      | —       |             |     |
| FF40H   | Timer clock select register 0                 | TCL0   |      | R/W  | √                      | √      | —       | 00H         |     |
| FF42H   | Timer clock select register 2                 | TCL2   |      |      | —                      | √      | —       |             |     |
| FF50H   | Compare Register 50                           | CR50   |      |      | —                      | √      | —       |             |     |
| FF51H   | 8-bit timer register 5                        | TM5    |      | R    | —                      | √      | —       |             |     |
| FF52H   | Timer clock select register 5                 | TCL5   |      | R/W  | —                      | √      | —       |             |     |
| FF53H   | 8-bit timer mode control register 5           | TMC5   |      |      | √                      | √      | —       |             |     |
| FF54H   | Compare Register 60                           | CR60   |      |      | —                      | √      | —       |             |     |
| FF55H   | 8-bit timer register 6                        | TM6    |      | R    | —                      | √      | —       |             |     |
| FF56H   | Timer clock select register 6                 | TCL6   |      | R/W  | —                      | √      | —       |             |     |
| FF57H   | 8-bit timer mode control register 6           | TMC6   |      |      | √                      | √      | —       |             |     |
| FF70H   | Asynchronous serial interface mode register   | ASIM   |      |      | √                      | √      | —       |             |     |
| FF71H   | Asynchronous serial interface status register | ASIS   |      | R    | √                      | √      | —       |             |     |
| FF72H   | Serial operating mode register 2              | CSIM2  |      | R/W  | √                      | √      | —       |             |     |
| FF73H   | Baud rate generator control register          | BRGC   |      |      | —                      | √      | —       |             |     |
| FF74H   | Transmit shift register                       | TXS    | SIO2 | W    | —                      | √      | —       | FFH         |     |
|         | Receive buffer register                       | RXB    |      | R    |                        |        |         |             |     |
| FF80H   | A/D converter mode register                   | ADM    |      | R/W  | √                      | √      | —       | 01H         |     |
| FF84H   | A/D converter input select register           | ADIS   |      |      | —                      | √      | —       | 00H         |     |
| FFE0H   | Interrupt request flag register 0L            | IF0    |      |      | IF0L                   | √      | √       | √           |     |
| FFE1H   | Interrupt request flag register 0H            |        |      |      | IF0H                   | √      | √       |             |     |
| FFE2H   | Interrupt request flag register 1L            | IF1L   |      |      | √                      | √      | —       |             |     |
| FFE4H   | Interrupt mask flag register 0L               | MK0    |      |      | MK0L                   | √      | √       | √           | FFH |
| FFE5H   | Interrupt mask flag register 0H               |        |      |      | MK0H                   | √      | √       |             |     |
| FFE6H   | Interrupt mask flag register 1L               | MK1L   |      |      | √                      | √      | —       |             |     |
| FFE8H   | Priority order specify flag register 0L       | PR0    |      |      | PR0L                   | √      | √       | √           |     |
| FFE9H   | Priority order specify flag register 0H       |        |      | PR0H | √                      | √      |         |             |     |

Table 3-2. Special-Function Register List (2/2)

| Address | Special-Function Register (SFR) Name           | Symbol | R/W | Manipulatable Bit Unit |        |         | After Reset |
|---------|--|--------|-----|------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|
|         |  |        |     | 1 bit                  | 8 bits | 16 bits |             |
| FFEAH   | Priority order specify flag register 1L        | PR1L   | R/W | √                      | √      | —       | FFH         |
| FFECH   | External interrupt mode register 0             | INTM0  |     | —                      | √      | —       | 00H         |
| FFEDH   | External interrupt mode register 1             | INTM1  |     | —                      | √      | —       | (Note)      |
| ★ FFF0H | Memory size switching register                 | IMS    | —   | √                      | —      |         |             |
| FFF2H   | Oscillation mode selection register            | OSMS   | W   | —                      | √      | —       | 00H         |
| FFF3H   | Pull-up resistor option register H             | PUOH   | R/W | √                      | √      | —       |             |
| FFF7H   | Pull-up resistor option register L             | PUOL   |     | √                      | √      | —       |             |
| FFF9H   | Watchdog timer mode register                   | WDTM   |     | √                      | √      | —       |             |
| FFFAH   | Oscillation stabilization time select register | OSTS   | —   | √                      | —      | 04H     |             |
| FFFBH   | Processor clock control register               | PCC    | √   | √                      | —      |         |             |

**Note** The value after reset depends on products.

μPD78081 : 82H, μPD78082 : 64H, μPD78P083 : 46H.

### 3.3 Instruction Address Addressing

An instruction address is determined by program counter (PC) contents. The contents of PC are normally incremented (+1 for each byte) automatically according to the number of bytes of an instruction to be fetched each time another instruction is executed. When a branch instruction is executed, the branch destination information is set to the PC and branched by the following addressing. (For details of instructions, refer to **78K/0 USER'S MANUAL: Instruction (IEU-1372)**).

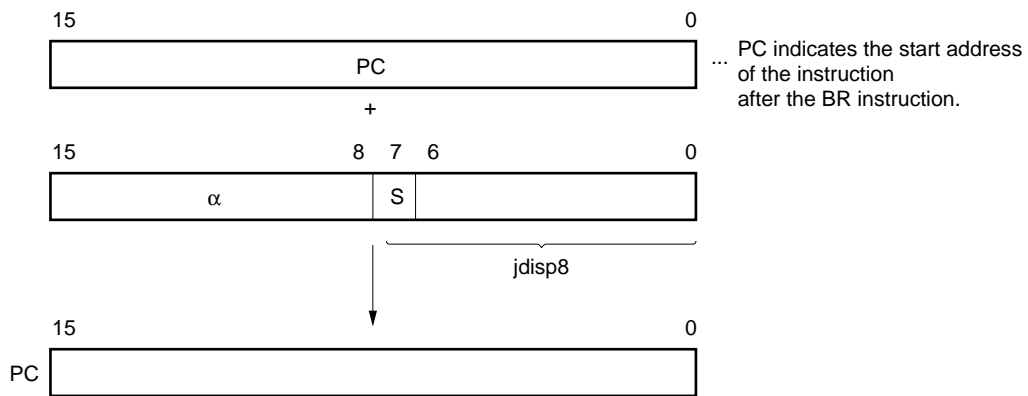
#### 3.3.1 Relative addressing

**[Function]**

The value obtained by adding 8-bit immediate data (displacement value: *jdisp8*) of an instruction code to the start address of the following instruction is transferred to the program counter (PC) and branched. The displacement value is treated as signed two's complement data (−128 to +127) and bit 7 becomes a sign bit. In the relative addressing modes, execution branches in a relative range of −128 to +127 from the first address of the next instruction.

This function is carried out when the BR \$addr16 instruction or a conditional branch instruction is executed.

**[Illustration]**



When S = 0, all bits of α are 0.  
 When S = 1, all bits of α are 1.

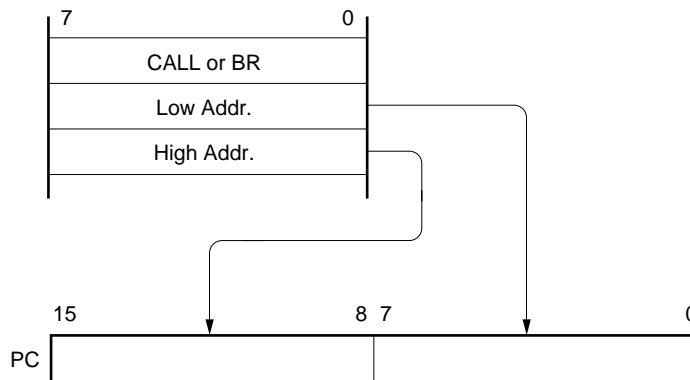
3.3.2 Immediate addressing

**[Function]**

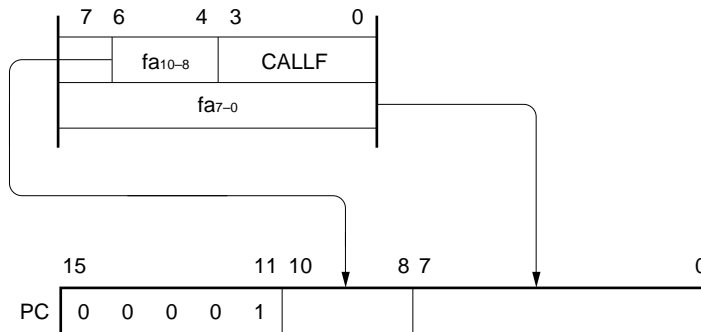
Immediate data in the instruction word is transferred to the program counter (PC) and branched. This function is carried out when the CALL !addr16 or BR !addr16 or CALLF !addr11 instruction is executed. The CALL !addr16 and BR !addr16 instruction can branch in the entire memory space. The CALLF !addr11 instruction branches to an area of addresses 0800H through 0FFFH.

**[Illustration]**

In the case of CALL !addr16 and BR !addr16 instructions



In the case of CALLF !addr11 instruction





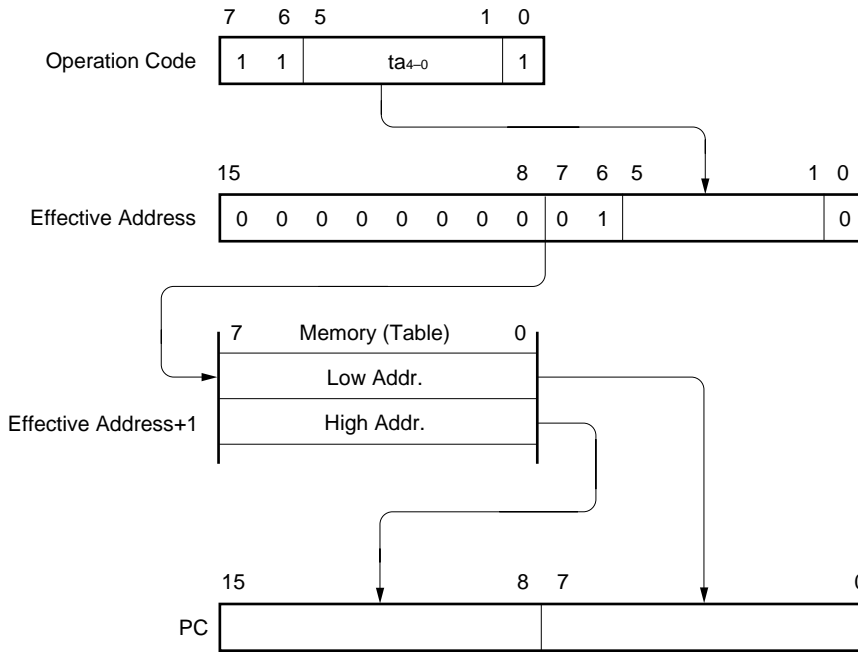
3.3.3 Table indirect addressing

[Function]

Table contents (branch destination address) of the particular location to be addressed by bits 1 to 5 of the immediate data of an operation code are transferred to the program counter (PC) and branched.

Before the CALLT [addr5] instruction is executed, table indirect addressing is performed. This instruction references an address stored in the memory table at addresses 40H through 7FH, and can branch in the entire memory space.

[Illustration]



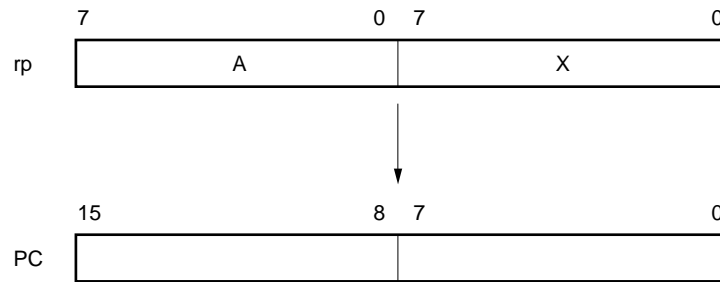
### 3.3.4 Register addressing

**[Function]**

Register pair (AX) contents to be specified with an instruction word are transferred to the program counter (PC) and branched.

This function is carried out when the BR AX instruction is executed.

**[Illustration]**



### 3.4 Operand Address Addressing

The following various methods are available to specify the register and memory (addressing) which undergo manipulation during instruction execution.

#### 3.4.1 Implied addressing

**[Function]**

The register which functions as an accumulator (A and AX) in the general register is automatically (illicitly) addressed.

Of the  $\mu$ PD78083 Subseries instruction words, the following instructions employ implied addressing.

| Instruction | Register to be Specified by Implied Addressing                                   |
|-------------|--|
| MULU        | A register for multiplicand and AX register for product storage                  |
| DIVUW       | AX register for dividend and quotient storage                                    |
| ADJBA/ADJBS | A register for storage of numeric values which become decimal correction targets |
| ROR4/ROL4   | A register for storage of digit data which undergoes digit rotation              |

**[Operand format]**

Because implied addressing can be automatically employed with an instruction, no particular operand format is necessary.

**[Description example]**

In the case of MULU X

With an 8-bit  $\times$  8-bit multiply instruction, the product of A register and X register is stored in AX. In this example, the A and AX registers are specified by implied addressing.

3.4.2 Register addressing

**[Function]**

This addressing accesses a general register as an operand. The general register accessed is specified by the register bank select flags (RBS0 and RBS1) and register specify code (Rn or RPn) in an instruction code. Register addressing is carried out when an instruction with the following operand format is executed. When an 8-bit register is specified, one of the eight registers is specified with 3 bits in the operation code.

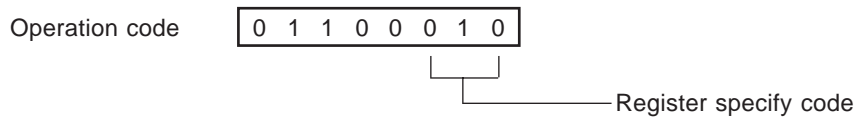
**[Operand format]**

| Identifier | Description            |
|------------|------------------------|
| r          | X, A, C, B, E, D, L, H |
| rp         | AX, BC, DE, HL         |

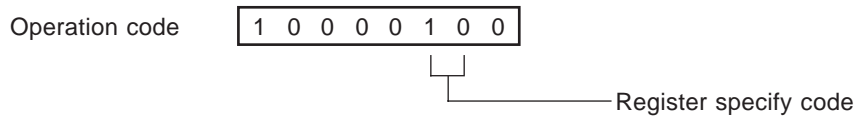
'r' and 'rp' can be described with function names (X, A, C, B, E, D, L, H, AX, BC, DE and HL) as well as absolute names (R0 to R7 and RP0 to RP3).

**[Description example]**

MOV A, C; when selecting C register as r



INCW DE; when selecting DE register pair as rp



3.4.3 Direct addressing

[Function]

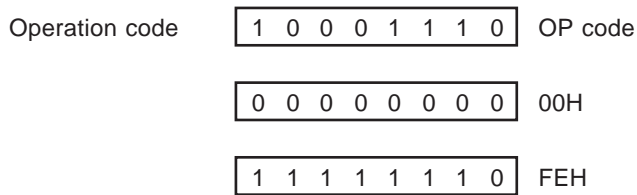
This addressing directly addresses the memory indicated by the immediate data in an instruction word.

[Operand format]

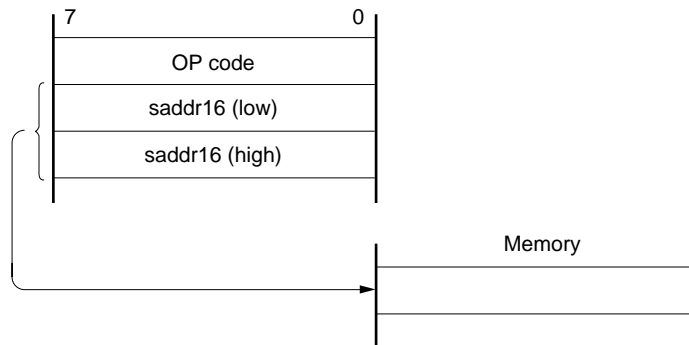
| Identifier | Description                    |
|------------|--------------------------------|
| addr16     | Label or 16-bit immediate data |

[Description example]

MOV A, !0FE00H; when setting !addr16 to FE00H



[Illustration]



### 3.4.4 Short direct addressing

**[Function]**

The memory to be manipulated in the fixed space is directly addressed with 8-bit data in an instruction word. The fixed space to which this address is applied is a 256-byte space of addresses FE20H through FF1FH. An internal high-speed RAM and a special-function register (SFR) are mapped at FE20H to FEFFH and FF00H to FF1FH, respectively.

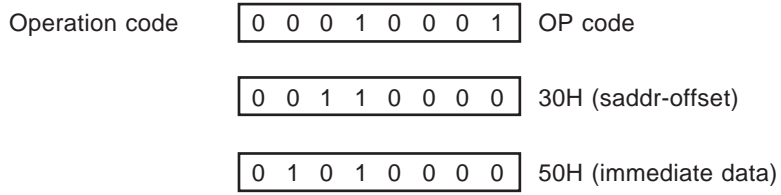
The SFR area (FF00H through FF1FH) to which short direct addressing is applied is a part of the entire SFR area. To this area, ports frequently accessed by the program, and the compare registers and capture registers of timer/event counters are mapped. These SFRs can be manipulated with a short byte length and a few clocks. When 8-bit immediate data is at 20H to FFH, bit 8 of an effective address is set to 0. When it is at 00H to 1FH, bit 8 is set to 1. Refer to **[Illustration]** on next page.

**[Operand format]**

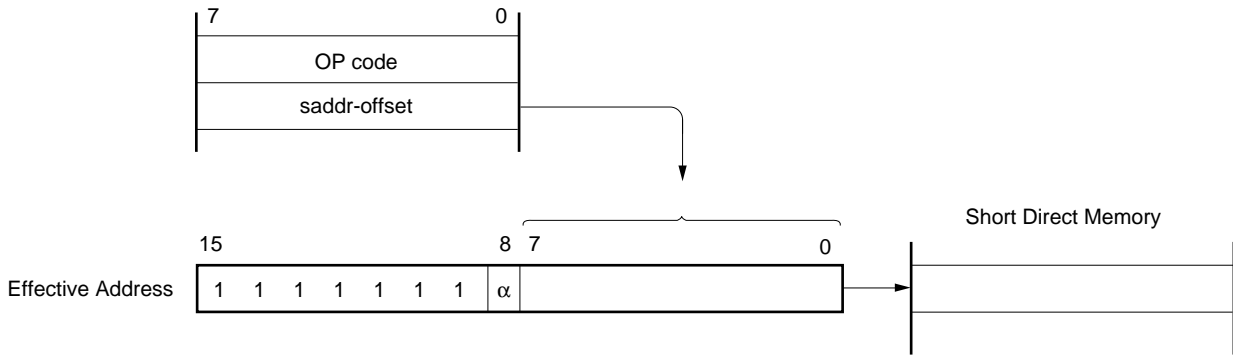
| Identifier | Description  |
|------------|--|
| saddr      | Label of FE20H to FF1FH immediate data                     |
| saddrp     | Label of FE20H to FF1FH immediate data (even address only) |

[Description example]

MOV 0FE30H, #50H; when setting saddr to FE30H and immediate data to 50H



[Illustration]



When 8-bit immediate data is 20H to FFH,  $\alpha = 0$

When 8-bit immediate data is 00H to 1FH,  $\alpha = 1$





3.4.6 Register indirect addressing

[Function]

This addressing addresses the memory with the contents of a register pair specified as an operand. The register pair to be accessed is specified by the register bank select flags (RBS0 and RBS1) and register pair specify code in an instruction code. This addressing can be carried out for all the memory spaces.

[Operand format]

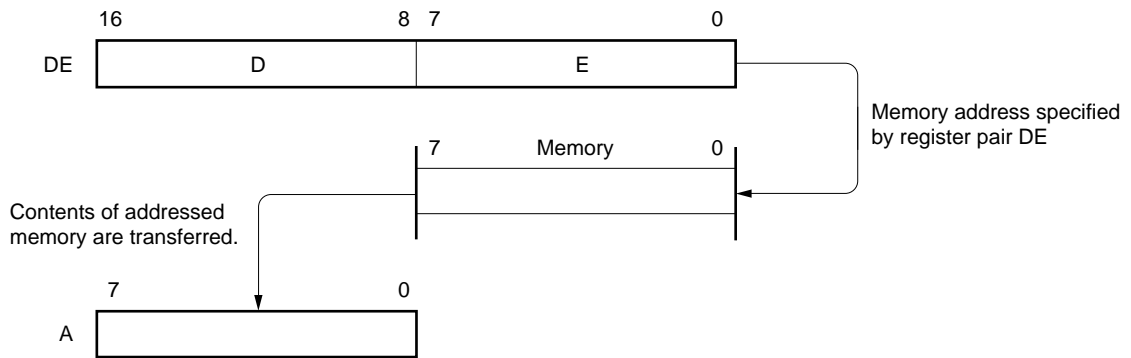
| Identifier | Description |
|------------|-------------|
| —          | [DE], [HL]  |

[Description example]

MOV A, [DE]; when selecting [DE] as register pair

Operation code 1 0 0 0 0 1 0 1

[Illustration]



### 3.4.7 Based addressing

[Function]

This addressing addresses the memory by adding 8-bit immediate data to the contents of the HL register pair which is used as a base register and by using the result of the addition. The HL register pair to be accessed is in the register bank specified by the register bank select flags (RBS0 and RBS1). Addition is performed by expanding the offset data as a positive number to 16 bits. A carry from the 16th bit is ignored. This addressing can be carried out for all the memory spaces.

[Operand format]

| Identifier | Description |
|------------|-------------|
| —          | [HL + byte] |

[Description example]

MOV A, [HL + 10H]; when setting byte to 10H

|                |                 |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Operation code | 1 0 1 0 1 1 1 0 |
|                | 0 0 0 1 0 0 0 0 |

### 3.4.8 Based indexed addressing

[Function]

This addressing addresses the memory by adding the contents of the HL register, which is used as a base register, to the contents of the B or C register specified in the instruction word, and by using the result of the addition. The HL, B, and C registers to be accessed are registers in the register bank specified by the register bank select flags (RBS0 and RBS1). The addition is performed by extending the contents of the B or C register to 16 bits as a positive number. A carry from the 16th bit is ignored. This addressing can be carried out for all the memory spaces.

[Operand format]

| Identifier | Description        |
|------------|--------------------|
| —          | [HL + B], [HL + C] |

[Description example]

In the case of MOV A, [HL + B]

Operation code 

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|

### 3.4.9 Stack addressing

[Function]

The stack area is indirectly addressed with the stack pointer (SP) contents. This addressing method is automatically employed when the PUSH, POP, subroutine call and RETURN instructions are executed or the register is saved/reset upon generation of an interrupt request. Stack addressing enables to address the internal high-speed RAM area only.

[Description example]

In the case of PUSH DE

Operation code 

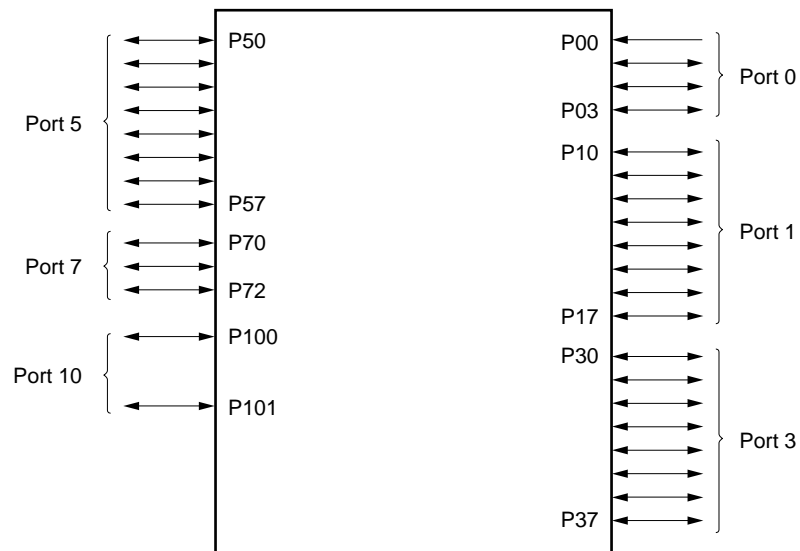
|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|

## CHAPTER 4 PORT FUNCTIONS

### 4.1 Port Functions

The  $\mu$ PD78083 Subseries units incorporate an input port and thirty-two input/output ports. Figure 4-1 shows the port configuration. Every port is capable of 1-bit and 8-bit manipulations and can carry out considerably varied control operations. Besides port functions, the ports can also serve as on-chip hardware input/output pins.

Figure 4-1. Port Types



**Table 4-1. Port Functions**

| Pin Name | Input/Output | Function                |  | Dual-Function Pin |
|----------|--------------|-------------------------|--|-------------------|
| P00      | Input        | Port 0                  | Input only   | —                 |
| P01      | Input/output | 4-bit input/output port | Input/output is specifiable bit-wise. When used as the input port, it is possible to connect a pull-up resistor by software.   | INTP1             |
| P02      |              |                         |  | INTP2             |
| P03      |              |                         |  | INTP3             |
| P10-P17  | Input/output | Port 1                  | 8-bit input/output port<br>Input/output is specifiable bit-wise.<br>When used as the input port, it is possible to connect a pull-up resistor by software.   | ANI0-ANI7         |
| P30-P34  | Input/output | Port 3                  | 8-bit input/output port<br>Input/output is specifiable bit-wise.<br>When used as the input port, it is possible to connect a pull-up resistor by software.   | —                 |
| P35      |              |                         |  | PCL               |
| P36      |              |                         |  | BUZ               |
| P37      |              |                         |  | —                 |
| P50-P57  | Input/output | Port 5                  | 8-bit input/output port<br>A maximum of 7 out of 8 ports can drive LEDs directly.<br>Input/output is specifiable bit-wise.<br>When used as the input port, it is possible to connect a pull-up resistor by software. | —                 |
| P70      | Input/output | Port 7                  | 3-bit input/output port<br>Input/output is specifiable bit-wise.<br>When used as the input port, it is possible to connect a pull-up resistor by software.   | SI2/RxD           |
| P71      |              |                         |  | SO2/TxD           |
| P72      |              |                         |  | SCK2/ASCK         |
| P100     | Input/output | Port 10                 | 2-bit input/output port<br>Input/output is specifiable bit-wise.<br>When used as the input port, it is possible to connect a pull-up resistor by software.   | TI5/TO5           |
| P101     |              |                         |  | TI6/TO6           |

## 4.2 Port Configuration

A port consists of the following hardware:

**Table 4-2. Port Configuration**

| Item             | Configuration   |
|------------------|---|
| Control register | Port mode register (PM <sub>m</sub> : m = 0, 1, 3, 5, 7, 10)<br>Pull-up resistor option register (PUOH, PUOL) |
| Port             | Total: 33 ports (1 input, 32 inputs/outputs)  |
| Pull-up resistor | Total: 32 (software specifiable)  |

### 4.2.1 Port 0

Port 0 is an 4-bit input/output port with output latch. P01 to P03 pins can specify the input mode/output mode in 1-bit units with the port mode register 0 (PM0). P00 pin is input-only port. When P01 to P03 pins are used as input ports, an on-chip pull-up resistor can be used to them in 3-bit units with a pull-up resistor option register L (PUOL).

Dual-functions include external interrupt request input.

RESET input sets port 0 to input mode.

Figures 4-2 and 4-3 show block diagrams of port0.

**Caution** Because port 0 also serves for external interrupt request input, when the port function output mode is specified and the output level is changed, the interrupt request flag is set. Thus, when the output mode is used, set the interrupt mask flag to 1.

Figure 4-2. P00 Block Diagram

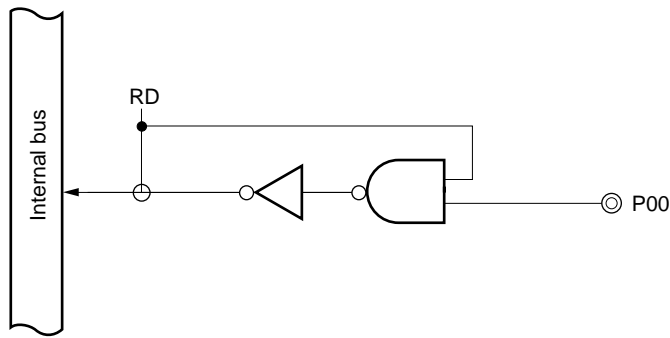
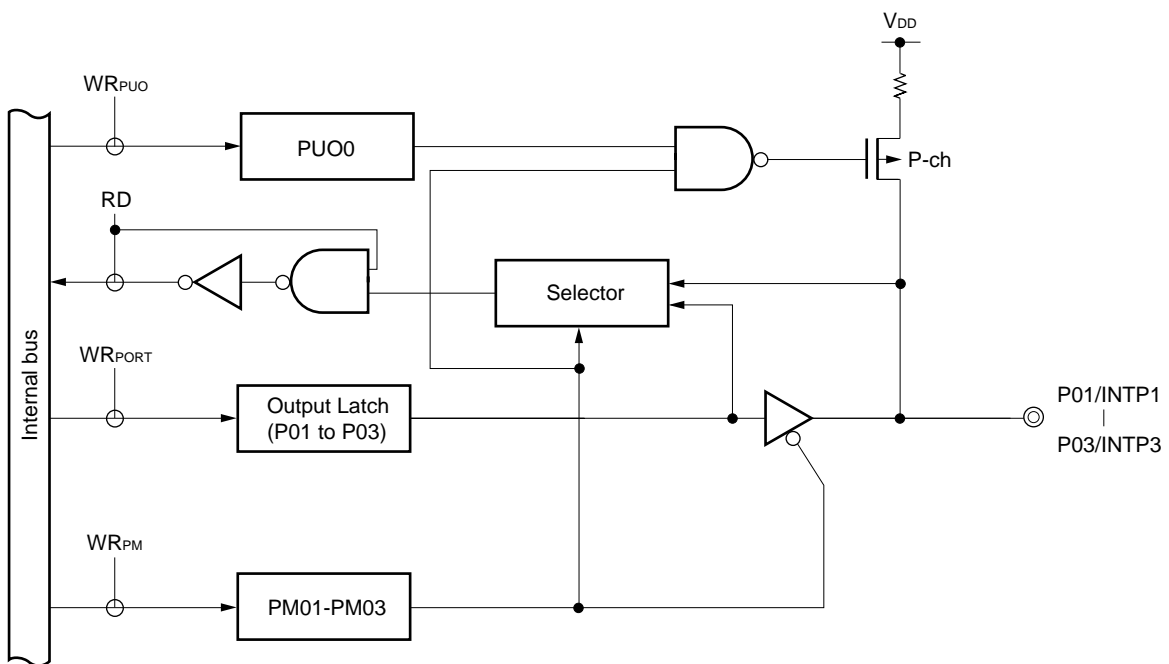


Figure 4-3. P01 to P03 Block Diagram



- PUO : Pull-up resistor option register
- PM : Port mode register
- RD : Port 0 read signal
- WR : Port 0 write signal

4.2.2 Port 1

Port 1 is an 8-bit input/output port with output latch. It can specify the input mode/output mode in 1-bit units with a port mode register 1 (PM1). When P10 to P17 pins are used as input ports, an on-chip pull-up resistor can be used to them in 8-bit units with a pull-up resistor option register L (PUOL).

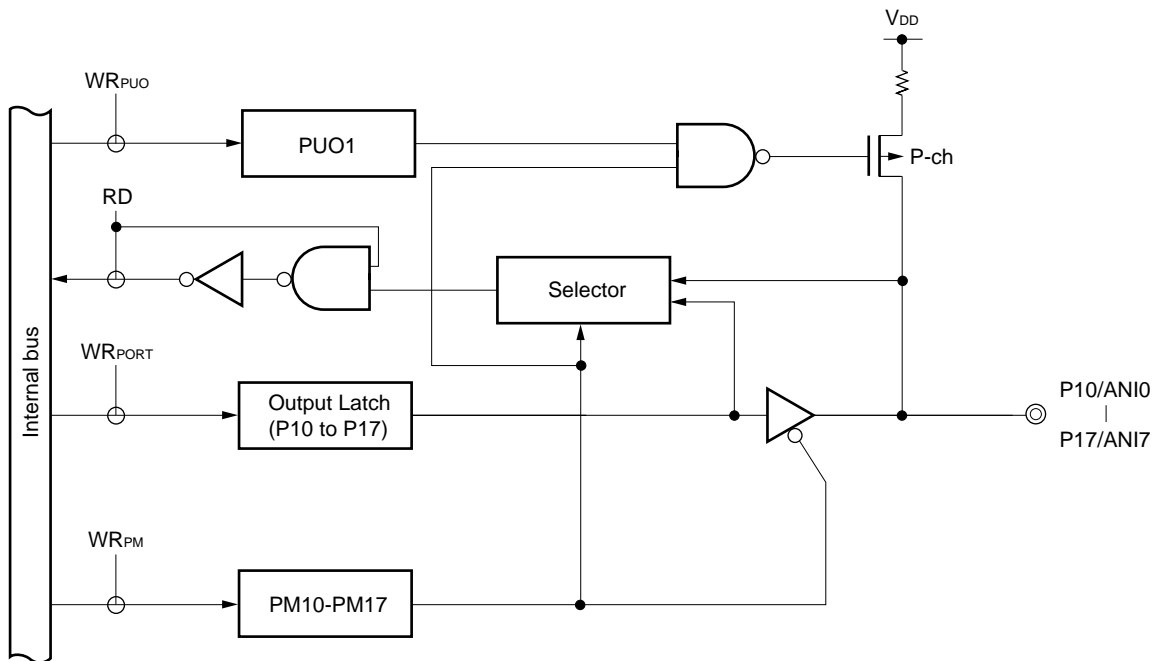
Dual-functions include an A/D converter analog input.

$\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input sets port 1 to input mode.

Figure 4-4 shows a block diagram of port 1.

**Caution** A pull-up resistor cannot be used for pins used as A/D converter analog input.

Figure 4-4. P10 to P17 Block Diagram



- PUO : Pull-up resistor option register
- PM : Port mode register
- RD : Port 1 read signal
- WR : Port 1 write signal



4.2.3 Port 3

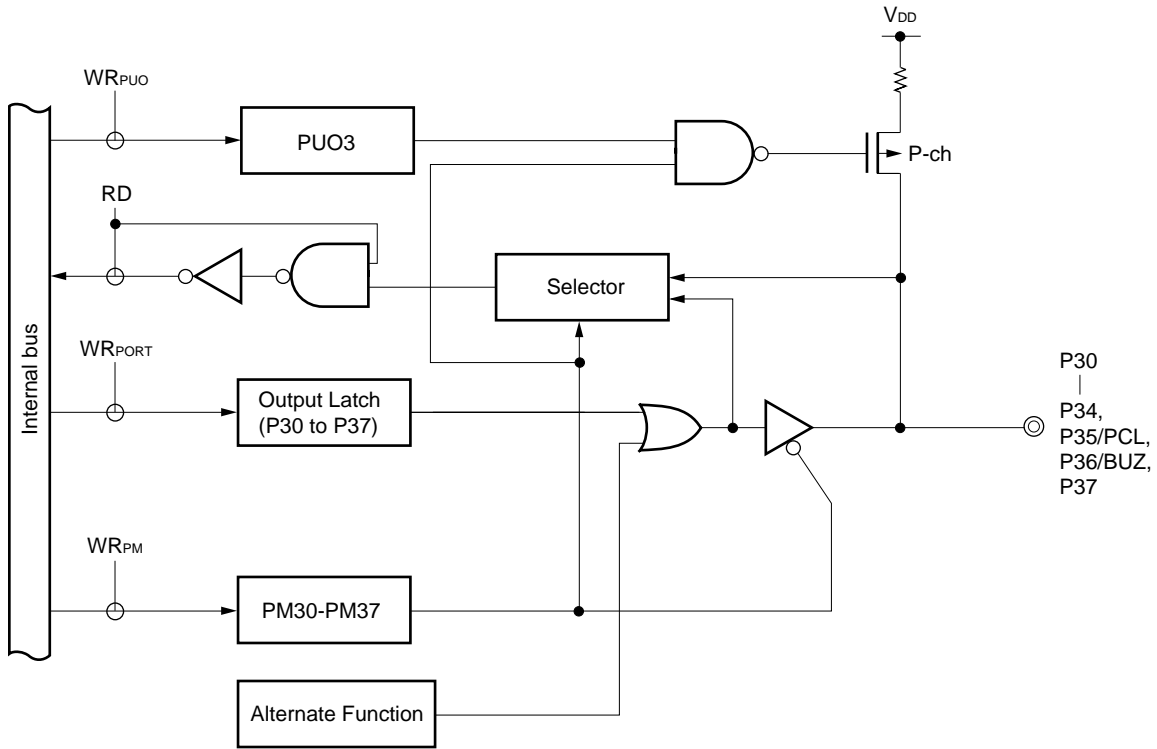
Port 3 is an 8-bit input/output port with output latch. P30 to P37 pins can specify the input mode/output mode in 1-bit units with the port mode register 3 (PM3). When P30 to P37 pins are used as input ports, an on-chip pull-up resistor can be used to them in 8-bit units with a pull-up resistor option register L (PUOL).

Dual-functions include clock output and buzzer output.

RESET input sets port 3 to input mode.

Figure 4-5 shows a block diagram of port 3.

Figure 4-5. P30 to P37 Block Diagram



- PUO : Pull-up resistor option register
- PM : Port mode register
- RD : Port 3 read signal
- WR : Port 3 write signal

4.2.4 Port 5

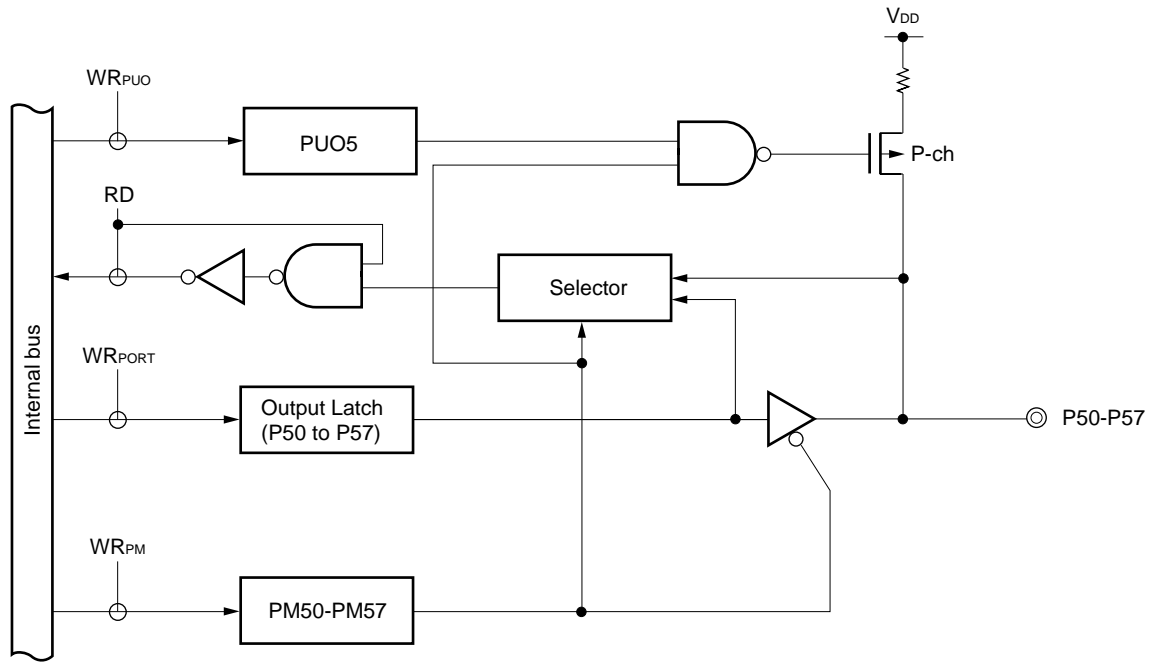
Port 5 is an 8-bit input/output port with output latch. P50 to P57 pins can specify the input mode/output mode in 1-bit units with the port mode register 5 (PM5). When P50 to P57 pins are used as input ports, an on-chip pull-up resistor can be used to them in 8-bit units with a pull-up resistor option register L (PUOL).

A maximum of 7 out of 8 ports can drive LEDs directly.

$\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input sets port 5 to input mode.

Figure 4-6 shows a block diagram of port 5.

Figure 4-6. P50 to P57 Block Diagram



- PUO : Pull-up resistor option register
- PM : Port mode register
- RD : Port 5 read signal
- WR : Port 5 write signal

4.2.5 Port 7

This is a 3-bit input/output port with output latches. Input mode/output mode can be specified bit-wise by means of port mode register 7 (PM7). When pins P70 to P72 are used as input port pins, an on-chip pull-up resistor can be used as a 3-bit unit by means of pull-up resistor option register L (PUOL).

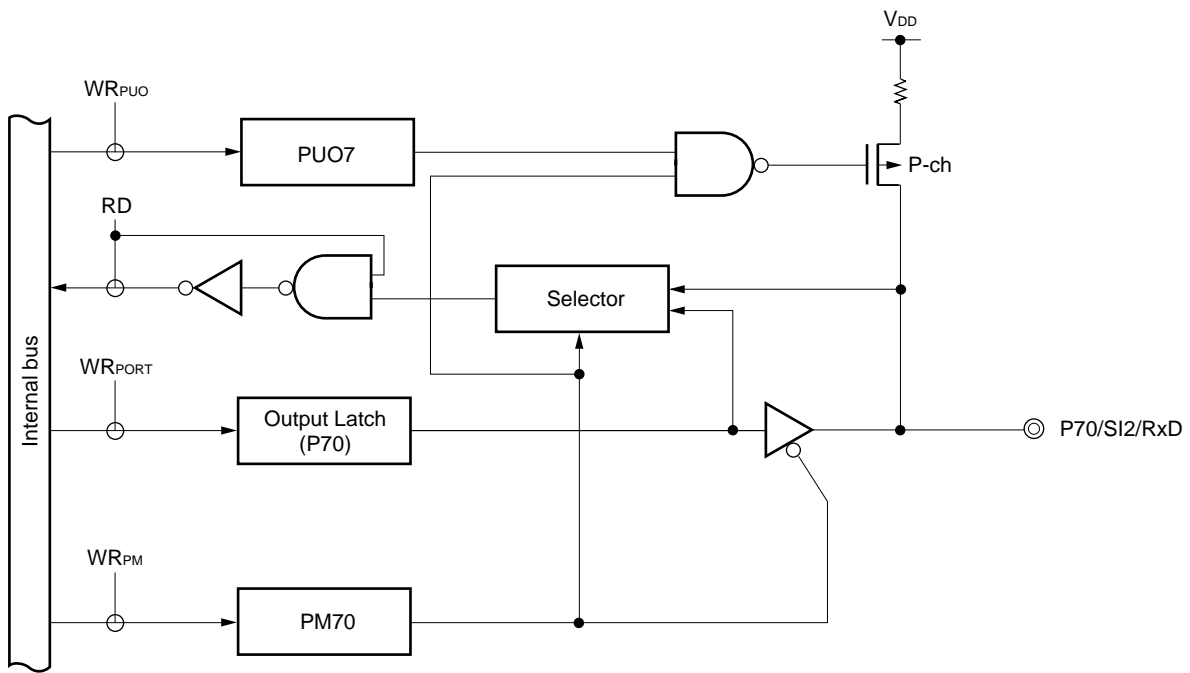
Dual-functions include serial interface channel 2 data input/output and clock input/output.

RESET input sets the input mode.

Port 7 block diagrams are shown in Figures 4-7 and 4-8.

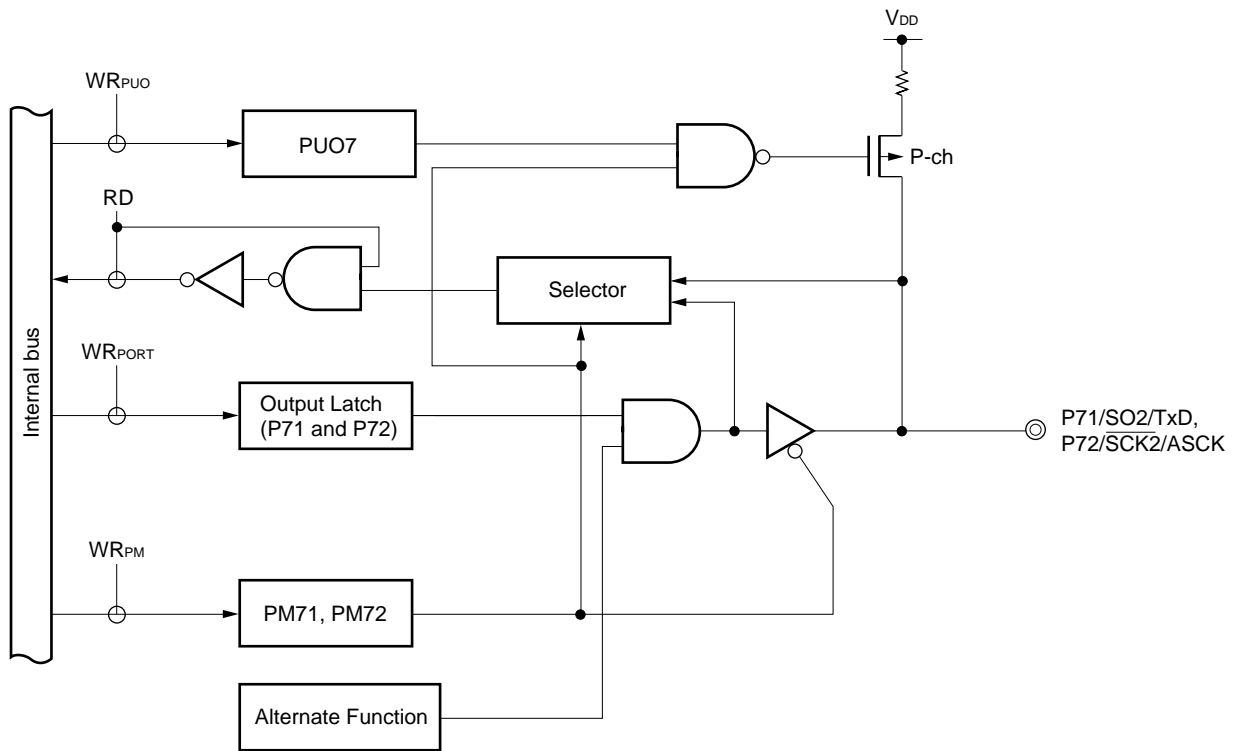
**Caution** When used as a serial interface, set the input/output and output latch according to its functions. For the setting method, refer to Table 11-2 Serial Interface Channel 2 Operating Mode Settings.

Figure 4-7. P70 Block Diagram



- PUO : Pull-up resistor option register
- PM : Port mode register
- RD : Port 7 read signal
- WR : Port 7 write signal

Figure 4-8. P71 and P72 Block Diagram



- PUO : Pull-up resistor option register
- PM : Port mode register
- RD : Port 7 read signal
- WR : Port 7 write signal

4.2.6 Port 10

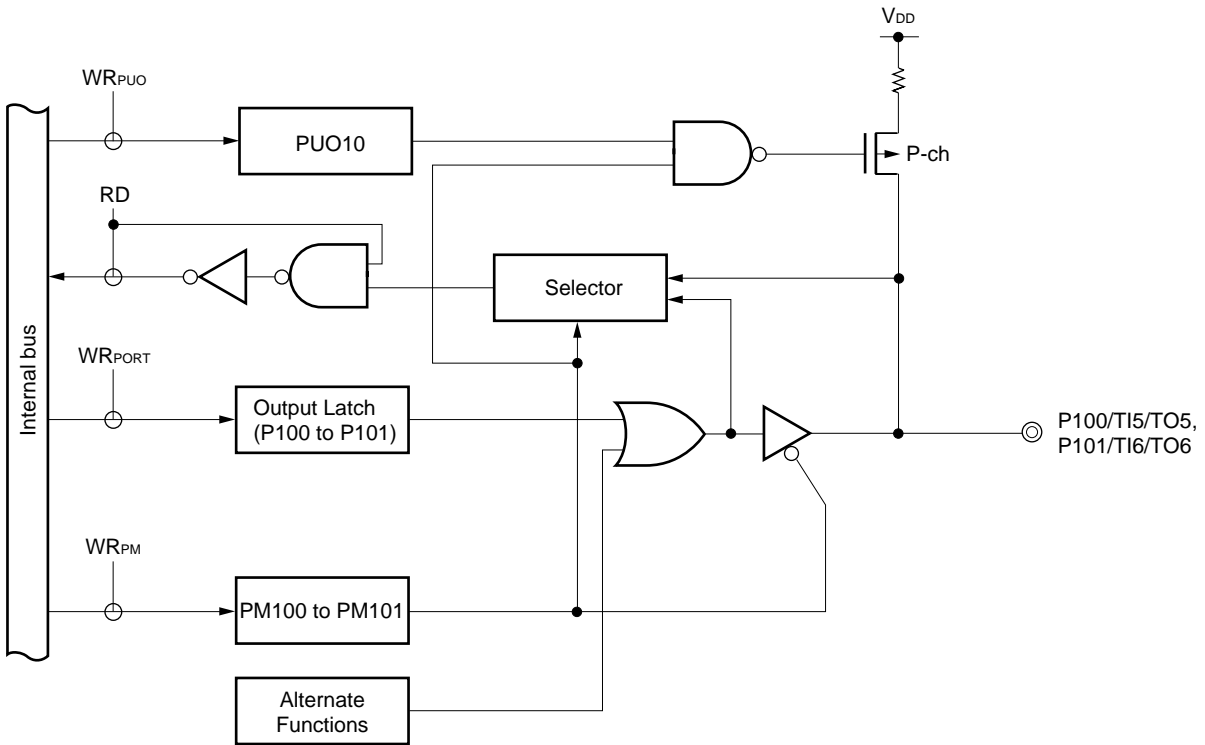
This is a 2-bit input/output port with output latches. Input mode/output mode can be specified bit-wise by means of port mode register 10 (PM10). When pins P100 to P101 are used as input port pins, an on-chip pull-up resistor can be used as a 2-bit unit by means of pull-up resistor option register H (PUOH).

These pins are dual function pins and serve as timer inputs/outputs.

$\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input sets the input mode.

The port 10 block diagram is shown in Figure 4-9.

Figure 4-9. P100 to P101 Block Diagram



- PUO : Pull-up resistor option register
- PM : Port mode register
- RD : Port 10 read signal
- WR : Port 10 write signal

### 4.3 Port Function Control Registers

The following two types of registers control the ports.

- Port mode registers (PM0, PM1, PM3, PM5, PM7, PM10)
- Pull-up resistor option register (PUOH, PUOL)

#### (1) Port mode registers (PM0, PM1, PM3, PM5, PM7, PM10)

These registers are used to set port input/output in 1-bit units.

PM0, PM1, PM3, PM5, PM7, PM10 are independently set with a 1-bit or 8-bit memory manipulation instruction  $\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input sets registers to FFH.

When port pins are used as the dual-function pins, set the port mode register and output latch according to Table 4-3.

**Cautions** 1. P00 pin is input-only pin.

2. As port 0 has a dual function as external interrupt request input, when the port function output mode is specified and the output level is changed, the interrupt request flag is set. When the output mode is used, therefore, the interrupt mask flag should be set to 1 beforehand.

**Table 4-3. Port Mode Register and Output Latch Settings when Using Dual-Functions**

| Pin Name                   | Dual-functions |              | PM <sub>xx</sub> | P <sub>xx</sub> |
|----------------------------|----------------|--------------|------------------|-----------------|
|                            | Name           | Input/Output |                  |                 |
| P01 to P03                 | INTP1 to INTP3 | Input        | 1                | ×               |
| P10 to P17 <sup>Note</sup> | ANI0 to ANI7   | Input        | 1                | ×               |
| P35                        | PCL            | Output       | 0                | 0               |
| P36                        | BUZ            | Output       | 0                | 0               |
| P100                       | TI5            | Input        | 1                | ×               |
|                            | TO5            | Output       | 0                | 0               |
| P101                       | TI6            | Input        | 1                | ×               |
|                            | TO6            | Output       | 0                | 0               |

**Note** If a read instruction is performed to these pins when they are used as an alternate function, read data is to be undefined.

**Caution** When port 7 is used for serial interface, the I/O latch or output latch must be set according to its function. For the setting methods, see Table 11-2 “Serial Interface Channel 2 Operating Mode Settings.”

**Remarks** × : don't care  
 PM<sub>xx</sub> : port mode register  
 P<sub>xx</sub> : port output latch

Figure 4-10. Port Mode Register Format

| Symbol | 7    | 6    | 5    | 4    | 3    | 2    | 1     | 0     | Address | After Reset | R/W |
|--------|------|------|------|------|------|------|-------|-------|---------|-------------|-----|
| PM0    | 1    | 1    | 1    | 1    | PM03 | PM02 | PM01  | 1     | FF20H   | FFH         | R/W |
| PM1    | PM17 | PM16 | PM15 | PM14 | PM13 | PM12 | PM11  | PM10  | FF21H   | FFH         | R/W |
| PM3    | PM37 | PM36 | PM35 | PM34 | PM33 | PM32 | PM31  | PM30  | FF23H   | FFH         | R/W |
| PM5    | PM57 | PM56 | PM55 | PM54 | PM53 | PM52 | PM51  | PM50  | FF25H   | FFH         | R/W |
| PM7    | 1    | 1    | 1    | 1    | 1    | PM72 | PM71  | PM70  | FF27H   | FFH         | R/W |
| PM10   | 1    | 1    | 1    | 1    | 1    | 1    | PM101 | PM100 | FF2AH   | FFH         | R/W |

| PM <sub>m</sub> n | Pmn Pin Input/Output Mode Selection<br>(m = 0, 1, 3, 5, 7, 10 : n = 0 to 7) |
|-------------------|---|
| 0                 | Output mode (output buffer ON)  |
| 1                 | Input mode (output buffer OFF)  |

**Caution** Set 1 to the bits 0, 4 to 7 of PM0, bits 3 to 7 of PM7 and bits 2 to 7 of PM10.



**(2) Pull-up resistor option register (PUOH, PUOL)**

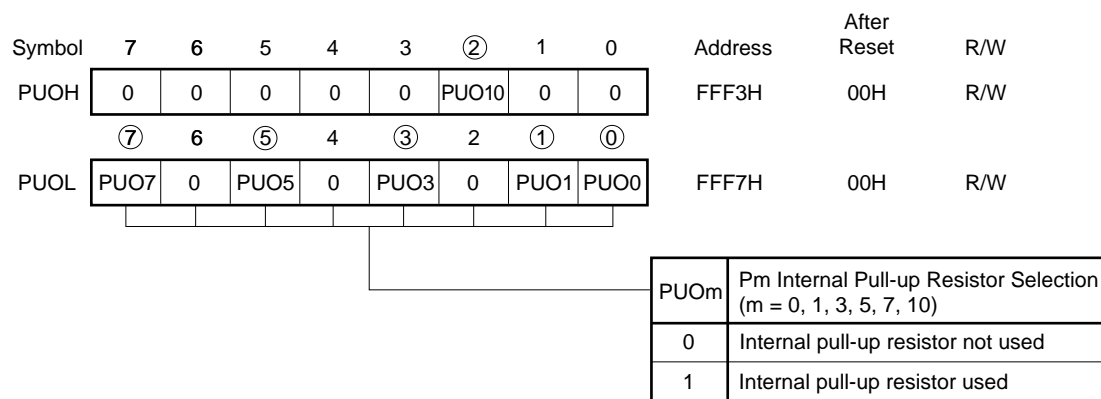
This register is used to set whether to use an internal pull-up resistor at each port or not. A pull-up resistor is internally used at bits which are set to the input mode at a port where on-chip pull-up resistor use has been specified with PUOH, PUOL. No on-chip pull-up resistors can be used to the bits set to the output mode or to the bits used as an analog input pin, irrespective of PUOH or PUOL setting.

PUOH and PUOL are set with a 1-bit or 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

RESET input sets this register to 00H.

- Cautions**
1. P00 pin does not incorporate a pull-up resistor.
  2. When port 1 is used as dual-function pin, an on-chip pull-up resistor cannot be used even if 1 is set in PUOL bit 1 (PUO1).

**Figure 4-11. Pull-Up Resistor Option Register Format**



**Caution** Set 0 to the bits 0, 1, 3 to 7 of PUOH and bits 2, 4, 6 of PUOL.

## 4.4 Port Function Operations

Port operations differ depending on whether the input or output mode is set, as shown below.

### 4.4.1 Writing to input/output port

#### (1) Output mode

A value is written to the output latch by a transfer instruction, and the output latch contents are output from the pin.

Once data is written to the output latch, it is retained until data is written to the output latch again.

#### (2) Input mode

A value is written to the output latch by a transfer instruction, but since the output buffer is OFF, the pin status does not change.

Once data is written to the output latch, it is retained until data is written to the output latch again.

**Caution** In the case of 1-bit memory manipulation instruction, although a single bit is manipulated the port is accessed as an 8-bit unit. Therefore, on a port with a mixture of input and output pins, the output latch contents for pins specified as input are undefined except for the manipulated bit.

### 4.4.2 Reading from input/output port

#### (1) Output mode

The output latch contents are read by a transfer instruction. The output latch contents do not change.

#### (2) Input mode

The pin status is read by a transfer instruction. The output latch contents do not change.

### 4.4.3 Operations on input/output port

#### (1) Output mode

An operation is performed on the output latch contents, and the result is written to the output latch. The output latch contents are output from the pins.

Once data is written to the output latch, it is retained until data is written to the output latch again.

#### (2) Input mode

The output latch contents are undefined, but since the output buffer is OFF, the pin status does not change.

**Caution** In the case of 1-bit memory manipulation instruction, although a single bit is manipulated the port is accessed as an 8-bit unit. Therefore, on a port with a mixture of input and output pins, the output latch contents for pins specified as input are undefined, even for bits other than the manipulated bit.

[MEMO]

## CHAPTER 5 CLOCK GENERATOR

### 5.1 Clock Generator Functions

The clock generator generates the clock to be supplied to the CPU and peripheral hardware. The following type of system clock oscillator is available.

#### **Main system clock oscillator**

This circuit oscillates at frequencies of 1 to 5.0 MHz. Oscillation can be stopped by executing the STOP instruction.

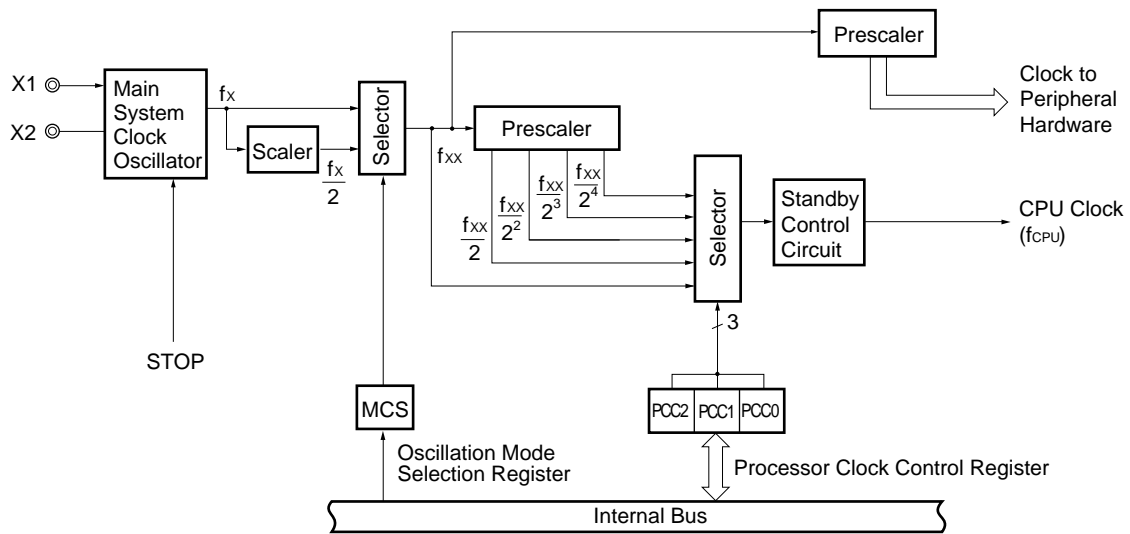
### 5.2 Clock Generator Configuration

The clock generator consists of the following hardware.

**Table 5-1. Clock Generator Configuration**

| Item             | Configuration  |
|------------------|--|
| Control register | Processor clock control register (PCC)<br>Oscillation mode selection register (OSMS) |
| Oscillator       | Main system clock oscillator   |

Figure 5-1. Block Diagram of Clock Generator



### 5.3 Clock Generator Control Register

The clock generator is controlled by the following two registers:

- Processor clock control register (PCC)
- Oscillation mode selection register (OSMS)

#### (1) Processor clock control register (PCC)

The PCC sets whether to use CPU clock selection and the ratio of division.

The PCC is set with a 1-bit or 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

RESET input sets the PCC to 04H.

**Figure 5-2. Processor Clock Control Register Format**

|        |   |   |   |   |   |      |      |      |         |             |     |
|--------|---|---|---|---|---|------|------|------|---------|-------------|-----|
| Symbol | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2    | 1    | 0    | Address | After Reset | R/W |
| PCC    | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | PCC2 | PCC1 | PCC0 | FFFBH   | 04H         | R/W |

| PCC2             | PCC1 | PCC0 | CPU Clock Selection ( $f_{CPU}$ ) |                         |                          |
|------------------|------|------|-----------------------------------|-------------------------|--------------------------|
|                  |      |      |                                   | MCS=1                   | MCS=0                    |
| 0                | 0    | 0    | $f_{xx}$                          | $f_x$ (0.4 $\mu$ s)     | $f_x/2$ (0.8 $\mu$ s)    |
| 0                | 0    | 1    | $f_{xx}/2$                        | $f_x/2$ (0.8 $\mu$ s)   | $f_x/2^2$ (1.6 $\mu$ s)  |
| 0                | 1    | 0    | $f_{xx}/2^2$                      | $f_x/2^2$ (1.6 $\mu$ s) | $f_x/2^3$ (3.2 $\mu$ s)  |
| 0                | 1    | 1    | $f_{xx}/2^3$                      | $f_x/2^3$ (3.2 $\mu$ s) | $f_x/2^4$ (6.4 $\mu$ s)  |
| 1                | 0    | 0    | $f_{xx}/2^4$                      | $f_x/2^4$ (6.4 $\mu$ s) | $f_x/2^5$ (12.8 $\mu$ s) |
| Other than above |      |      | Setting prohibited                |                         |                          |

**Caution** Set 0 to the bits 3 to 7.

- Remarks**
1.  $f_{xx}$  : Main system clock frequency ( $f_x$  or  $f_x/2$ )
  2.  $f_x$  : Main system clock oscillator frequency
  3. MCS : Bit 0 of oscillation mode selection register (OSMS)
  4. Figures in parentheses indicate minimum instruction execution time :  $2f_{CPU}$  when operating at  $f_x = 5.0$  MHz.

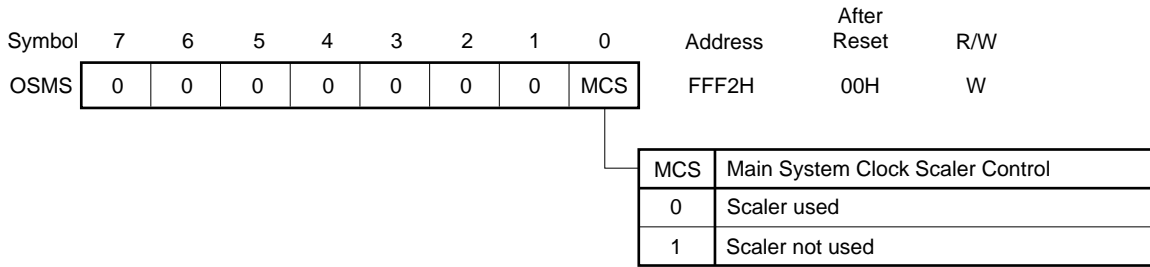
**(2) Oscillation mode selection register (OSMS)**

This register specifies whether the clock output from the main system clock oscillator without passing through the scaler is used as the main system clock, or the clock output via the scaler is used as the main system clock.

OSMS is set with 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

$\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input sets OSMS to 00H.

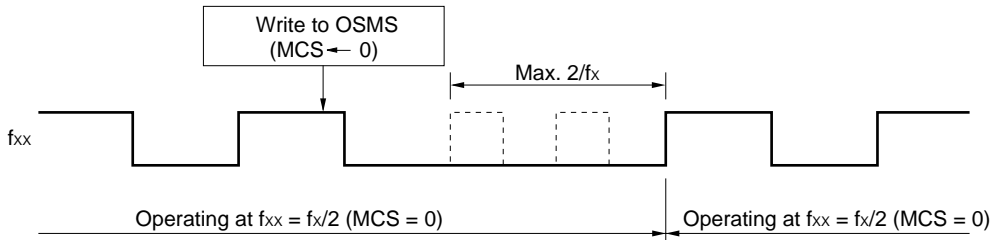
**Figure 5-3. Oscillation Mode Selection Register Format**



★

**Cautions** 1. Writing to OSMS should be performed only immediately after reset signal release and before peripheral hardware operation starts. As shown in Figure 5-4 below, writing data (including same data as previous) to OSMS cause delay of main system clock cycle up to  $2/f_x$  during the write operation. Therefore, if this register is written during the operation, in peripheral hardware which operates with the main system clock, a temporary error occurs in the count clock cycle of timer, etc. In addition, because the oscillation mode is changed by this register, the clocks for peripheral hardware as well as that for the CPU are switched.

**Figure 5-4. Main System Clock Waveform due to Writing to OSMS**



2. When writing “1” to MCS,  $V_{DD}$  must be 2.7 V or higher before the write execution.

**Remarks**  $f_{xx}$  : Main system clock frequency ( $f_x$  or  $f_x/2$ )  
 $f_x$  : Main system clock oscillation frequency

## 5.4 System Clock Oscillator

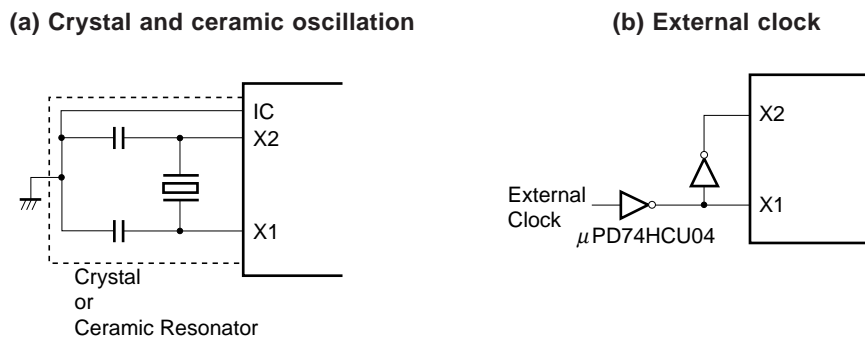
### 5.4.1 Main system clock oscillator

The main system clock oscillator oscillates with a crystal resonator or a ceramic resonator (standard: 5.0 MHz) connected to the X1 and X2 pins.

External clocks can be input to the main system clock oscillator. In this case, input a clock signal to the X1 pin and an antiphase clock signal to the X2 pin.

Figure 5-5 shows an external circuit of the main system clock oscillator.

Figure 5-5. External Circuit of Main System Clock Oscillator



★

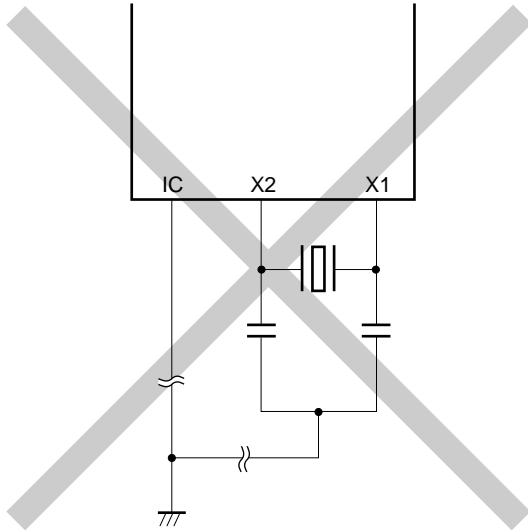
- Cautions**
1. Do not execute the STOP instruction if an external clock is used. This is because the X2 pin is connected to V<sub>DD</sub> via a pull-up register.
  2. When using a main system clock oscillator, carry out wiring in the broken line area in Figure 5-5 to prevent any effects from wiring capacities.
    - Minimize the wiring length.
    - Do not allow wiring to intersect with other signal conductors. Do not allow wiring to come near changing high current.
    - Set the potential of the grounding position of the oscillator capacitor to that of V<sub>SS</sub>. Do not ground to any ground pattern where high current is present.
    - Do not fetch signals from the oscillator.

Figure 5-6 shows examples of oscillator having bad connection.

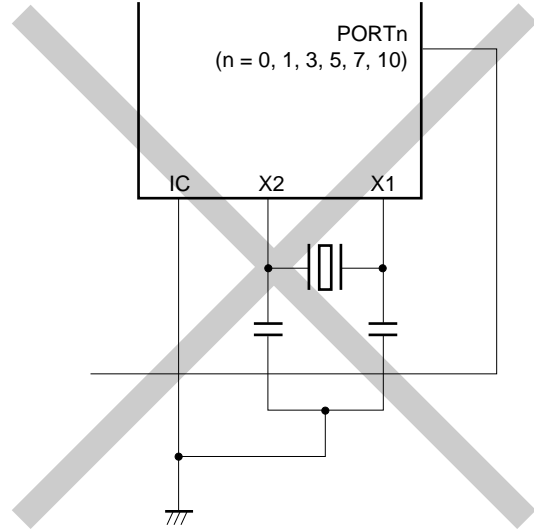


Figure 5-6. Examples of Oscillator with Bad Connection (1/2)

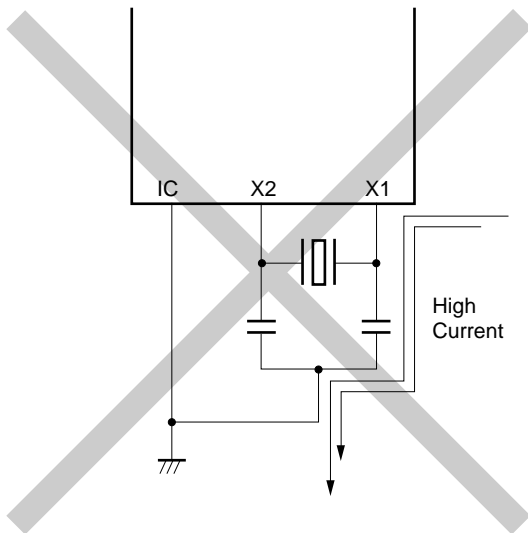
(a) Wiring of connection circuits is too long



(b) Signal conductors intersect with each other



(c) Changing high current is too near a signal conductor



(d) Current flows through the grounding line of the oscillator (potential at points A, B, and C fluctuate)

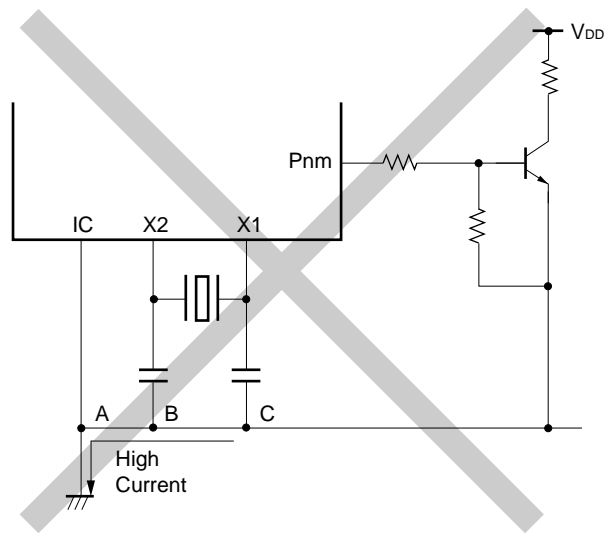
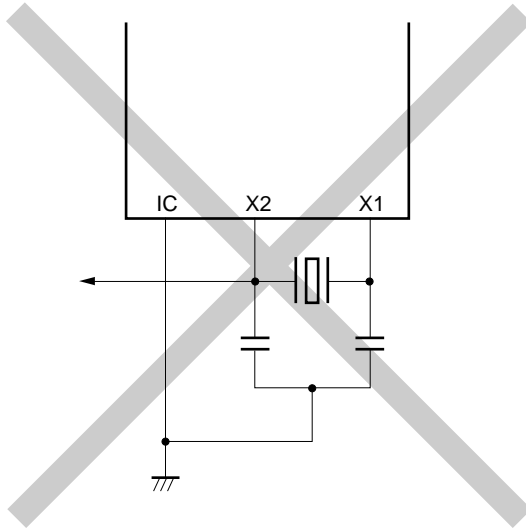


Figure 5-6. Examples of Oscillator with Bad Connection (2/2)

(c) Signals are fetched



#### 5.4.2 Scaler

The scaler divides the main system clock oscillator output ( $f_{xx}$ ) and generates various clocks.

## 5.5 Clock Generator Operations

The clock generator generates the following various types of clocks and controls the CPU operating mode including the standby mode.

- Main system clock  $f_{xx}$
- CPU clock  $f_{CPU}$
- Clock to peripheral hardware

The following clock generator functions and operations are determined with the processor clock control register (PCC) and the oscillation mode selection register (OSMS).

- Upon generation of  $\overline{\text{RESET}}$  signal, the lowest speed mode of the main system clock (12.8  $\mu\text{s}$  when operated at 5.0 MHz) is selected (PCC = 04H, OSMS = 00H). Main system clock oscillation stops while low level is applied to  $\overline{\text{RESET}}$  pin.
- The six types of CPU clocks (0.4  $\mu\text{s}$ , 0.8  $\mu\text{s}$ , 1.6  $\mu\text{s}$ , 3.2  $\mu\text{s}$ , 6.4  $\mu\text{s}$ , 12.8  $\mu\text{s}$  : 5.0 MHz) can be selected by setting the PCC and OSMS.
- Two standby modes, the STOP and HALT modes, are available.
- The main system clock is divided and supplied to the peripheral hardware. Thus, the peripheral hardware also stops if the main system clock is stopped. (Except external input clock operation)

## 5.6 Changing CPU Clock Settings

### 5.6.1 Time required for CPU clock switchover

The CPU clock can be switched over by means of bits 0 to 2 (PCC0 to PCC2) of the processor clock control register (PCC).

The actual switchover operation is not performed directly after writing to the PCC, but operation continues on the pre-switchover clock for several instructions (see **Table 5-2**).

**Table 5-2. Maximum Time Required for CPU Clock Switchover**

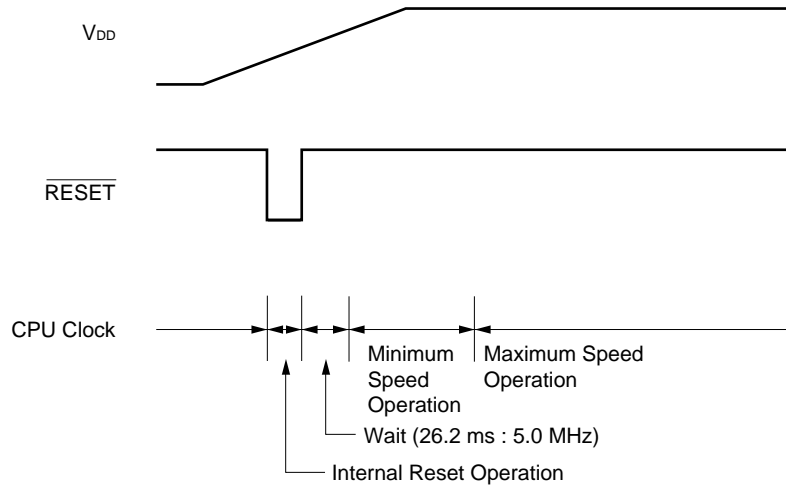
| Set Values before Switchover |      |      | Set Values After Switchover |      |      |                 |      |      |                 |      |      |                 |      |      |                 |      |      |
|------------------------------|------|------|-----------------------------|------|------|-----------------|------|------|-----------------|------|------|-----------------|------|------|-----------------|------|------|
| PCC2                         | PCC1 | PCC0 | PCC2                        | PCC1 | PCC0 | PCC2            | PCC1 | PCC0 | PCC2            | PCC1 | PCC0 | PCC2            | PCC1 | PCC0 | PCC2            | PCC1 | PCC0 |
|                              |      |      | 0                           | 0    | 0    | 0               | 0    | 1    | 0               | 1    | 0    | 0               | 1    | 1    | 1               | 0    | 0    |
| 0                            | 0    | 0    | /                           |      |      | 16 instructions |      |      | 16 instructions |      |      | 16 instructions |      |      | 16 instructions |      |      |
| 0                            | 0    | 1    |                             |      |      | 8 instructions  |      |      | 8 instructions  |      |      | 8 instructions  |      |      | 8 instructions  |      |      |
| 0                            | 1    | 0    |                             |      |      | 4 instructions  |      |      | 4 instructions  |      |      | 4 instructions  |      |      | 4 instructions  |      |      |
| 0                            | 1    | 1    |                             |      |      | 2 instructions  |      |      | 2 instructions  |      |      | 2 instructions  |      |      | 2 instructions  |      |      |
| 1                            | 0    | 0    |                             |      |      | 1 instruction   |      |      | 1 instruction   |      |      | 1 instruction   |      |      | 1 instruction   |      |      |

**Remark** One instruction is the minimum instruction execution time with the pre-switchover CPU clock.

### 5.6.2 CPU clock switching procedure

This section describes CPU clock switching procedure.

Figure 5-7. CPU Clock Switching



- (1) The CPU is reset by setting the  $\overline{\text{RESET}}$  signal to low level after power-on. After that, when reset is released by setting the  $\overline{\text{RESET}}$  signal to high level, main system clock starts oscillation. At this time, oscillation stabilization time ( $2^{17}/f_x$ ) is secured automatically. After that, the CPU starts executing the instruction at the minimum speed of the main system clock ( $12.8 \mu\text{s}$  when operated at 5.0 MHz).
- (2) After the lapse of a sufficient time for the V<sub>DD</sub> voltage to increase to enable operation at maximum speeds, the processor clock control register (PCC) and oscillation mode selection register (OSMS) are rewritten and the maximum-speed operation is carried out.

## CHAPTER 6 8-BIT TIMER/EVENT COUNTERS 5 AND 6

The timers incorporated into the  $\mu$ PD78083 subseries are outlined below.

**(1) 8-bit timers/event counters 5 and 6 (TM5 and TM6)**

This can be used to serve as an interval timer, an external event counter, square wave output with any selected frequency PWM, etc. It cannot be used as a 16-bit timer/event counter (See **CHAPTER 6 8-BIT TIMER/EVENT COUNTERS 5 AND 6**).

**(2) Watchdog timer (WDTM)**

WDTM can perform the watchdog timer function or generate non-maskable interrupt requests, maskable interrupt requests and RESET at the preset time intervals (See **CHAPTER 7 WATCHDOG TIMER**).

**(3) Clock output control circuit**

This circuit supplies a clock obtained by dividing the main system clock, to other devices (See **CHAPTER 8 CLOCK OUTPUT CONTROL CIRCUIT**).

**(4) Buzzer output control circuit**

This circuit outputs the buzzer frequency obtained by dividing the main system clock (See **CHAPTER 9 BUZZER OUTPUT CONTROL CIRCUIT**).

**Table 6-1 Timer/Event Counter Types and Functions**

|          |                        | 8-bit Timer/Event Counters 5 and 6 | Watchdog Timer            |
|----------|------------------------|------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| Type     | Interval timer         | 2 channels                         | 1 channel <sup>Note</sup> |
|          | External event counter | √                                  | —                         |
| Function | Timer output           | √                                  | —                         |
|          | PWM output             | √                                  | —                         |
|          | Square-wave output     | √                                  | —                         |
|          | Interrupt request      | √                                  | √                         |

**Note** Watchdog timer can perform either the watchdog timer function or the interval timer function.

6.1 8-Bit Timer/Event Counters 5 and 6 Functions

The 8-bit timer/event counters 5 and 6 (TM5 and TM6) have the following functions.

- Interval timer
- External event counter
- Square-wave output
- PWM output

(1) 8-bit interval timer

Interrupt requests are generated at the preset time intervals.

Table 6-2. 8-Bit Timer/Event Counters 5 and 6 Interval Times

| Minimum Interval Time                |                                      | Maximum Interval Time                |                                      | Resolution                           |                                      |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| MCS = 1                              | MCS = 0                              | MCS = 1                              | MCS = 0                              | MCS = 1                              | MCS = 0                              |
| —                                    | 1/fx<br>(200 ns)                     | —                                    | 2 <sup>8</sup> × 1/fx<br>(51.2 μs)   | —                                    | 1/fx<br>(200 ns)                     |
| 1/fx<br>(200 ns)                     | 2 × 1/fx<br>(400 ns)                 | 2 <sup>8</sup> × 1/fx<br>(51.2 μs)   | 2 <sup>9</sup> × 1/fx<br>(102.4 μs)  | 1/fx<br>(200 ns)                     | 2 × 1/fx<br>(400 ns)                 |
| 2 × 1/fx<br>(400 ns)                 | 2 <sup>2</sup> × 1/fx<br>(800 ns)    | 2 <sup>9</sup> × 1/fx<br>(102.4 μs)  | 2 <sup>10</sup> × 1/fx<br>(204.8 μs) | 2 × 1/fx<br>(400 ns)                 | 2 <sup>2</sup> × 1/fx<br>(800 ns)    |
| 2 <sup>2</sup> × 1/fx<br>(800 ns)    | 2 <sup>3</sup> × 1/fx<br>(1.6 μs)    | 2 <sup>10</sup> × 1/fx<br>(204.8 μs) | 2 <sup>11</sup> × 1/fx<br>(409.6 μs) | 2 <sup>2</sup> × 1/fx<br>(800 ns)    | 2 <sup>3</sup> × 1/fx<br>(1.6 μs)    |
| 2 <sup>3</sup> × 1/fx<br>(1.6 μs)    | 2 <sup>4</sup> × 1/fx<br>(3.2 μs)    | 2 <sup>11</sup> × 1/fx<br>(409.6 μs) | 2 <sup>12</sup> × 1/fx<br>(819.2 μs) | 2 <sup>3</sup> × 1/fx<br>(1.6 μs)    | 2 <sup>4</sup> × 1/fx<br>(3.2 μs)    |
| 2 <sup>4</sup> × 1/fx<br>(3.2 μs)    | 2 <sup>5</sup> × 1/fx<br>(6.4 μs)    | 2 <sup>12</sup> × 1/fx<br>(819.2 μs) | 2 <sup>13</sup> × 1/fx<br>(1.64 ms)  | 2 <sup>4</sup> × 1/fx<br>(3.2 μs)    | 2 <sup>5</sup> × 1/fx<br>(6.4 μs)    |
| 2 <sup>5</sup> × 1/fx<br>(6.4 μs)    | 2 <sup>6</sup> × 1/fx<br>(12.8 μs)   | 2 <sup>13</sup> × 1/fx<br>(1.64 ms)  | 2 <sup>14</sup> × 1/fx<br>(3.28 ms)  | 2 <sup>5</sup> × 1/fx<br>(6.4 μs)    | 2 <sup>6</sup> × 1/fx<br>(12.8 μs)   |
| 2 <sup>6</sup> × 1/fx<br>(12.8 μs)   | 2 <sup>7</sup> × 1/fx<br>(25.6 μs)   | 2 <sup>14</sup> × 1/fx<br>(3.28 ms)  | 2 <sup>15</sup> × 1/fx<br>(6.55 ms)  | 2 <sup>6</sup> × 1/fx<br>(12.8 μs)   | 2 <sup>7</sup> × 1/fx<br>(25.6 μs)   |
| 2 <sup>7</sup> × 1/fx<br>(25.6 μs)   | 2 <sup>8</sup> × 1/fx<br>(51.2 μs)   | 2 <sup>15</sup> × 1/fx<br>(6.55 ms)  | 2 <sup>16</sup> × 1/fx<br>(13.1 ms)  | 2 <sup>7</sup> × 1/fx<br>(25.6 μs)   | 2 <sup>8</sup> × 1/fx<br>(51.2 μs)   |
| 2 <sup>8</sup> × 1/fx<br>(51.2 μs)   | 2 <sup>9</sup> × 1/fx<br>(102.4 μs)  | 2 <sup>16</sup> × 1/fx<br>(13.1 ms)  | 2 <sup>17</sup> × 1/fx<br>(26.2 ms)  | 2 <sup>8</sup> × 1/fx<br>(51.2 μs)   | 2 <sup>9</sup> × 1/fx<br>(102.4 μs)  |
| 2 <sup>9</sup> × 1/fx<br>(102.4 μs)  | 2 <sup>10</sup> × 1/fx<br>(204.8 μs) | 2 <sup>17</sup> × 1/fx<br>(26.2 ms)  | 2 <sup>18</sup> × 1/fx<br>(52.4 ms)  | 2 <sup>9</sup> × 1/fx<br>(102.4 μs)  | 2 <sup>10</sup> × 1/fx<br>(204.8 μs) |
| 2 <sup>11</sup> × 1/fx<br>(409.6 μs) | 2 <sup>12</sup> × 1/fx<br>(819.2 μs) | 2 <sup>19</sup> × 1/fx<br>(104.9 ms) | 2 <sup>20</sup> × 1/fx<br>(209.7 ms) | 2 <sup>11</sup> × 1/fx<br>(409.6 μs) | 2 <sup>12</sup> × 1/fx<br>(819.2 μs) |

- Remarks**
1. f<sub>x</sub> : Main system clock oscillation frequency
  2. MCS : Oscillation mode selection register (OSMS) bit 0
  3. Values in parentheses when operated at f<sub>x</sub> = 5.0 MHz.

**(2) External event counter**

The number of pulses of an externally input signal can be measured.

**(3) Square-wave output**

A square wave with any selected frequency can be output.

**Table 6-3. 8-Bit Timer/Event Counters 5 and 6 Square-Wave Output Ranges**

| Minimum pulse width                  |                                      | Maximum pulse width                  |                                      | Resolution                           |                                      |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| MCS = 1                              | MCS = 0                              | MCS = 1                              | MCS = 0                              | MCS = 1                              | MCS = 0                              |
| —                                    | 1/fx<br>(200 ns)                     | —                                    | 2 <sup>8</sup> × 1/fx<br>(51.2 μs)   | —                                    | 1/fx<br>(200 ns)                     |
| 1/fx<br>(200 ns)                     | 2 × 1/fx<br>(400 ns)                 | 2 <sup>8</sup> × 1/fx<br>(51.2 μs)   | 2 <sup>9</sup> × 1/fx<br>(102.4 μs)  | 1/fx<br>(200 ns)                     | 2 × 1/fx<br>(400 ns)                 |
| 2 × 1/fx<br>(400 ns)                 | 2 <sup>2</sup> × 1/fx<br>(800 ns)    | 2 <sup>9</sup> × 1/fx<br>(102.4 μs)  | 2 <sup>10</sup> × 1/fx<br>(204.8 μs) | 2 × 1/fx<br>(400 ns)                 | 2 <sup>2</sup> × 1/fx<br>(800 ns)    |
| 2 <sup>2</sup> × 1/fx<br>(800 ns)    | 2 <sup>3</sup> × 1/fx<br>(1.6 μs)    | 2 <sup>10</sup> × 1/fx<br>(204.8 μs) | 2 <sup>11</sup> × 1/fx<br>(409.6 μs) | 2 <sup>2</sup> × 1/fx<br>(800 ns)    | 2 <sup>3</sup> × 1/fx<br>(1.6 μs)    |
| 2 <sup>3</sup> × 1/fx<br>(1.6 μs)    | 2 <sup>4</sup> × 1/fx<br>(3.2 μs)    | 2 <sup>11</sup> × 1/fx<br>(409.6 μs) | 2 <sup>12</sup> × 1/fx<br>(819.2 μs) | 2 <sup>3</sup> × 1/fx<br>(1.6 μs)    | 2 <sup>4</sup> × 1/fx<br>(3.2 μs)    |
| 2 <sup>4</sup> × 1/fx<br>(3.2 μs)    | 2 <sup>5</sup> × 1/fx<br>(6.4 μs)    | 2 <sup>12</sup> × 1/fx<br>(819.2 μs) | 2 <sup>13</sup> × 1/fx<br>(1.64 ms)  | 2 <sup>4</sup> × 1/fx<br>(3.2 μs)    | 2 <sup>5</sup> × 1/fx<br>(6.4 μs)    |
| 2 <sup>5</sup> × 1/fx<br>(6.4 μs)    | 2 <sup>6</sup> × 1/fx<br>(12.8 μs)   | 2 <sup>13</sup> × 1/fx<br>(1.64 ms)  | 2 <sup>14</sup> × 1/fx<br>(3.28 ms)  | 2 <sup>5</sup> × 1/fx<br>(6.4 μs)    | 2 <sup>6</sup> × 1/fx<br>(12.8 μs)   |
| 2 <sup>6</sup> × 1/fx<br>(12.8 μs)   | 2 <sup>7</sup> × 1/fx<br>(25.6 μs)   | 2 <sup>14</sup> × 1/fx<br>(3.28 ms)  | 2 <sup>15</sup> × 1/fx<br>(6.55 ms)  | 2 <sup>6</sup> × 1/fx<br>(12.8 μs)   | 2 <sup>7</sup> × 1/fx<br>(25.6 μs)   |
| 2 <sup>7</sup> × 1/fx<br>(25.6 μs)   | 2 <sup>8</sup> × 1/fx<br>(51.2 μs)   | 2 <sup>15</sup> × 1/fx<br>(6.55 ms)  | 2 <sup>16</sup> × 1/fx<br>(13.1 ms)  | 2 <sup>7</sup> × 1/fx<br>(25.6 μs)   | 2 <sup>8</sup> × 1/fx<br>(51.2 μs)   |
| 2 <sup>8</sup> × 1/fx<br>(51.2 μs)   | 2 <sup>9</sup> × 1/fx<br>(102.4 μs)  | 2 <sup>16</sup> × 1/fx<br>(13.1 ms)  | 2 <sup>17</sup> × 1/fx<br>(26.2 ms)  | 2 <sup>8</sup> × 1/fx<br>(51.2 μs)   | 2 <sup>9</sup> × 1/fx<br>(102.4 μs)  |
| 2 <sup>9</sup> × 1/fx<br>(102.4 μs)  | 2 <sup>10</sup> × 1/fx<br>(204.8 μs) | 2 <sup>17</sup> × 1/fx<br>(26.2 ms)  | 2 <sup>18</sup> × 1/fx<br>(52.4 ms)  | 2 <sup>9</sup> × 1/fx<br>(102.4 μs)  | 2 <sup>10</sup> × 1/fx<br>(204.8 μs) |
| 2 <sup>11</sup> × 1/fx<br>(409.6 μs) | 2 <sup>12</sup> × 1/fx<br>(819.2 μs) | 2 <sup>19</sup> × 1/fx<br>(104.9 ms) | 2 <sup>20</sup> × 1/fx<br>(209.7 ms) | 2 <sup>11</sup> × 1/fx<br>(409.6 μs) | 2 <sup>12</sup> × 1/fx<br>(819.2 μs) |

- Remarks**
1.  $f_x$  : Main system clock oscillation frequency
  2. MCS : Oscillation mode selection register (OSMS) bit 0
  3. Values in parentheses when operated at  $f_x = 5.0$  MHz.

**(4) PWM Output**

TM5 and TM6 can generate 8-bit resolution PWM output.



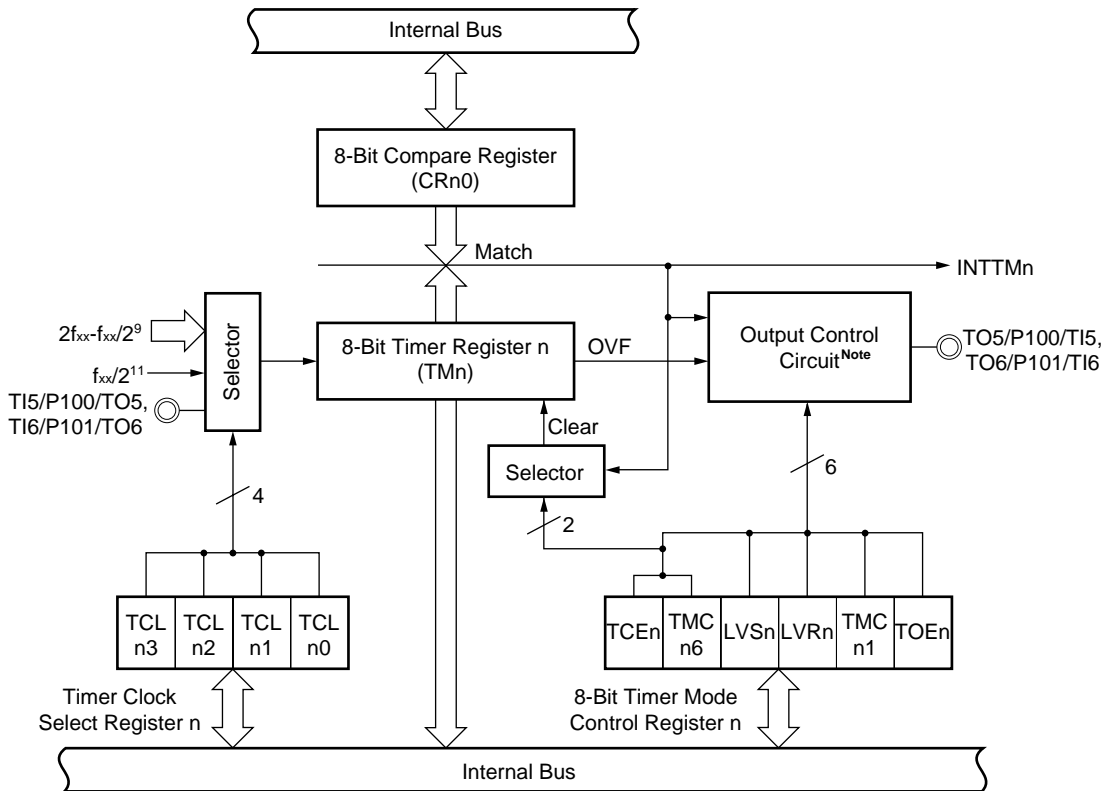
### 6.2 8-Bit Timer/Event Counters 5 and 6 Configurations

The 8-bit timer/event counters 5 and 6 consist of the following hardware.

**Table 6-4. 8-Bit Timer/Event Counters 5 and 6 Configurations**

| Item             | Configuration  |
|------------------|--|
| Timer register   | 8 bits × 2 (TM5, TM6)  |
| Register         | Compare register: 8 bits × 2 (CR50, CR60)  |
| Timer output     | 2 (TO5, TO6)   |
| Control register | Timer clock select register 5 and 6 (TCL5, TCL6)<br>8-bit timer mode control register 5 and 6 (TMC5, TMC6)<br>Port mode register 10 (PM10) |

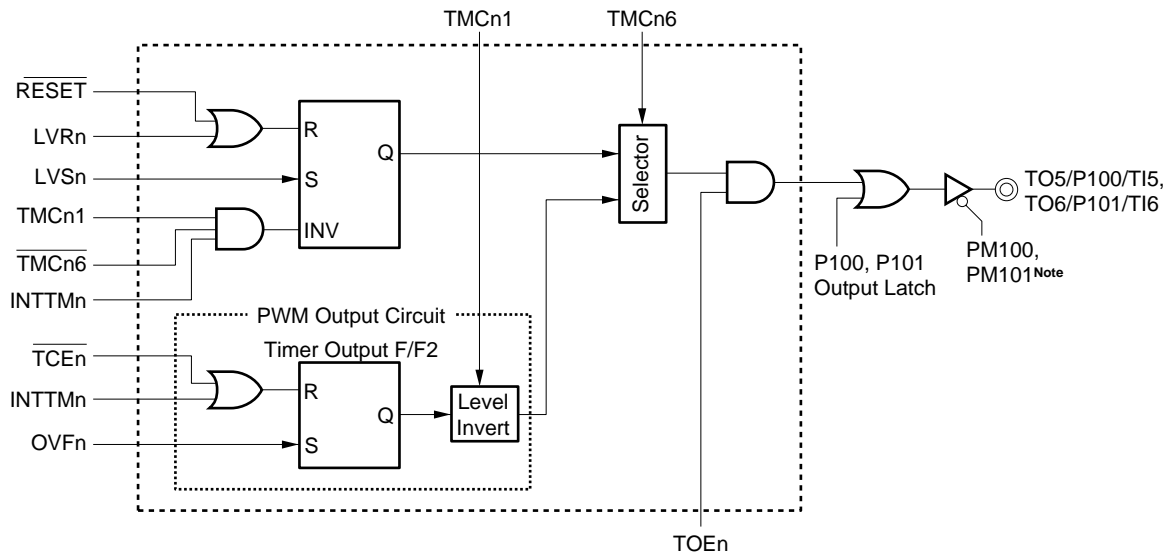
**Figure 6-1. 8-Bit Timer/Event Counters 5 and 6 Block Diagram**



**Note** Refer to Figures 6-2 for details of configurations of 8-bit timer/event counters 5 and 6 output control circuits.

**Remark** n = 5, 6

Figure 6-2. Block Diagram of 8-Bit Timer/Event Counters 5 and 6 Output Control Circuit



**Note** PM100 : Bit 0 of port mode register 10 (PM10)  
 PM101 : Bit 1 of PM10

**Remarks** 1. The section in the broken line is an output control circuit.  
 2. n = 5, 6

**(1) Compare registers 50 and 60 (CR50, CR60)**

These are 8-bit registers to compare the value set to CR50 to the 8-bit timer register 5 (TM5) count value, and the value set to CR60 to the 8-bit timer register 6 (TM6) count value, and, if they match, generate an interrupt request (INTTM5 and INTTM6, respectively).

CR50 and CR60 are set with an 8-bit memory manipulation instruction. They cannot be set with a 16-bit memory manipulation instruction. The 00H to FFH values can be set.

$\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input sets CR50 and CR60 to 00H.

**Caution** When using the PWM mode, please set the CRn0 value before setting TMCn (n=5, 6) to the PWM mode.

**(2) 8-bit timer registers 5 and 6 (TM5, TM6)**

These are 8-bit registers to count count pulses.

TM5 and TM6 are read with an 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

$\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input sets TM5 and TM6 to 00H.

**6.3 8-Bit Timer/Event Counters 5 and 6 Control Registers**

The following three types of registers are used to control the 8-bit timer/event counter 5 and 6.

- Timer clock select register 5 and 6 (TCL5, TCL6)
- 8-bit timer mode control register 5 and 6 (TMC5, TMC6)
- Port mode register 10 (PM10)

**(1) Timer clock select register 5 (TCL5)**

This register sets count clocks of 8-bit timer register 5.

TCL5 is set with an 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

$\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input sets TCL5 to 00H.

Figure 6-3. Timer Clock Select Register 5 Format

|        |   |   |   |   |       |       |       |       |         |             |     |
|--------|---|---|---|---|-------|-------|-------|-------|---------|-------------|-----|
| Symbol | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3     | 2     | 1     | 0     | Address | After Reset | R/W |
| TCL5   | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | TCL53 | TCL52 | TCL51 | TCL50 | FF52H   | 00H         | R/W |

| TCL53            | TCL52 | TCL51 | TCL50 | 8-Bit Timer Register 5 Count Clock Selection |   |   |
|------------------|-------|-------|-------|--|---|---|
|                  |       |       |       | MCS=1  |   | MCS=0                                     |
| 0                | 0     | 0     | 0     | TI5 falling edge <sup>Note</sup>             |   |   |
| 0                | 0     | 0     | 1     | TI5 rising edge <sup>Note</sup>              |   |   |
| 0                | 1     | 0     | 0     | 2f <sub>xx</sub>                             | Setting prohibited                        | f <sub>x</sub> (5.0 MHz)                  |
| 0                | 1     | 0     | 1     | f <sub>xx</sub>                              | f <sub>x</sub> (5.0 MHz)                  | f <sub>x</sub> /2 (2.5 MHz)               |
| 0                | 1     | 1     | 0     | f <sub>xx</sub> /2                           | f <sub>x</sub> /2 (2.5 MHz)               | f <sub>x</sub> /2 <sup>2</sup> (1.25 MHz) |
| 0                | 1     | 1     | 1     | f <sub>xx</sub> /2 <sup>2</sup>              | f <sub>x</sub> /2 <sup>2</sup> (1.25 MHz) | f <sub>x</sub> /2 <sup>3</sup> (625 kHz)  |
| 1                | 0     | 0     | 0     | f <sub>xx</sub> /2 <sup>3</sup>              | f <sub>x</sub> /2 <sup>3</sup> (625 kHz)  | f <sub>x</sub> /2 <sup>4</sup> (313 kHz)  |
| 1                | 0     | 0     | 1     | f <sub>xx</sub> /2 <sup>4</sup>              | f <sub>x</sub> /2 <sup>4</sup> (313 kHz)  | f <sub>x</sub> /2 <sup>5</sup> (156 kHz)  |
| 1                | 0     | 1     | 0     | f <sub>xx</sub> /2 <sup>5</sup>              | f <sub>x</sub> /2 <sup>5</sup> (156 kHz)  | f <sub>x</sub> /2 <sup>6</sup> (78.1 kHz) |
| 1                | 0     | 1     | 1     | f <sub>xx</sub> /2 <sup>6</sup>              | f <sub>x</sub> /2 <sup>6</sup> (78.1 kHz) | f <sub>x</sub> /2 <sup>7</sup> (39.1 kHz) |
| 1                | 1     | 0     | 0     | f <sub>xx</sub> /2 <sup>7</sup>              | f <sub>x</sub> /2 <sup>7</sup> (39.1 kHz) | f <sub>x</sub> /2 <sup>8</sup> (19.5 kHz) |
| 1                | 1     | 0     | 1     | f <sub>xx</sub> /2 <sup>8</sup>              | f <sub>x</sub> /2 <sup>8</sup> (19.5 kHz) | f <sub>x</sub> /2 <sup>9</sup> (9.8 kHz)  |
| 1                | 1     | 1     | 0     | f <sub>xx</sub> /2 <sup>9</sup>              | f <sub>x</sub> /2 <sup>9</sup> (9.8 kHz)  | f <sub>x</sub> /2 <sup>10</sup> (4.9 kHz) |
| 1                | 1     | 1     | 1     | f <sub>xx</sub> /2 <sup>11</sup>             | f <sub>x</sub> /2 <sup>11</sup> (2.4 kHz) | f <sub>x</sub> /2 <sup>12</sup> (1.2 kHz) |
| Other than above |       |       |       | Setting prohibited                           |   |   |

**Note** The timer output (PWM output) cannot be used in cases where the clock is being input from an external source.

**Caution** When rewriting TCL5 to other data, stop the timer operation beforehand.

- Remarks**
1. f<sub>xx</sub> : Main system clock frequency (f<sub>x</sub> or f<sub>x</sub>/2)
  2. f<sub>x</sub> : Main system clock oscillation frequency
  3. TI5 : 8-bit timer register 5 input pin
  4. MCS : Oscillation mode selection register (OSMS) bit 0
  5. Values in parentheses when operated at f<sub>x</sub> = 5.0 MHz

**(2) Timer clock select register 6 (TCL6)**

This register sets count clocks of 8-bit timer register 6.

TCL6 is set with an 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

RESET input sets TCL6 to 00H.

**Figure 6-4. Timer Clock Select Register 6 Format**

|        |   |   |   |   |       |       |       |       |         |             |
|--------|---|---|---|---|-------|-------|-------|-------|---------|-------------|
| Symbol | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3     | 2     | 1     | 0     | Address | After Reset |
| TCL6   | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | TCL63 | TCL62 | TCL61 | TCL60 | FF56H   | 00H         |

| TCL63            | TCL62 | TCL61 | TCL60 | 8-bit Timer Register 6 Count Clock Selection |   |   |   |
|------------------|-------|-------|-------|--|---|---|---|
|                  |       |       |       | MCS=1  |   | MCS=0                                     |   |
| 0                | 0     | 0     | 0     | TI6 falling edge <sup>Note</sup>             |   |   |   |
| 0                | 0     | 0     | 1     | TI6 rising edge <sup>Note</sup>              |   |   |   |
| 0                | 1     | 0     | 0     | 2f <sub>xx</sub>                             | Setting prohibited                        |   | f <sub>x</sub> (5.0 MHz)                  |
| 0                | 1     | 0     | 1     | f <sub>xx</sub>                              | f <sub>x</sub> (5.0 MHz)                  | f <sub>x</sub> /2 (2.5 MHz)               | f <sub>x</sub> /2 (2.5 MHz)               |
| 0                | 1     | 1     | 0     | f <sub>xx</sub> /2                           | f <sub>x</sub> /2 (2.5 MHz)               | f <sub>x</sub> /2 <sup>2</sup> (1.25 MHz) | f <sub>x</sub> /2 <sup>2</sup> (1.25 MHz) |
| 0                | 1     | 1     | 1     | f <sub>xx</sub> /2 <sup>2</sup>              | f <sub>x</sub> /2 <sup>2</sup> (1.25 MHz) | f <sub>x</sub> /2 <sup>3</sup> (625 kHz)  | f <sub>x</sub> /2 <sup>3</sup> (625 kHz)  |
| 1                | 0     | 0     | 0     | f <sub>xx</sub> /2 <sup>3</sup>              | f <sub>x</sub> /2 <sup>3</sup> (625 kHz)  | f <sub>x</sub> /2 <sup>4</sup> (313 kHz)  | f <sub>x</sub> /2 <sup>4</sup> (313 kHz)  |
| 1                | 0     | 0     | 1     | f <sub>xx</sub> /2 <sup>4</sup>              | f <sub>x</sub> /2 <sup>4</sup> (313 kHz)  | f <sub>x</sub> /2 <sup>5</sup> (156 kHz)  | f <sub>x</sub> /2 <sup>5</sup> (156 kHz)  |
| 1                | 0     | 1     | 0     | f <sub>xx</sub> /2 <sup>5</sup>              | f <sub>x</sub> /2 <sup>5</sup> (156 kHz)  | f <sub>x</sub> /2 <sup>6</sup> (78.1 kHz) | f <sub>x</sub> /2 <sup>6</sup> (78.1 kHz) |
| 1                | 0     | 1     | 1     | f <sub>xx</sub> /2 <sup>6</sup>              | f <sub>x</sub> /2 <sup>6</sup> (78.1 kHz) | f <sub>x</sub> /2 <sup>7</sup> (39.1 kHz) | f <sub>x</sub> /2 <sup>7</sup> (39.1 kHz) |
| 1                | 1     | 0     | 0     | f <sub>xx</sub> /2 <sup>7</sup>              | f <sub>x</sub> /2 <sup>7</sup> (39.1 kHz) | f <sub>x</sub> /2 <sup>8</sup> (19.5 kHz) | f <sub>x</sub> /2 <sup>8</sup> (19.5 kHz) |
| 1                | 1     | 0     | 1     | f <sub>xx</sub> /2 <sup>8</sup>              | f <sub>x</sub> /2 <sup>8</sup> (19.5 kHz) | f <sub>x</sub> /2 <sup>9</sup> (9.8 kHz)  | f <sub>x</sub> /2 <sup>9</sup> (9.8 kHz)  |
| 1                | 1     | 1     | 0     | f <sub>xx</sub> /2 <sup>9</sup>              | f <sub>x</sub> /2 <sup>9</sup> (9.8 kHz)  | f <sub>x</sub> /2 <sup>10</sup> (4.9 kHz) | f <sub>x</sub> /2 <sup>10</sup> (4.9 kHz) |
| 1                | 1     | 1     | 1     | f <sub>xx</sub> /2 <sup>11</sup>             | f <sub>x</sub> /2 <sup>11</sup> (2.4 kHz) | f <sub>x</sub> /2 <sup>12</sup> (1.2 kHz) | f <sub>x</sub> /2 <sup>12</sup> (1.2 kHz) |
| Other than above |       |       |       | Setting prohibited                           |   |   |   |

**Note** When clock is input from the external, timer output (PWM output) cannot be used.

**Caution** When rewriting TCL6 to other data, stop the timer operation beforehand.

- Remarks**
1. f<sub>xx</sub> : Main system clock frequency (f<sub>x</sub> or f<sub>x</sub>/2)
  2. f<sub>x</sub> : Main system clock oscillation frequency
  3. TI6 : 8-bit timer register 6 input pin
  4. MCS : Oscillation mode selection register (OSMS) bit 0
  5. Values in parentheses when operated at f<sub>x</sub> = 5.0 MHz

**(3) 8-bit timer mode control register 5 (TMC5)**

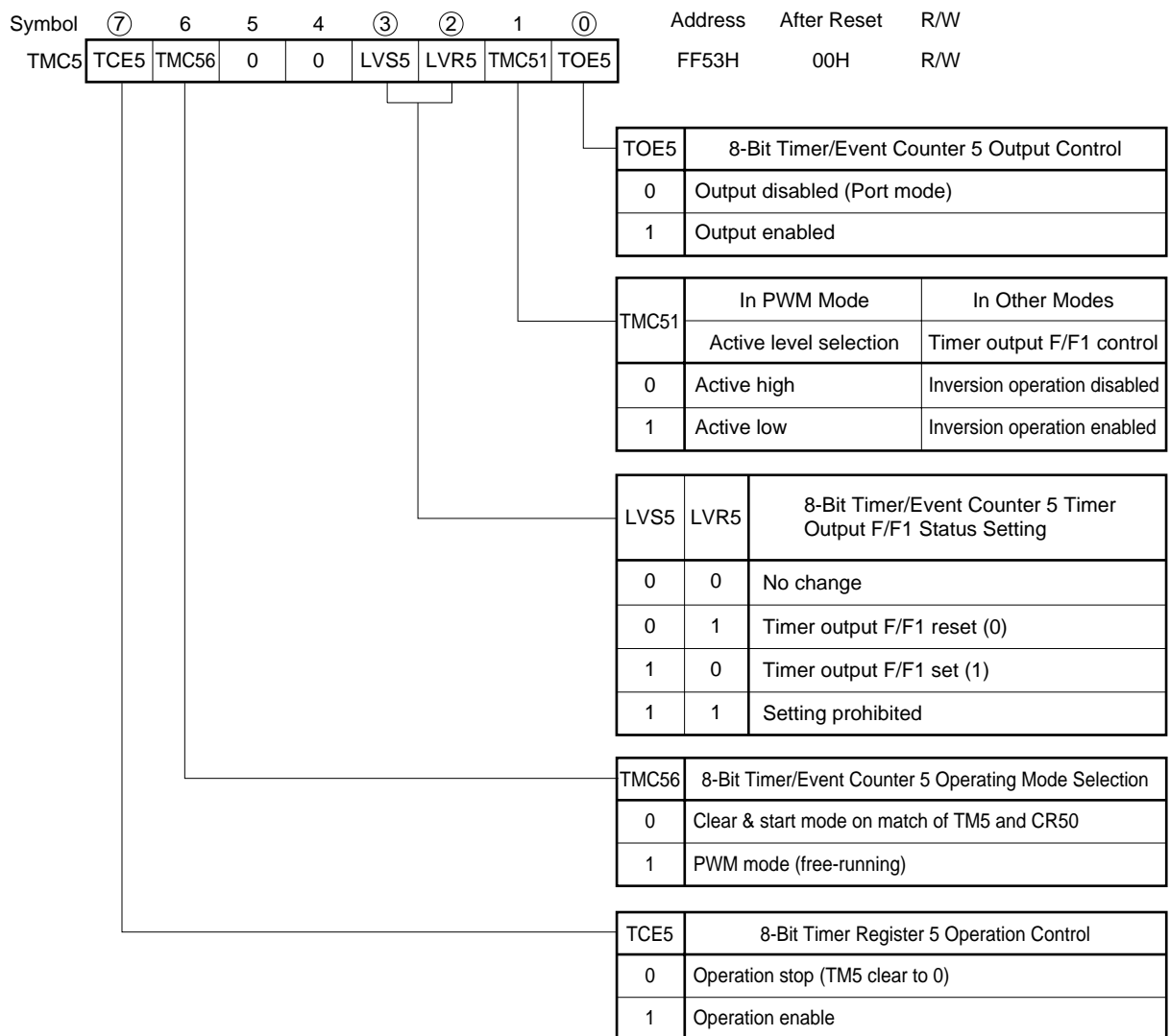
This register enables/stops operation of 8-bit timer register 5, sets the operating mode of 8-bit timer register 5 and controls operation of 8-bit timer/event counter 5 output control circuit.

It sets R-S type flip-flop (timer output F/F 1,2) setting/resetting, the active level in PWM mode, inversion enabling/disabling in modes other than PWM mode and 8-bit timer/event counter 5 timer output enabling/disabling.

TMC5 is set with a 1-bit or 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

RESET input sets TMC5 to 00H.

**Figure 6-5. 8-Bit Timer Mode Control Register 5 Format**



- Cautions**
1. Timer operation must be stopped before setting TMC5.
  2. If LVS5 and LVR5 are read after data are set, they will be 0.
  3. Set 0 to the bits 4 and 5.

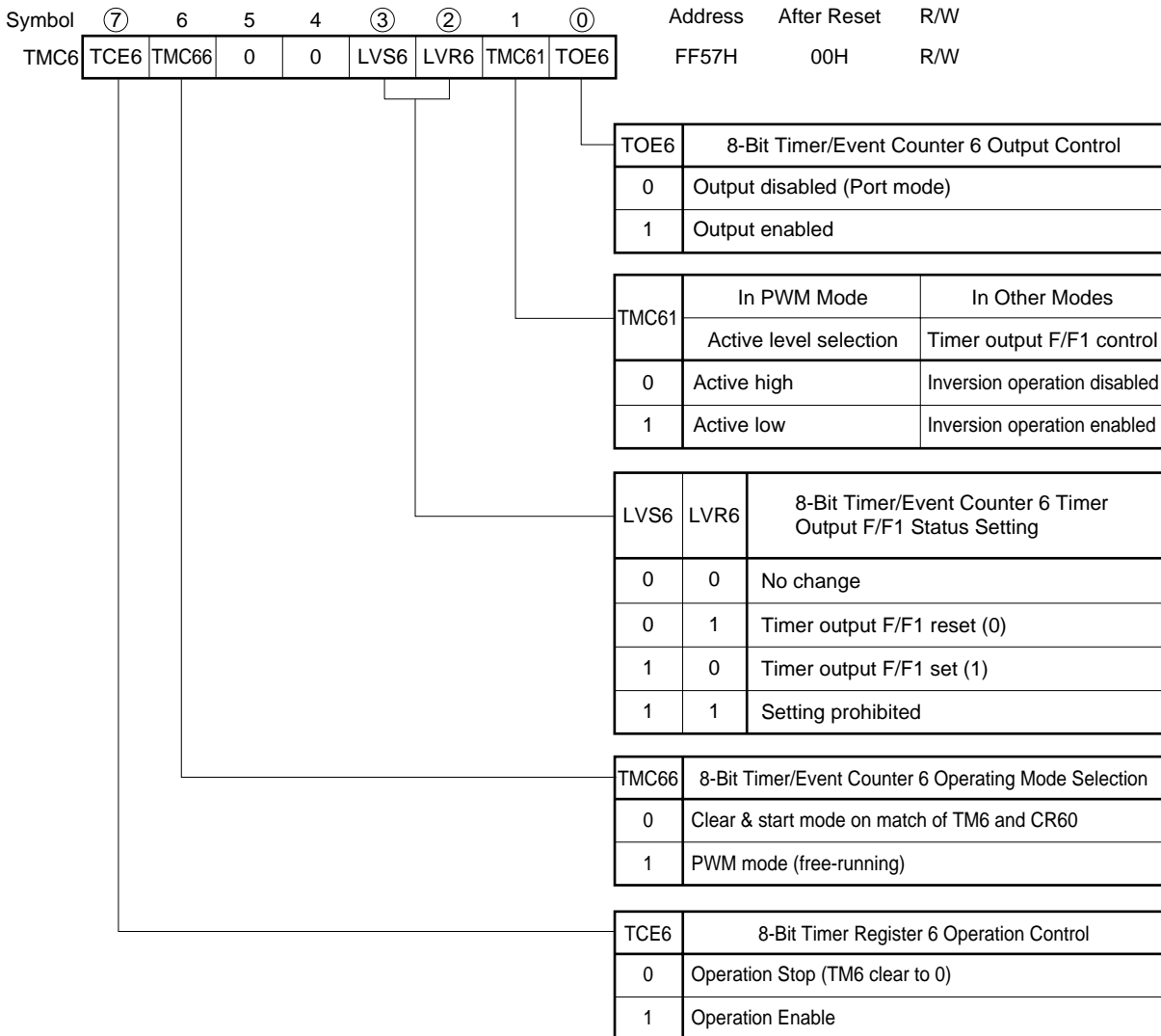
**(4) 8-bit timer mode control register 6 (TMC6)**

This register enables/stops operation of 8-bit timer register 6, sets the operating mode of 8-bit timer register 6 and controls operation of 8-bit timer/event counter 6 output control circuit.

It sets R-S type flip-flop (timer output F/F 1,2) setting/resetting, active level in PWM mode, inversion enabling/disabling in modes other than PWM mode and 8-bit timer/event counter 6 timer output enabling/disabling. TMC6 is set with a 1-bit or 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

RESET input sets TMC6 to 00H.

**Figure 6-6. 8-Bit Timer Mode Control Register 6 Format**



- Cautions**
1. Timer operation must be stopped before setting TMC6.
  2. If LVS6 and LVR6 are read after data are set, they will be 0.
  3. Set 0 to the bits 4 and 5.

**(5) Port mode register 10 (PM10)**

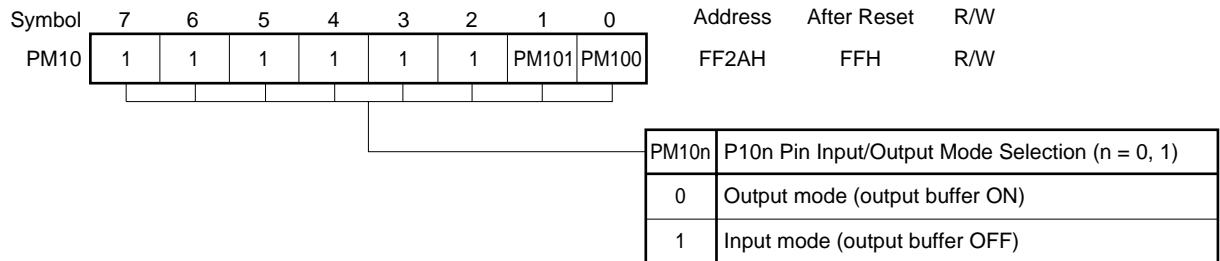
This register sets port 10 input/output in 1-bit units.

When using the P100/TI5/TO5 and P101/TI6/TO6 pins for timer output, set PM100, PM101, and output latches of P100 and P101 to 0.

PM10 is set with a 1-bit or 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

RESET input sets PM10 to FFH.

**Figure 6-7. Port Mode Register 10 Format**



**Caution** Set 1 to the bits 2 to 7.



## 6.4 8-Bit Timer/Event Counters 5 and 6 Operations

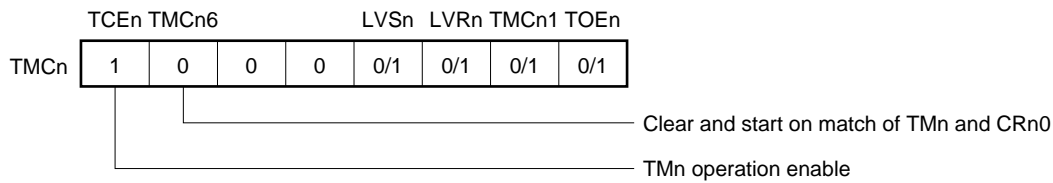
### 6.4.1 Interval timer operations

By setting the 8-bit timer mode control registers 5 and 6 (TMC5 and TMC6) as shown in Figure 6-8, it can be operated as an interval timer. The 8-bit timer/event counters 5 and 6 operate as interval timers which generate interrupt requests repeatedly at intervals of the count value preset to 8-bit compare registers 50 and 60 (CR50 and CR60).

When the count values of the 8-bit timer registers 5 and 6 (TM5 and TM6) match the values set to CR50 and CR60, counting continues with the TM5 and TM6 values cleared to 0 and the interrupt request signals (INTTM5 and INTTM6) are generated.

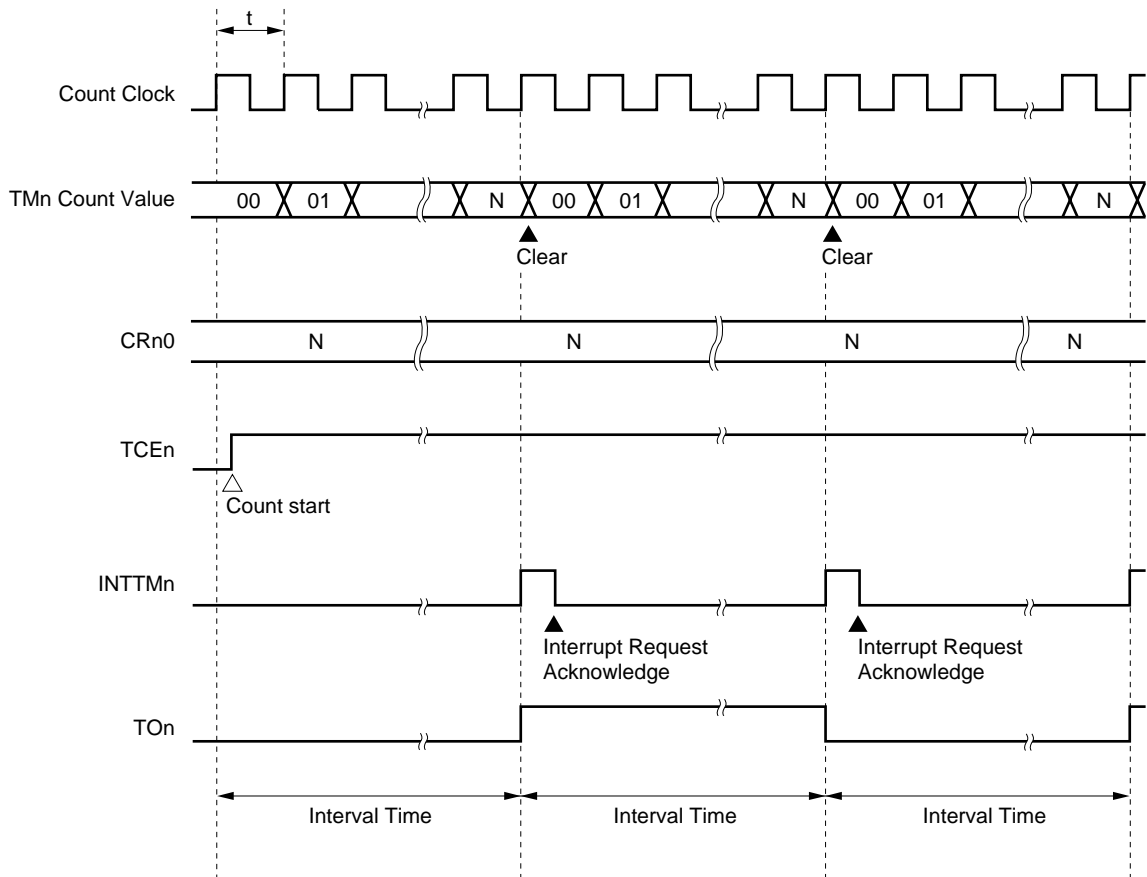
Count clock of TM5 can be selected with the timer clock select register 5 (TCL5). Count clock of TM6 can be selected with the timer clock select register 6 (TCL6).

**Figure 6-8. 8-Bit Timer Mode Control Register Settings for Interval Timer Operation**



- Remarks**
1. 0/1 : Setting 0 or 1 allows another function to be used simultaneously with the interval timer. See 6.3 (3), (4) for details.
  2. n = 5, 6

Figure 6-9. Interval Timer Operation Timings



- Remarks**
1. Interval time =  $(N + 1) \times t$  :  $N = 00H$  to  $FFH$
  2.  $n = 5, 6$

Table 6-5. 8-Bit Timer/Event Counters 5 and 6 Interval Times

| TCLn3            | TCLn2 | TCLn1 | TCLn0 | Minimum Interval Time                    |  | Maximum Interval Time                    |  | Resolution                               |  |
|------------------|-------|-------|-------|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|                  |       |       |       | MCS = 1                                  | MCS = 0                                  | MCS = 1                                  | MCS = 0                                  | MCS = 1                                  | MCS = 0                                  |
| 0                | 0     | 0     | 0     | TIn input cycle                          |  | $2^8 \times$ TIn input cycle             |  | TIn input edge cycle                     |  |
| 0                | 0     | 0     | 1     | TIn input cycle                          |  | $2^8 \times$ TIn input cycle             |  | TIn input edge cycle                     |  |
| 0                | 1     | 0     | 0     | Setting prohibited                       | $1/f_x$<br>(200 ns)                      | Setting prohibited                       | $2^8 \times 1/f_x$<br>(51.2 $\mu$ s)     | Setting prohibited                       | $1/f_x$<br>(200 ns)                      |
| 0                | 1     | 0     | 1     | $1/f_x$<br>(200 ns)                      | $2 \times 1/f_x$<br>(400 ns)             | $2^8 \times 1/f_x$<br>(51.2 $\mu$ s)     | $2^9 \times 1/f_x$<br>(102.4 $\mu$ s)    | $1/f_x$<br>(200 ns)                      | $2 \times 1/f_x$<br>(400 ns)             |
| 0                | 1     | 1     | 0     | $2 \times 1/f_x$<br>(400 ns)             | $2^2 \times 1/f_x$<br>(800 ns)           | $2^9 \times 1/f_x$<br>(102.4 $\mu$ s)    | $2^{10} \times 1/f_x$<br>(204.8 $\mu$ s) | $2 \times 1/f_x$<br>(400 ns)             | $2^2 \times 1/f_x$<br>(800 ns)           |
| 0                | 1     | 1     | 1     | $2^2 \times 1/f_x$<br>(800 ns)           | $2^3 \times 1/f_x$<br>(1.6 $\mu$ s)      | $2^{10} \times 1/f_x$<br>(204.8 $\mu$ s) | $2^{11} \times 1/f_x$<br>(409.6 $\mu$ s) | $2^2 \times 1/f_x$<br>(800 ns)           | $2^3 \times 1/f_x$<br>(1.6 $\mu$ s)      |
| 1                | 0     | 0     | 0     | $2^3 \times 1/f_x$<br>(1.6 $\mu$ s)      | $2^4 \times 1/f_x$<br>(3.2 $\mu$ s)      | $2^{11} \times 1/f_x$<br>(409.6 $\mu$ s) | $2^{12} \times 1/f_x$<br>(819.2 $\mu$ s) | $2^3 \times 1/f_x$<br>(1.6 $\mu$ s)      | $2^4 \times 1/f_x$<br>(3.2 $\mu$ s)      |
| 1                | 0     | 0     | 1     | $2^4 \times 1/f_x$<br>(3.2 $\mu$ s)      | $2^5 \times 1/f_x$<br>(6.4 $\mu$ s)      | $2^{12} \times 1/f_x$<br>(819.2 $\mu$ s) | $2^{13} \times 1/f_x$<br>(1.64 ms)       | $2^4 \times 1/f_x$<br>(3.2 $\mu$ s)      | $2^5 \times 1/f_x$<br>(6.4 $\mu$ s)      |
| 1                | 0     | 1     | 0     | $2^5 \times 1/f_x$<br>(6.4 $\mu$ s)      | $2^6 \times 1/f_x$<br>(12.8 $\mu$ s)     | $2^{13} \times 1/f_x$<br>(1.64 ms)       | $2^{14} \times 1/f_x$<br>(3.28 ms)       | $2^5 \times 1/f_x$<br>(6.4 $\mu$ s)      | $2^6 \times 1/f_x$<br>(12.8 $\mu$ s)     |
| 1                | 0     | 1     | 1     | $2^6 \times 1/f_x$<br>(12.8 $\mu$ s)     | $2^7 \times 1/f_x$<br>(25.6 $\mu$ s)     | $2^{14} \times 1/f_x$<br>(3.28 ms)       | $2^{15} \times 1/f_x$<br>(6.55 ms)       | $2^6 \times 1/f_x$<br>(12.8 $\mu$ s)     | $2^7 \times 1/f_x$<br>(25.6 $\mu$ s)     |
| 1                | 1     | 0     | 0     | $2^7 \times 1/f_x$<br>(25.6 $\mu$ s)     | $2^8 \times 1/f_x$<br>(51.2 $\mu$ s)     | $2^{15} \times 1/f_x$<br>(6.55 ms)       | $2^{16} \times 1/f_x$<br>(13.1 ms)       | $2^7 \times 1/f_x$<br>(25.6 $\mu$ s)     | $2^8 \times 1/f_x$<br>(51.2 $\mu$ s)     |
| 1                | 1     | 0     | 1     | $2^8 \times 1/f_x$<br>(51.2 $\mu$ s)     | $2^9 \times 1/f_x$<br>(102.4 $\mu$ s)    | $2^{16} \times 1/f_x$<br>(13.1 ms)       | $2^{17} \times 1/f_x$<br>(26.2 ms)       | $2^8 \times 1/f_x$<br>(51.2 $\mu$ s)     | $2^9 \times 1/f_x$<br>(102.4 $\mu$ s)    |
| 1                | 1     | 1     | 0     | $2^9 \times 1/f_x$<br>(102.4 $\mu$ s)    | $2^{10} \times 1/f_x$<br>(204.8 $\mu$ s) | $2^{17} \times 1/f_x$<br>(26.2 ms)       | $2^{18} \times 1/f_x$<br>(52.4 ms)       | $2^9 \times 1/f_x$<br>(102.4 $\mu$ s)    | $2^{10} \times 1/f_x$<br>(204.8 $\mu$ s) |
| 1                | 1     | 1     | 1     | $2^{11} \times 1/f_x$<br>(409.6 $\mu$ s) | $2^{12} \times 1/f_x$<br>(819.2 $\mu$ s) | $2^{19} \times 1/f_x$<br>(104.9 ms)      | $2^{20} \times 1/f_x$<br>(209.7 ms)      | $2^{11} \times 1/f_x$<br>(409.6 $\mu$ s) | $2^{12} \times 1/f_x$<br>(819.2 $\mu$ s) |
| Other than above |       |       |       | Setting prohibited                       |  |  |  |  |  |

- Remarks**
1.  $f_x$  : Main system clock oscillation frequency
  2. MCS : Oscillation mode selection register (OSMS) bit 0
  3. Values in parentheses when operated at  $f_x = 5.0$  MHz.
  4.  $n = 5, 6$

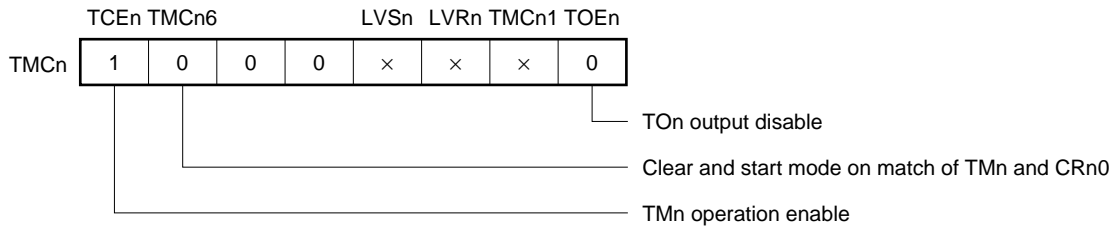
**6.4.2 External event counter operation**

The external event counter counts the number of external clock pulses to be input to the TI5/PI00/TO5 and TI6/P101/TO6 pins with 8-bit timer registers 5 and 6 (TM5 and TM6).

TM5 and TM6 are incremented each time the valid edge specified with the timer clock select register 5 and 6 (TCL5 and TCL6) is input. Either the rising or falling edge can be selected.

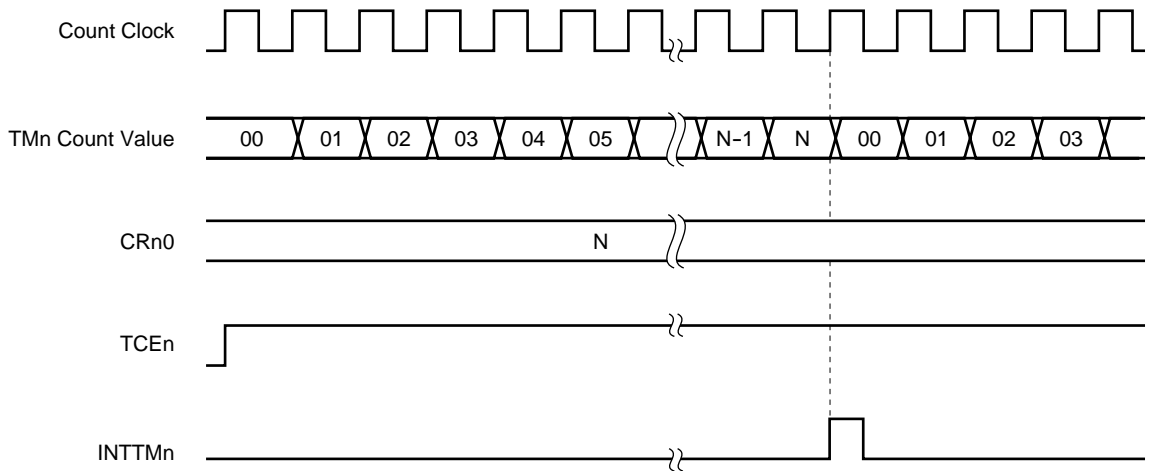
When the TM5 and TM6 counted values match the values of 8-bit compare registers 50 and 60 (CR50 and CR60), TM5 and TM6 are cleared to 0 and the interrupt request signals (INTTM5 and INTTM6) are generated.

**Figure 6-10. 8-Bit Timer Mode Control Register Setting for External Event Counter Operation**



- Remarks**
1. n = 5, 6
  2. × : don't care

**Figure 6-11. External Event Counter Operation Timings (with Rising Edge Specification)**



- Remarks**
1. N = 00H to FFH
  2. n = 5, 6

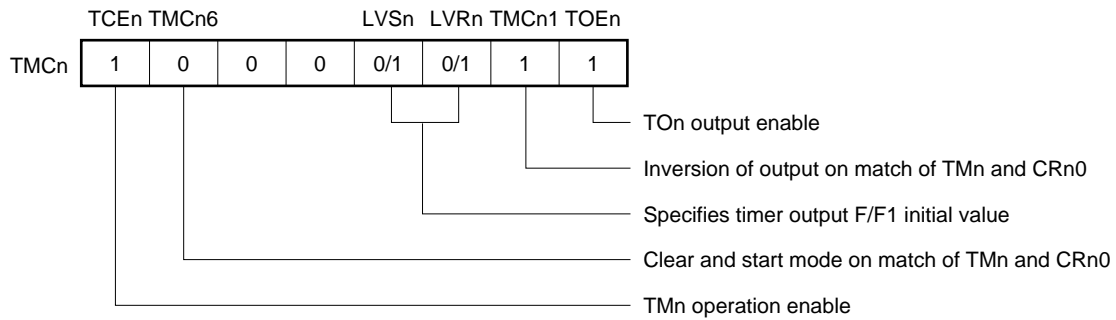
**6.4.3 Square-wave output**

This makes the value set in advance in the 8-bit conveyor register 50, 60 (CR50, CR60) to be the interval. It operates as a square wave output at the desired frequency.

The TO5/P100/TI5 or TO6/P101/TI6 pin output status is reversed at intervals of the count value preset to CR50 or CR60 by setting bit 1 (TMC51) and bit 0 (TOE5) of 8-bit timer output control register 5 (TMC5), or bit 1 (TMC61) and bit 0 (TOE6) of 8-bit timer mode control register 6 (TMC6) to 1.

This enables a square wave of any selected frequency to be output.

**Figure 6-12. 8-Bit Timer Mode Control Register Settings for Square-Wave Output Operation**



**Caution** When TI5/P100/TO5 or TI6/P101/TO6 pin is used as the timer output, set 0 to port mode register (PM100 or PM101) and output latch (P100 or P101).

**Remark** n = 5, 6

Table 6-6. 8-Bit Timer/Event Counters 5 and 6 Square-Wave Output Ranges

| Minimum Pulse Width                  |                                      | Maximum Pulse Width                  |                                      | Resolution                           |                                      |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| MCS = 1                              | MCS = 0                              | MCS = 1                              | MCS = 0                              | MCS = 1                              | MCS = 0                              |
| —                                    | 1/fx<br>(200 ns)                     | —                                    | 2 <sup>8</sup> × 1/fx<br>(51.2 μs)   | —                                    | 1/fx<br>(200 ns)                     |
| 1/fx<br>(200 ns)                     | 2 × 1/fx<br>(400 ns)                 | 2 <sup>8</sup> × 1/fx<br>(51.2 μs)   | 2 <sup>9</sup> × 1/fx<br>(102.4 μs)  | 1/fx<br>(200 ns)                     | 2 × 1/fx<br>(400 ns)                 |
| 2 × 1/fx<br>(400 ns)                 | 2 <sup>2</sup> × 1/fx<br>(800 ns)    | 2 <sup>9</sup> × 1/fx<br>(102.4 μs)  | 2 <sup>10</sup> × 1/fx<br>(204.8 μs) | 2 × 1/fx<br>(400 ns)                 | 2 <sup>2</sup> × 1/fx<br>(800 ns)    |
| 2 <sup>2</sup> × 1/fx<br>(800 ns)    | 2 <sup>3</sup> × 1/fx<br>(1.6 μs)    | 2 <sup>10</sup> × 1/fx<br>(204.8 μs) | 2 <sup>11</sup> × 1/fx<br>(409.6 μs) | 2 <sup>2</sup> × 1/fx<br>(800 ns)    | 2 <sup>3</sup> × 1/fx<br>(1.6 μs)    |
| 2 <sup>3</sup> × 1/fx<br>(1.6 μs)    | 2 <sup>4</sup> × 1/fx<br>(3.2 μs)    | 2 <sup>11</sup> × 1/fx<br>(409.6 μs) | 2 <sup>12</sup> × 1/fx<br>(819.2 μs) | 2 <sup>3</sup> × 1/fx<br>(1.6 μs)    | 2 <sup>4</sup> × 1/fx<br>(3.2 μs)    |
| 2 <sup>4</sup> × 1/fx<br>(3.2 μs)    | 2 <sup>5</sup> × 1/fx<br>(6.4 μs)    | 2 <sup>12</sup> × 1/fx<br>(819.2 μs) | 2 <sup>13</sup> × 1/fx<br>(1.64 ms)  | 2 <sup>4</sup> × 1/fx<br>(3.2 μs)    | 2 <sup>5</sup> × 1/fx<br>(6.4 μs)    |
| 2 <sup>5</sup> × 1/fx<br>(6.4 μs)    | 2 <sup>6</sup> × 1/fx<br>(12.8 μs)   | 2 <sup>13</sup> × 1/fx<br>(1.64 ms)  | 2 <sup>14</sup> × 1/fx<br>(3.28 ms)  | 2 <sup>5</sup> × 1/fx<br>(6.4 μs)    | 2 <sup>6</sup> × 1/fx<br>(12.8 μs)   |
| 2 <sup>6</sup> × 1/fx<br>(12.8 μs)   | 2 <sup>7</sup> × 1/fx<br>(25.6 μs)   | 2 <sup>14</sup> × 1/fx<br>(3.28 ms)  | 2 <sup>15</sup> × 1/fx<br>(6.55 ms)  | 2 <sup>6</sup> × 1/fx<br>(12.8 μs)   | 2 <sup>7</sup> × 1/fx<br>(25.6 μs)   |
| 2 <sup>7</sup> × 1/fx<br>(25.6 μs)   | 2 <sup>8</sup> × 1/fx<br>(51.2 μs)   | 2 <sup>15</sup> × 1/fx<br>(6.55 ms)  | 2 <sup>16</sup> × 1/fx<br>(13.1 ms)  | 2 <sup>7</sup> × 1/fx<br>(25.6 μs)   | 2 <sup>8</sup> × 1/fx<br>(51.2 μs)   |
| 2 <sup>8</sup> × 1/fx<br>(51.2 μs)   | 2 <sup>9</sup> × 1/fx<br>(102.4 μs)  | 2 <sup>16</sup> × 1/fx<br>(13.1 ms)  | 2 <sup>17</sup> × 1/fx<br>(26.2 ms)  | 2 <sup>8</sup> × 1/fx<br>(51.2 μs)   | 2 <sup>9</sup> × 1/fx<br>(102.4 μs)  |
| 2 <sup>9</sup> × 1/fx<br>(102.4 μs)  | 2 <sup>10</sup> × 1/fx<br>(204.8 μs) | 2 <sup>17</sup> × 1/fx<br>(26.2 ms)  | 2 <sup>18</sup> × 1/fx<br>(52.4 ms)  | 2 <sup>9</sup> × 1/fx<br>(102.4 μs)  | 2 <sup>10</sup> × 1/fx<br>(204.8 μs) |
| 2 <sup>11</sup> × 1/fx<br>(409.6 μs) | 2 <sup>12</sup> × 1/fx<br>(819.2 μs) | 2 <sup>19</sup> × 1/fx<br>(104.9 ms) | 2 <sup>20</sup> × 1/fx<br>(209.7 ms) | 2 <sup>11</sup> × 1/fx<br>(409.6 μs) | 2 <sup>12</sup> × 1/fx<br>(819.2 μs) |

- Remarks**
1.  $f_x$  : Main system clock oscillation frequency
  2. MCS : Oscillation mode selection register (OSMS) bit 0
  3. Values in parentheses when operated at  $f_x = 5.0$  MHz.

**6.4.4 PWM output operations**

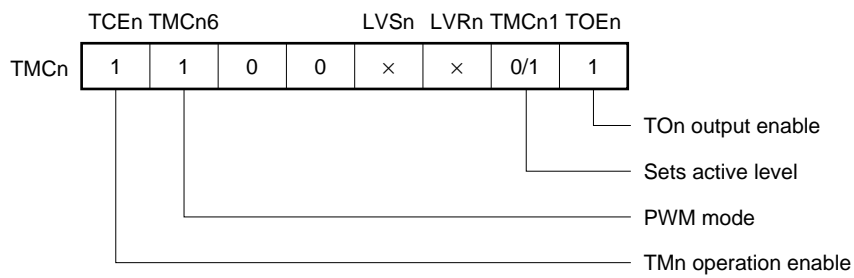
Setting the 8-bit timer mode control registers 5 and 6 (TMC5 and TMC6) as shown in Figure 6-13 allows operation as PWM output. Pulses with the duty ratio determined by the values preset in the 8-bit compare registers 50 and 60 (CR50 and CR60) output from the TO5/P100/TI5 or TO6/P101/TI6 pin.

Select the active level of PWM pulse with bit 1 (TMC51) of 8-bit timer mode control register 5 (TMC5) or bit 1 (TMC61) of 8-bit timer mode control register 6 (TMC6).

This PWM pulse has an 8-bit resolution. The pulse can be converted into an analog voltage by integrating it with an external low-pass filter (LPF). Count clock of 8-bit timer register 5 (TM5) can be selected with timer clock select register 5 (TCL5) and count clock of 8-bit timer register 6 (TM6) can be selected with timer clock select register 6 (TCL6).

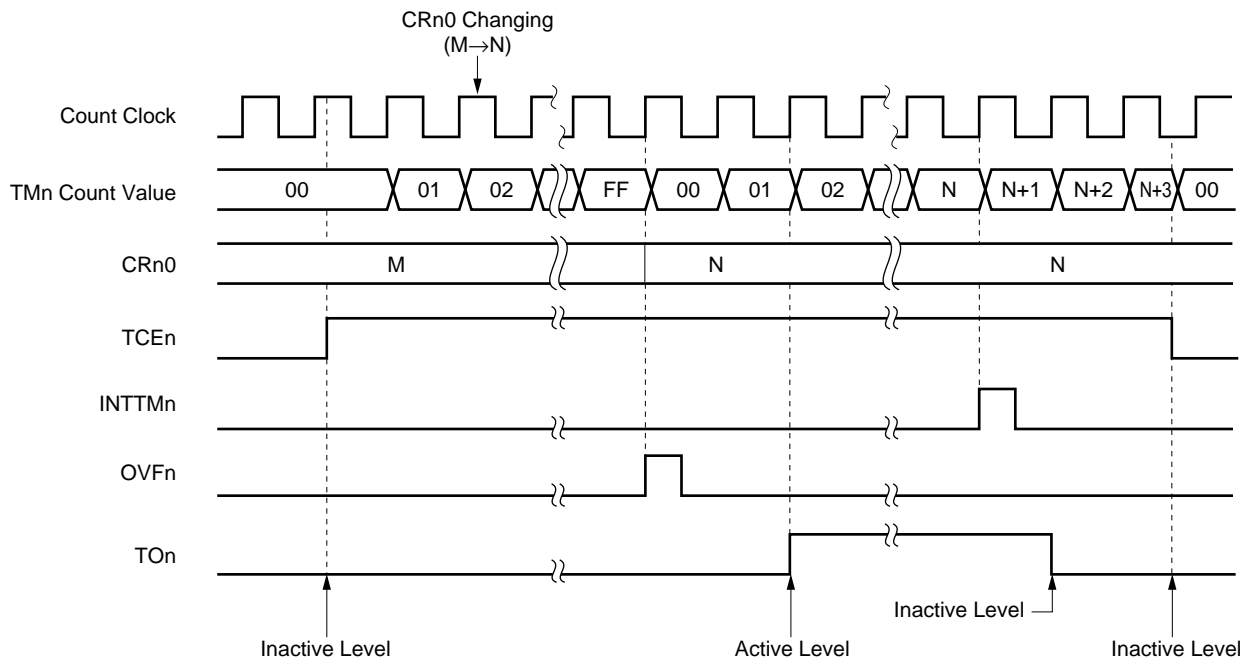
PWM output enable/disable can be selected with bit 0 (TOE5) of TMC5 or bit 0 (TOE6) of TMC6.

**Figure 6-13. 8-Bit Timer Mode Control Register Settings for PWM Output Operation**



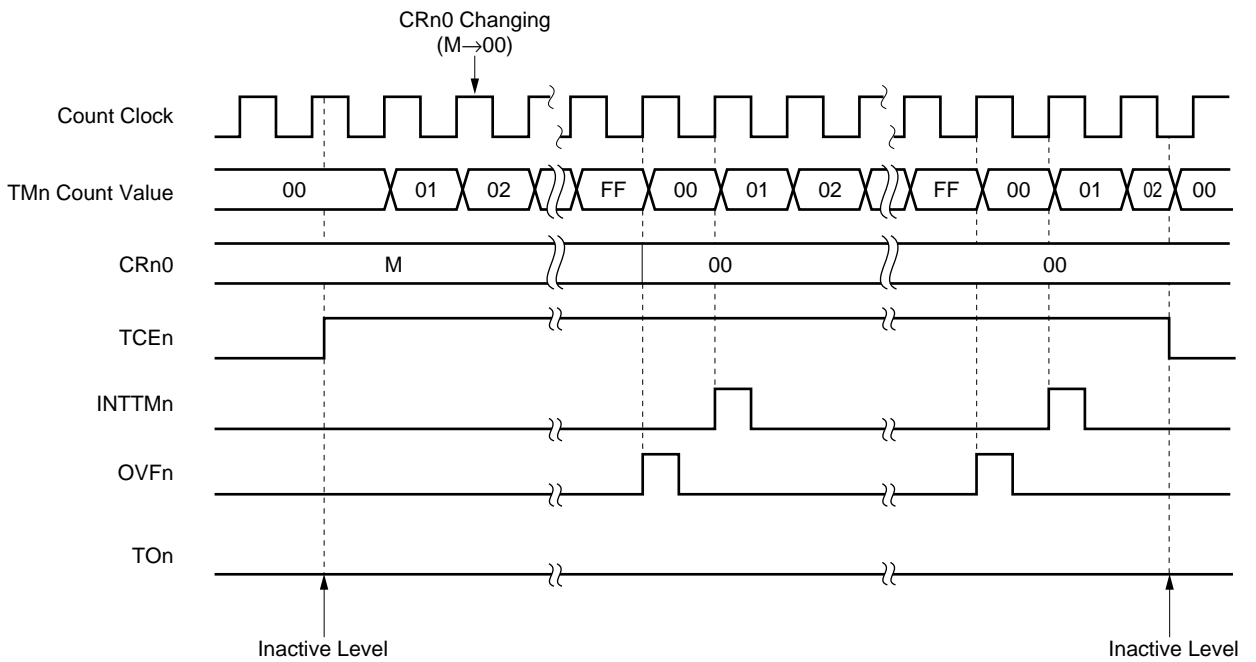
- Remarks**
1. n = 5, 6
  2. × : don't care

Figure 6-14. PWM Output Operation Timing (Active high setting)



Remark n = 5, 6

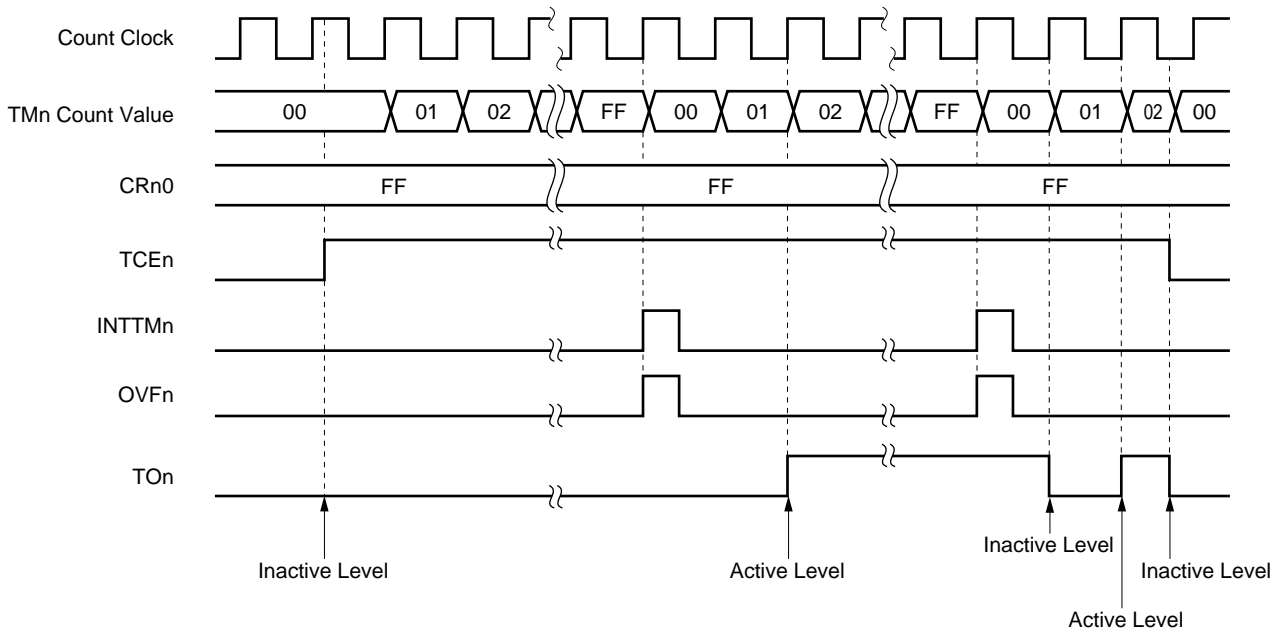
Figure 6-15. PWM Output Operation Timings (CRn0 = 00H, active high setting)



Remark n = 5, 6

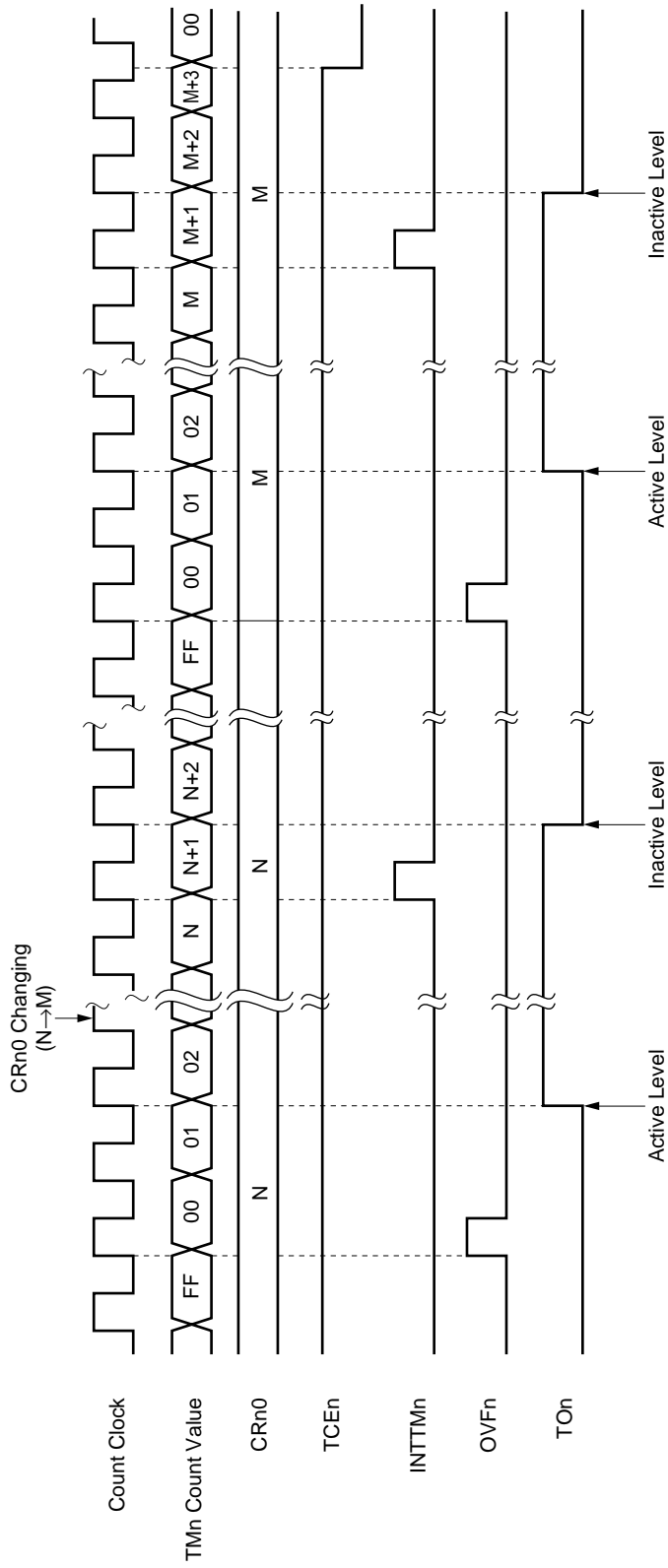


Figure 6-16. PWM Output Operation Timings (CRn0 = FFH, active high setting)



**Remark** n = 5, 6

Figure 6-17. PWM Output Operation Timings (CRn0 changing, active high setting)



**Caution** If CRn0 is changed during TMn operation, the value changed is not reflected until TMn overflows.

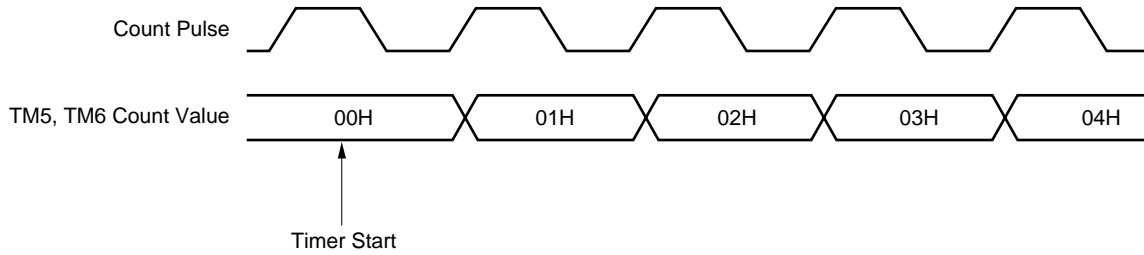
**Remark** n = 5, 6

6.5 Cautions on 8-Bit Timer/Event Counters 5 and 6

(1) Timer start errors

An error with a maximum of one clock may occur concerning the time required for a match signal to be generated after timer start. This is because 8-bit timer registers 5 and 6 (TM5 and TM6) are started asynchronously with the count pulse.

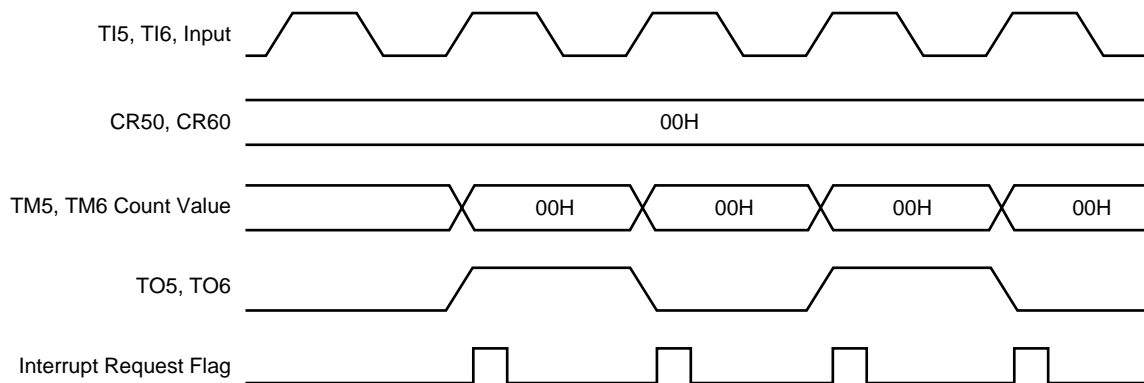
Figure 6-18. 8-Bit Timer Registers 5 and 6 Start Timing



(2) 8-bit compare register 50 and 60 setting

The 8-bit compare registers 50 and 60 (CR50 and CR60) can be set to 00H. Thus, when these 8-bit compare registers are used as event counters, one-pulse count operation can be carried out.

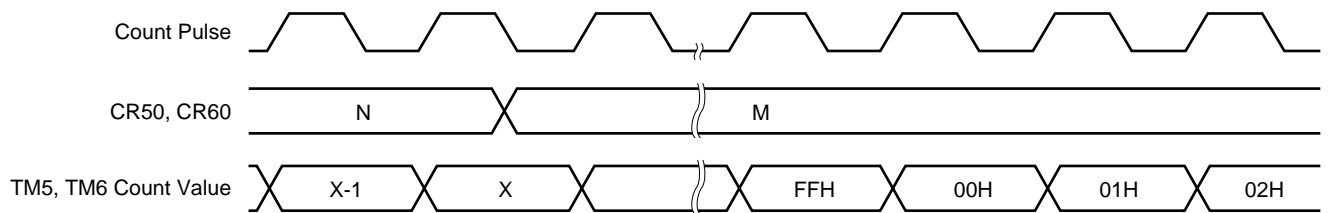
Figure 6-19. External Event Counter Operation Timing



**(3) Operation after compare register change during timer count operation**

If the values after the 8-bit compare registers 50 and 60 (CR50 and CR60) are changed are smaller than those of 8-bit timer registers 5 and 6 (TM5 and TM6), TM5 and TM6 continue counting, overflow and then restart counting from 0. Thus, if the value (M) after CR50 and CR60 change is smaller than value (N) before the change, it is necessary to restart the timer after changing CR50 and CR60.

**Figure 6-20. Timing after Compare Register Change during Timer Count Operation**



**Remark**  $N > X > M$

[MEMO]

## CHAPTER 7 WATCHDOG TIMER

### 7.1 Watchdog Timer Functions

The watchdog timer has the following functions.

- Watchdog timer
- Interval timer

**Caution** Select the watchdog timer mode or the interval timer mode with the watchdog timer mode register (WDTM) (The watchdog timer and interval timer cannot be used at the same time).

#### (1) Watchdog timer mode

An inadvertent program loop is detected. Upon detection of the inadvertent program loop, a non-maskable interrupt request or RESET can be generated.

**Table 7-1. Watchdog Timer Overrun Detection Times**

| Runaway Detection Time   | MCS = 1                             | MCS = 0                             |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| $2^{11} \times 1/f_{XX}$ | $2^{11} \times 1/f_x$ (410 $\mu$ s) | $2^{12} \times 1/f_x$ (819 $\mu$ s) |
| $2^{12} \times 1/f_{XX}$ | $2^{12} \times 1/f_x$ (819 $\mu$ s) | $2^{13} \times 1/f_x$ (1.64 ms)     |
| $2^{13} \times 1/f_{XX}$ | $2^{13} \times 1/f_x$ (1.64 ms)     | $2^{14} \times 1/f_x$ (3.28 ms)     |
| $2^{14} \times 1/f_{XX}$ | $2^{14} \times 1/f_x$ (3.28 ms)     | $2^{15} \times 1/f_x$ (6.55 ms)     |
| $2^{15} \times 1/f_{XX}$ | $2^{15} \times 1/f_x$ (6.55 ms)     | $2^{16} \times 1/f_x$ (13.1 ms)     |
| $2^{16} \times 1/f_{XX}$ | $2^{16} \times 1/f_x$ (13.1 ms)     | $2^{17} \times 1/f_x$ (26.2 ms)     |
| $2^{17} \times 1/f_{XX}$ | $2^{17} \times 1/f_x$ (26.2 ms)     | $2^{18} \times 1/f_x$ (52.4 ms)     |
| $2^{19} \times 1/f_{XX}$ | $2^{19} \times 1/f_x$ (104.9 ms)    | $2^{20} \times 1/f_x$ (209.7 ms)    |

- Remarks**
1.  $f_{XX}$  : Main system clock frequency ( $f_x$  or  $f_x/2$ )
  2.  $f_x$  : Main system clock oscillation frequency
  3. MCS : Oscillation mode selection register (OSMS) bit 0
  4. Values in parentheses when operated at  $f_x = 5.0$  MHz.

**(2) Interval timer mode**

Interrupt requests are generated at the preset time intervals.

**Table 7-2. Interval Times**

| Interval Time            | MCS = 1                             | CS = 0                              |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| $2^{11} \times 1/f_{XX}$ | $2^{11} \times 1/f_x$ (410 $\mu$ s) | $2^{12} \times 1/f_x$ (819 $\mu$ s) |
| $2^{12} \times 1/f_{XX}$ | $2^{12} \times 1/f_x$ (819 $\mu$ s) | $2^{13} \times 1/f_x$ (1.64 ms)     |
| $2^{13} \times 1/f_{XX}$ | $2^{13} \times 1/f_x$ (1.64 ms)     | $2^{14} \times 1/f_x$ (3.28 ms)     |
| $2^{14} \times 1/f_{XX}$ | $2^{14} \times 1/f_x$ (3.28 ms)     | $2^{15} \times 1/f_x$ (6.55 ms)     |
| $2^{15} \times 1/f_{XX}$ | $2^{15} \times 1/f_x$ (6.55 ms)     | $2^{16} \times 1/f_x$ (13.1 ms)     |
| $2^{16} \times 1/f_{XX}$ | $2^{16} \times 1/f_x$ (13.1 ms)     | $2^{17} \times 1/f_x$ (26.2 ms)     |
| $2^{17} \times 1/f_{XX}$ | $2^{17} \times 1/f_x$ (26.2 ms)     | $2^{18} \times 1/f_x$ (52.4 ms)     |
| $2^{19} \times 1/f_{XX}$ | $2^{19} \times 1/f_x$ (104.9 ms)    | $2^{20} \times 1/f_x$ (209.7 ms)    |

- Remarks**
1.  $f_{XX}$  : Main system clock frequency ( $f_x$  or  $f_x/2$ )
  2.  $f_x$  : Main system clock oscillation frequency
  3. MCS : Oscillation mode selection register (OSMS) bit 0
  4. Values in parentheses when operated at  $f_x = 5.0$  MHz.

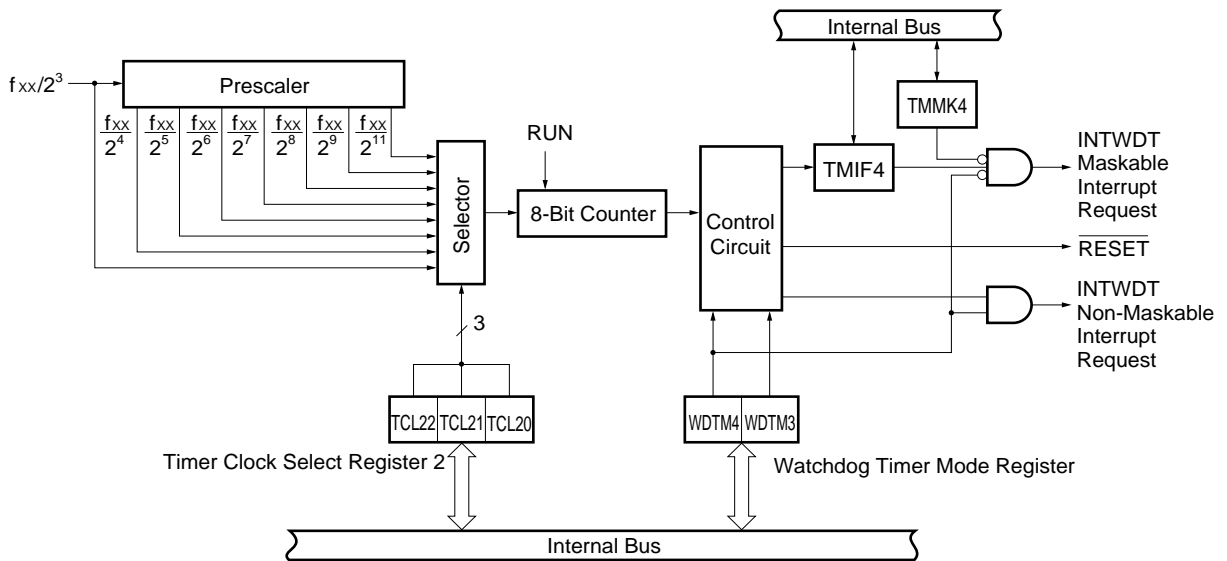
## 7.2 Watchdog Timer Configuration

The watchdog timer consists of the following hardware.

**Table 7-3. Watchdog Timer Configuration**

| Item             | Configuration   |
|------------------|---|
| Control register | Timer clock select register 2 (TCL2)<br>Watchdog timer mode register (WDTM) |

**Figure 7-1. Watchdog Timer Block Diagram**





### 7.3 Watchdog Timer Control Registers

The following two types of registers are used to control the watchdog timer.

- Timer clock select register 2 (TCL2)
- Watchdog timer mode register (WDTM)

#### (1) Timer clock select register 2 (TCL2)

This register sets the watchdog timer count clock.

TCL2 is set with 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

RESET input sets TCL2 to 00H.

**Remark** Besides setting the watchdog timer count clock, TCL2 sets the buzzer output frequency.

Figure 7-2. Timer Clock Select Register 2 Format

|        |       |       |       |   |   |       |       |       |         |             |     |
|--------|-------|-------|-------|---|---|-------|-------|-------|---------|-------------|-----|
| Symbol | 7     | 6     | 5     | 4 | 3 | 2     | 1     | 0     | Address | After Reset | R/W |
| TCL2   | TCL27 | TCL26 | TCL25 | 0 | 0 | TCL22 | TCL21 | TCL20 | FF42H   | 00H         | R/W |

|       |       |       | Watchdog Timer Count Clock Selection |                        |                        |
|-------|-------|-------|--------------------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|
| TCL22 | TCL21 | TCL20 | MCS=1                                |                        | MCS=0                  |
| 0     | 0     | 0     | $f_{xx}/2^3$                         | $f_x/2^3$ (625 kHz)    | $f_x/2^4$ (313 kHz)    |
| 0     | 0     | 1     | $f_{xx}/2^4$                         | $f_x/2^4$ (313 kHz)    | $f_x/2^5$ (156 kHz)    |
| 0     | 1     | 0     | $f_{xx}/2^5$                         | $f_x/2^5$ (156 kHz)    | $f_x/2^6$ (78.1 kHz)   |
| 0     | 1     | 1     | $f_{xx}/2^6$                         | $f_x/2^6$ (78.1 kHz)   | $f_x/2^7$ (39.1 kHz)   |
| 1     | 0     | 0     | $f_{xx}/2^7$                         | $f_x/2^7$ (39.1 kHz)   | $f_x/2^8$ (19.5 kHz)   |
| 1     | 0     | 1     | $f_{xx}/2^8$                         | $f_x/2^8$ (19.5 kHz)   | $f_x/2^9$ (9.8 kHz)    |
| 1     | 1     | 0     | $f_{xx}/2^9$                         | $f_x/2^9$ (9.8 kHz)    | $f_x/2^{10}$ (4.9 kHz) |
| 1     | 1     | 1     | $f_{xx}/2^{11}$                      | $f_x/2^{11}$ (2.4 kHz) | $f_x/2^{12}$ (1.2 kHz) |

|       |       |       | Buzzer Output Frequency Selection |                        |                        |
|-------|-------|-------|-----------------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|
| TCL27 | TCL26 | TCL25 | MCS=1                             |                        | MCS=0                  |
| 0     | ×     | ×     | Buzzer output disable             |                        |                        |
| 1     | 0     | 0     | $f_{xx}/2^9$                      | $f_x/2^9$ (9.8 kHz)    | $f_x/2^{10}$ (4.9 kHz) |
| 1     | 0     | 1     | $f_{xx}/2^{10}$                   | $f_x/2^{10}$ (4.9 kHz) | $f_x/2^{11}$ (2.4 kHz) |
| 1     | 1     | 0     | $f_{xx}/2^{11}$                   | $f_x/2^{11}$ (2.4 kHz) | $f_x/2^{12}$ (1.2 kHz) |
| 1     | 1     | 1     | Setting prohibited                |                        |                        |

**Caution** 1. When rewriting TCL2 to other data, stop the timer operation beforehand.  
 2. Set 0 to the bits 3 and 4.

**Remarks** 1.  $f_{xx}$  : Main system clock frequency ( $f_x$  or  $f_x/2$ )  
 2.  $f_x$  : Main system clock oscillation frequency  
 3. × : Don't care  
 4. MCS : Oscillation mode selection register (OSMS) bit 0  
 5. Values in parentheses when operated at  $f_x = 5.0$  MHz.

**(2) Watchdog timer mode register (WDTM)**

This register sets the watchdog timer operating mode and enables/disables counting. WDTM is set with a 1-bit or 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.  $\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input sets WDTM to 00H.

★ **Figure 7-3. Watchdog Timer Mode Register Format**



- Notes**
1. Once set to 1, WDTM3 and WDTM4 cannot be cleared to 0 by software.
  2. The watchdog timer starts operating as an interval timer as soon as RUN has been set to 1.
  3. Once set to 1, RUN cannot be cleared to 0 by software.  
Thus, once counting starts, it can only be stopped by  $\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input.

- Cautions**
1. When 1 is set in RUN so that the watchdog timer is cleared, the actual overflow time is up to 0.5 % shorter than the time set by timer clock select register 2.
  2. To use watchdog timer modes 1 and 2, make sure that the interrupt request flag (TMIF4) is 0, and then set WDTM4 to 1.  
If WDTM4 is set to 1 when TMIF4 is 1, the non-maskable interrupt request occurs, regardless of the contents of WDTM3.

**Remark** ×: Don't care

## 7.4 Watchdog Timer Operations

### 7.4.1 Watchdog timer operation

When bit 4 (WDTM4) of the watchdog timer mode register (WDTM) is set to 1, the watchdog timer is operated to detect any inadvertent program loop.

The watchdog timer count clock (inadvertent program loop detection time interval) can be selected with bits 0 to 2 (TCL20 to TCL22) of the timer clock select register 2 (TCL2).

Watchdog timer starts by setting bit 7 (RUN) of WDTM to 1. After the watchdog timer is started, set RUN to 1 within the set overrun detection time interval. The watchdog timer can be cleared and counting is started by setting RUN to 1. If RUN is not set to 1 and the inadvertent program loop detection time is past, system reset or a non-maskable interrupt request is generated according to the WDTM bit 3 (WDTM3) value.

By setting RUN to 1, the watchdog timer can be cleared.

The watchdog timer continues operating in the HALT mode but it stops in the STOP mode. Thus, set RUN to 1 before the STOP mode is set, clear the watchdog timer and then execute the STOP instruction.

**Caution** The actual overrun detection time may be shorter than the set time by a maximum of 0.5 %.

**Table 7-4. Watchdog Timer Overrun Detection Time**

| TCL22 | TCL21 | TCL20 | Runaway Detection Time   | MCS = 1                             | MCS = 0                             |
|-------|-------|-------|--------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 0     | 0     | 0     | $2^{11} \times 1/f_{xx}$ | $2^{11} \times 1/f_x$ (410 $\mu$ s) | $2^{12} \times 1/f_x$ (819 $\mu$ s) |
| 0     | 0     | 1     | $2^{12} \times 1/f_{xx}$ | $2^{12} \times 1/f_x$ (819 $\mu$ s) | $2^{13} \times 1/f_x$ (1.64 ms)     |
| 0     | 1     | 0     | $2^{13} \times 1/f_{xx}$ | $2^{13} \times 1/f_x$ (1.64 ms)     | $2^{14} \times 1/f_x$ (3.28 ms)     |
| 0     | 1     | 1     | $2^{14} \times 1/f_{xx}$ | $2^{14} \times 1/f_x$ (3.28 ms)     | $2^{15} \times 1/f_x$ (6.55 ms)     |
| 1     | 0     | 0     | $2^{15} \times 1/f_{xx}$ | $2^{15} \times 1/f_x$ (6.55 ms)     | $2^{16} \times 1/f_x$ (13.1 ms)     |
| 1     | 0     | 1     | $2^{16} \times 1/f_{xx}$ | $2^{16} \times 1/f_x$ (13.1 ms)     | $2^{17} \times 1/f_x$ (26.2 ms)     |
| 1     | 1     | 0     | $2^{17} \times 1/f_{xx}$ | $2^{17} \times 1/f_x$ (26.2 ms)     | $2^{18} \times 1/f_x$ (52.4 ms)     |
| 1     | 1     | 1     | $2^{19} \times 1/f_{xx}$ | $2^{19} \times 1/f_x$ (104.9 ms)    | $2^{20} \times 1/f_x$ (209.7 ms)    |

- Remarks**
1.  $f_{xx}$  : Main system clock frequency ( $f_x$  or  $f_x/2$ )
  2.  $f_x$  : Main system clock oscillation frequency
  3. MCS : Oscillation mode selection register (OSMS) bit 0
  4. Values in parentheses when operated at  $f_x = 5.0$  MHz.

**7.4.2 Interval timer operation**

★ The watchdog timer operates as an interval timer which generates interrupt requests repeatedly at an interval of the preset count value when bit 4 (WDTM4) of the watchdog timer mode register (WDTM) is set to 0.

★ A count clock (interval time) can be selected by the bits 0 to 2 (TCL20 to TCL22) of the timer clock select register 2 (TCL2). By setting the bit 7 (RUN) of WDTM to 1, the watchdog timer starts operating as an interval timer.

When the watchdog timer operated as interval timer, the interrupt mask flag (TMMK4) and priority specify flag (TMPR4) are validated and the maskable interrupt request (INTWDT) can be generated. Among maskable interrupt requests, the INTWDT default has the highest priority.

The interval timer continues operating in the HALT mode but it stops in STOP mode. Thus, set bit 7 (RUN) of WDTM to 1 before the STOP mode is set, clear the interval timer and then execute the STOP instruction.

- Cautions**
1. **Once bit 4 (WDTM4) of WDTM is set to 1 (with the watchdog timer mode selected), the interval timer mode is not set unless RESET input is applied.**
  2. **The interval time just after setting with WDTM may be shorter than the set time by a maximum of 0.5 %.**

**Table 7-5. Interval Timer Interval Time**

| TCL22 | TCL21 | TCL20 | Interval Time            | MCS = 1                             | MCS = 0                             |
|-------|-------|-------|--------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 0     | 0     | 0     | $2^{11} \times 1/f_{xx}$ | $2^{11} \times 1/f_x$ (410 $\mu$ s) | $2^{12} \times 1/f_x$ (819 $\mu$ s) |
| 0     | 0     | 1     | $2^{12} \times 1/f_{xx}$ | $2^{12} \times 1/f_x$ (819 $\mu$ s) | $2^{13} \times 1/f_x$ (1.64 ms)     |
| 0     | 1     | 0     | $2^{13} \times 1/f_{xx}$ | $2^{13} \times 1/f_x$ (1.64 ms)     | $2^{14} \times 1/f_x$ (3.28 ms)     |
| 0     | 1     | 1     | $2^{14} \times 1/f_{xx}$ | $2^{14} \times 1/f_x$ (3.28 ms)     | $2^{15} \times 1/f_x$ (6.55 ms)     |
| 1     | 0     | 0     | $2^{15} \times 1/f_{xx}$ | $2^{15} \times 1/f_x$ (6.55 ms)     | $2^{16} \times 1/f_x$ (13.1 ms)     |
| 1     | 0     | 1     | $2^{16} \times 1/f_{xx}$ | $2^{16} \times 1/f_x$ (13.1 ms)     | $2^{17} \times 1/f_x$ (26.2 ms)     |
| 1     | 1     | 0     | $2^{17} \times 1/f_{xx}$ | $2^{17} \times 1/f_x$ (26.2 ms)     | $2^{18} \times 1/f_x$ (52.4 ms)     |
| 1     | 1     | 1     | $2^{19} \times 1/f_{xx}$ | $2^{19} \times 1/f_x$ (104.9 ms)    | $2^{20} \times 1/f_x$ (209.7 ms)    |

- Remarks**
1.  $f_{xx}$  : Main system clock frequency ( $f_x$  or  $f_x/2$ )
  2.  $f_x$  : Main system clock oscillation frequency
  3. MCS: Oscillation mode selection register (OSMS) bit 0
  4. Values in parentheses when operated at  $f_x = 5.0$  MHz.

## CHAPTER 8 CLOCK OUTPUT CONTROL CIRCUIT

### 8.1 Clock Output Control Circuit Functions

The clock output control circuit is intended for carrier output during remote controlled transmission and clock output for supply to peripheral LSI. Clocks selected with the timer clock select register 0 (TCL0) are output from the PCL/P35 pin.

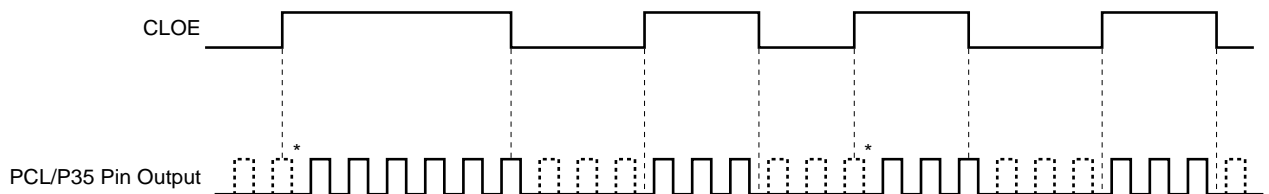
Follow the procedure below to output clock pulses.

- (1) Select the clock pulse output frequency (with clock pulse output disabled) with bits 0 to 3 (TCL00 to TCL03) of TCL0.
- (2) Set the P35 output latch to 0.
- (3) Set bit 5 (PM35) of port mode register 3 to 0 (set to output mode).
- (4) Set bit 7 (CLOE) of timer clock select register 0 to 1.

**Caution** Clock output cannot be used when setting P35 output latch to 1.

**Remark** When clock output enable/disable is switched, the clock output control circuit does not output pulses with small widths (See the portions marked with \* in **Figure 8-1**).

**Figure 8-1. Remote Controlled Output Application Example**



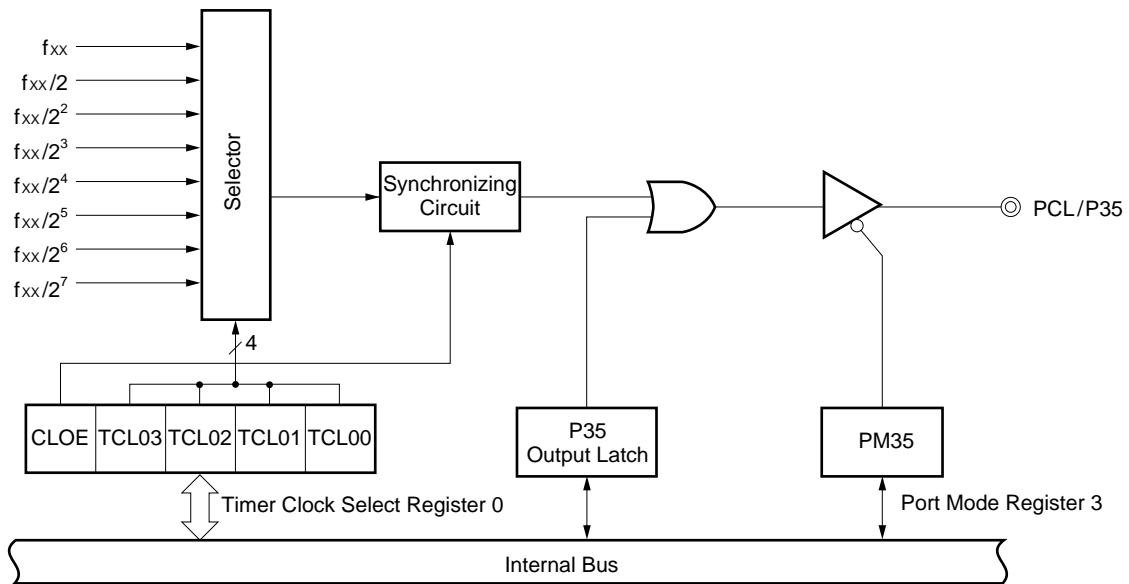
### 8.2 Clock Output Control Circuit Configuration

The clock output control circuit consists of the following hardware.

**Table 8-1. Clock Output Control Circuit Configuration**

| Item             | Configuration  |
|------------------|--|
| Control register | Timer clock select register 0 (TCL0)<br>Port mode register 3 (PM3) |

**Figure 8-2. Clock Output Control Circuit Block Diagram**



### 8.3 Clock Output Function Control Registers

The following two types of registers are used to control the clock output function.

- Timer clock select register 0 (TCL0)
- Port mode register 3 (PM3)

#### (1) Timer clock select register 0 (TCL0)

This register sets PCL output clock.

TCL0 is set with a 1-bit or 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

RESET input sets TCL0 to 00H.

Figure 8-3. Timer Clock Select Register 0 Format

|        |      |   |   |   |       |       |       |       |         |             |     |
|--------|------|---|---|---|-------|-------|-------|-------|---------|-------------|-----|
| Symbol | ⑦    | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3     | 2     | 1     | 0     | Address | After Reset | R/W |
| TCL0   | CLOE | 0 | 0 | 0 | TCL03 | TCL02 | TCL01 | TCL00 | FF40H   | 00H         | R/W |

| TCL03            | TCL02 | TCL01 | TCL00 | PCL Output Clock Selection |                      |                      |
|------------------|-------|-------|-------|----------------------------|----------------------|----------------------|
|                  |       |       |       |                            | MCS=1                | MCS=0                |
| 0                | 1     | 0     | 1     | $f_{xx}$                   | $f_x$ (5.0 MHz)      | $f_x/2$ (2.5 MHz)    |
| 0                | 1     | 1     | 0     | $f_{xx}/2$                 | $f_x/2$ (2.5 MHz)    | $f_x/2^2$ (1.25 MHz) |
| 0                | 1     | 1     | 1     | $f_{xx}/2^2$               | $f_x/2^2$ (1.25 MHz) | $f_x/2^3$ (625 kHz)  |
| 1                | 0     | 0     | 0     | $f_{xx}/2^3$               | $f_x/2^3$ (625 kHz)  | $f_x/2^4$ (313 kHz)  |
| 1                | 0     | 0     | 1     | $f_{xx}/2^4$               | $f_x/2^4$ (313 kHz)  | $f_x/2^5$ (156 kHz)  |
| 1                | 0     | 1     | 0     | $f_{xx}/2^5$               | $f_x/2^5$ (156 kHz)  | $f_x/2^6$ (78.1 kHz) |
| 1                | 0     | 1     | 1     | $f_{xx}/2^6$               | $f_x/2^6$ (78.1 kHz) | $f_x/2^7$ (39.1 kHz) |
| 1                | 1     | 0     | 0     | $f_{xx}/2^7$               | $f_x/2^7$ (39.1 kHz) | $f_x/2^8$ (19.5 kHz) |
| Other than above |       |       |       | Setting prohibited         |                      |                      |

| CLOE | PCL Output Control |
|------|--------------------|
| 0    | Output disable     |
| 1    | Output enable      |

**Cautions** 1. When enabling PCL output, set TCL00 to TCL03, then set 1 in CLOE with a 1-bit memory manipulation instruction.

★

2. When rewriting TCL0 to other data, stop the clock operation beforehand.

3. Set 0 to bits 4 to 6.

**Remarks** 1.  $f_{xx}$  : Main system clock frequency ( $f_x$  or  $f_x/2$ )

2.  $f_x$  : Main system clock oscillation frequency

3. MCS : Oscillation mode selection register (OSMS) bit 0

4. Values in parentheses when operated at  $f_x = 5.0$  MHz.



**(2) Port mode register 3 (PM3)**

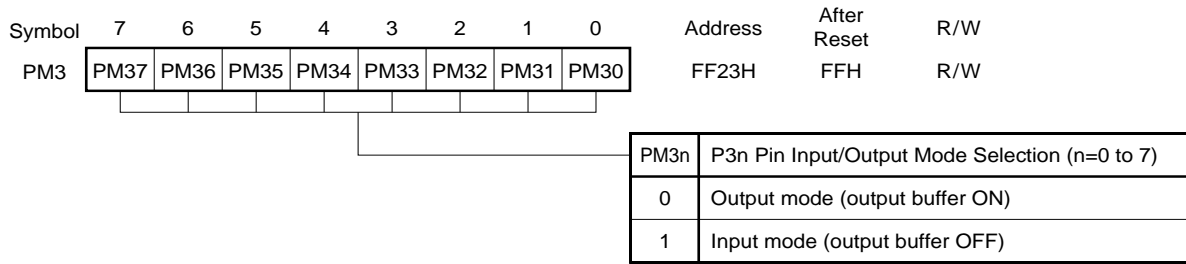
This register set port 3 input/output in 1-bit units.

When using the P35/PCL pin for clock output function, set PM35 and output latch of P35 to 0.

PM3 is set with a 1-bit or 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

RESET input sets PM3 to FFH.

**Figure 8-4. Port Mode Register 3 Format**



## CHAPTER 9 BUZZER OUTPUT CONTROL CIRCUIT

### 9.1 Buzzer Output Control Circuit Functions

The buzzer output control circuit outputs 1.2 kHz, 2.4 kHz, 4.9 kHz, or 9.8 kHz frequency square waves. The buzzer frequency selected with timer clock select register 2 (TCL2) is output from the BUZ/P36 pin.

Follow the procedure below to output the buzzer frequency.

- (1) Select the buzzer output frequency with bits 5 to 7 (TCL25 to TCL27) of TCL2.
- (2) Set the P36 output latch to 0.
- (3) Set bit 6 (PM36) of port mode register 3 to 0 (Set to output mode).

**Caution** Buzzer output cannot be used when setting P36 output latch to 1.

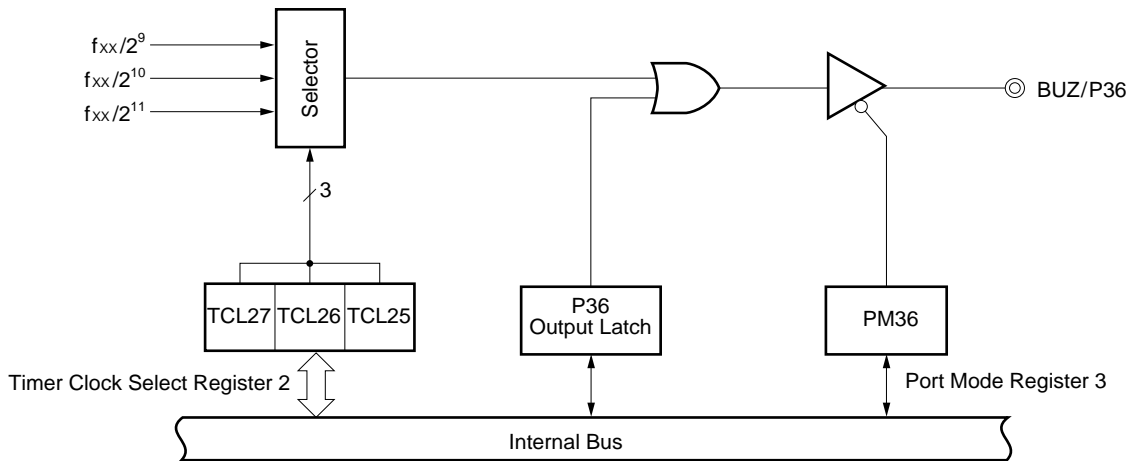
### 9.2 Buzzer Output Control Circuit Configuration

The buzzer output control circuit consists of the following hardware.

**Table 9-1. Buzzer Output Control Circuit Configuration**

| Item             | Configuration  |
|------------------|--|
| Control register | Timer clock select register 2 (TCL2)<br>Port mode register 3 (PM3) |

**Figure 9-1. Buzzer Output Control Circuit Block Diagram**



### 9.3 Buzzer Output Function Control Registers

The following two types of registers are used to control the buzzer output function.

- Timer clock select register 2 (TCL2)
- Port mode register 3 (PM3)

#### (1) Timer clock select register 2 (TCL2)

This register sets the buzzer output frequency.

TCL2 is set with an 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

RESET input sets TCL2 to 00H.

**Remark** Besides setting the buzzer output frequency, TCL2 sets the watchdog timer count clock.

Figure 9-2. Timer Clock Select Register 2 Format

|        |       |       |       |   |   |       |       |       |         |             |     |
|--------|-------|-------|-------|---|---|-------|-------|-------|---------|-------------|-----|
| Symbol | 7     | 6     | 5     | 4 | 3 | 2     | 1     | 0     | Address | After Reset | R/W |
| TCL2   | TCL27 | TCL26 | TCL25 | 0 | 0 | TCL22 | TCL21 | TCL20 | FF42H   | 00H         | R/W |

|       |       |       | Watchdog Timer Count Clock Selection |                        |                        |
|-------|-------|-------|--------------------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|
| TCL22 | TCL21 | TCL20 | MCS=1                                |                        | MCS=0                  |
| 0     | 0     | 0     | $f_{xx}/2^3$                         | $f_x/2^3$ (625 kHz)    | $f_x/2^4$ (313 kHz)    |
| 0     | 0     | 1     | $f_{xx}/2^4$                         | $f_x/2^4$ (313 kHz)    | $f_x/2^5$ (156 kHz)    |
| 0     | 1     | 0     | $f_{xx}/2^5$                         | $f_x/2^5$ (156 kHz)    | $f_x/2^6$ (78.1 kHz)   |
| 0     | 1     | 1     | $f_{xx}/2^6$                         | $f_x/2^6$ (78.1 kHz)   | $f_x/2^7$ (39.1 kHz)   |
| 1     | 0     | 0     | $f_{xx}/2^7$                         | $f_x/2^7$ (39.1 kHz)   | $f_x/2^8$ (19.5 kHz)   |
| 1     | 0     | 1     | $f_{xx}/2^8$                         | $f_x/2^8$ (19.5 kHz)   | $f_x/2^9$ (9.8 kHz)    |
| 1     | 1     | 0     | $f_{xx}/2^9$                         | $f_x/2^9$ (9.8 kHz)    | $f_x/2^{10}$ (4.9 kHz) |
| 1     | 1     | 1     | $f_{xx}/2^{11}$                      | $f_x/2^{11}$ (2.4 kHz) | $f_x/2^{12}$ (1.2 kHz) |

|       |       |       | Buzzer Output Frequency Selection |                        |                        |
|-------|-------|-------|-----------------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|
| TCL27 | TCL26 | TCL25 | MCS=1                             |                        | MCS=0                  |
| 0     | ×     | ×     | Buzzer output disable             |                        |                        |
| 1     | 0     | 0     | $f_{xx}/2^9$                      | $f_x/2^9$ (9.8 kHz)    | $f_x/2^{10}$ (4.9 kHz) |
| 1     | 0     | 1     | $f_{xx}/2^{10}$                   | $f_x/2^{10}$ (4.9 kHz) | $f_x/2^{11}$ (2.4 kHz) |
| 1     | 1     | 0     | $f_{xx}/2^{11}$                   | $f_x/2^{11}$ (2.4 kHz) | $f_x/2^{12}$ (1.2 kHz) |
| 1     | 1     | 1     | Setting prohibited                |                        |                        |

- Cautions**
1. When rewriting TCL2 to other data, stop the timer operation beforehand.
  2. Set 0 to bits 3 and 4.

- Remarks**
1.  $f_{xx}$  : Main system clock frequency ( $f_x$  or  $f_x/2$ )
  2.  $f_x$  : Main system clock oscillation frequency
  3. × : don't care
  4. MCS : Oscillation mode selection register (OSMS) bit 0
  5. Values in parentheses when operated at  $f_x = 5.0$  MHz

**(2) Port mode register 3 (PM3)**

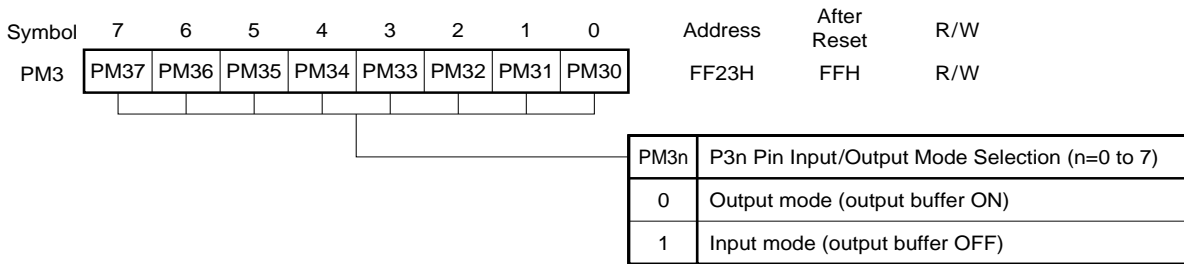
This register sets port 3 input/output in 1-bit units.

When using the P36/BUZ pin for buzzer output function, set PM36 and output latch of P36 to 0.

PM3 is set with a 1-bit or 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

RESET input sets PM3 to FFH.

**Figure 9-3. Port Mode Register 3 Format**



## CHAPTER 10 A/D CONVERTER

### 10.1 A/D Converter Functions

The A/D converter converts an analog input into a digital value. It consists of 8 channels (ANI0 to ANI7) with an 8-bit resolution.

The conversion method is based on successive approximation and the conversion result is held in the 8-bit A/D conversion result register (ADCR).

The following two ways are available to start A/D conversion.

**(1) Hardware start**

Conversion is started by trigger input (INTP3).

**(2) Software start**

Conversion is started by setting the A/D converter mode register.

Select 1 channel of analog input from ANI0 to ANI7 and perform A/D conversion. As for A/D conversion operations, when the hardware is started up, the A/D conversion operation stops when A/D conversion is completed, and an interrupt request (INTAD) is generated. In the case of software start, the A/D conversion operation is repeated. Each time an A/D conversion operation ends, an interrupt request (INTAD) is generated.

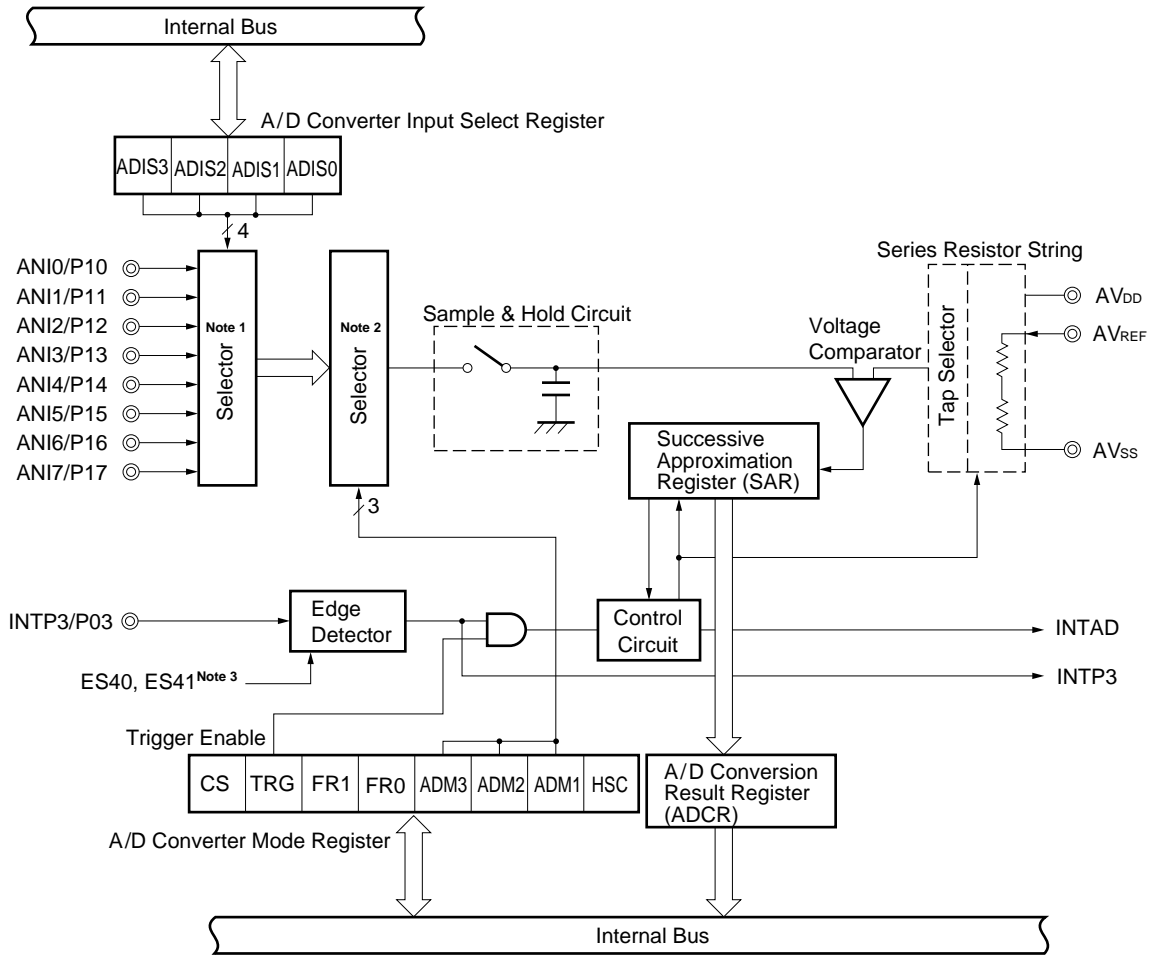
### 10.2 A/D Converter Configuration

The A/D converter consists of the following hardware.

**Table 10-1. A/D Converter Configuration**

| Item             | Configuration   |
|------------------|---|
| Analog input     | 8 Channels (ANI0 to ANI7)   |
| Control register | A/D converter mode register (ADM)<br>A/D converter input select register (ADIS)<br>External interrupt mode register 1 (INTM1) |
| Register         | Successive approximation register (SAR)<br>A/D conversion result register (ADCR)  |

Figure 10-1. A/D Converter Block Diagram



- Notes**
1. Selector to select the number of channels to be used for analog input.
  2. Selector to select the channel for A/D conversion.
  3. External interrupt mode register 1 (INTM1) bits 0 and 1.

**(1) Successive approximation register (SAR)**

This register compares the analog input voltage value to the voltage tap (compare voltage) value applied from the series resistor string and holds the result from the most significant bit (MSB).

When held to the least significant bit (LSB) (end of A/D conversion), the contents of the SAR are transferred to the A/D conversion results register.

**(2) A/D conversion result register (ADCR)**

This register holds the A/D conversion result. Each time A/D conversion terminates, the conversion result is loaded from the successive approximation register.

ADCR is read with an 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

RESET input makes ADCR undefined.

**(3) Sample & hold circuit**

The sample & hold circuit samples each analog input signal sequentially applied from the input circuit and sends it to the voltage comparator. This circuit holds the sampled analog input voltage value during A/D conversion.

**(4) Voltage comparator**

The voltage comparator compares the analog input to the series resistor string output voltage.

**(5) Series resistor string**

The series resistor string is connected within  $AV_{REF}$  to  $AV_{SS}$  and generates a voltage for comparison with the analog input.

**(6) ANI0 to ANI7 pins**

These are 8-channel analog input pins to input analog signals to undergo A/D conversion to the A/D converter. Pins other than those selected as analog input by the A/D converter input select register (ADIS) can be used as input/output ports.

**Caution** Use ANI0 to ANI7 input voltages within the specified range. If a voltage higher than  $AV_{REF}$  or lower than  $AV_{SS}$  is applied (even if within the absolute maximum ratings), the converted value of the corresponding channel becomes indeterminate and may adversely affect the converted values of other channels.

**(7)  $AV_{REF}$  pin**

This pin inputs the A/D converter reference voltage.

It converts signals input to ANI0 to ANI7 into digital signals according to the voltage applied between  $AV_{REF}$  and  $AV_{SS}$ .

The current flowing in the series resistor string can be reduced by setting the voltage to be input to the  $AV_{REF}$  pin to  $AV_{SS}$  level in standby mode.

**(8)  $AV_{SS}$  pin**

This is a GND potential pin of the A/D converter. Keep it at the same potential as the  $V_{SS}$  pin when not using the A/D converter.

**(9)  $AV_{DD}$  pin**

This is an A/D converter analog power supply pin. Keep it at the same potential as the  $V_{SS}$  pin when not using the A/D converter.



### 10.3 A/D Converter Control Registers

The following three types of registers are used to control the A/D converter.

- A/D converter mode register (ADM)
- A/D converter input select register (ADIS)
- External interrupt mode register 1 (INTM1)

#### (1) A/D converter mode register (ADM)

This register sets the analog input channel for A/D conversion, conversion time, conversion start/stop and external trigger.

ADM is set with a 1-bit or 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

$\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input sets ADM to 01H.

Figure 10-2. A/D Converter Mode Register Format

|        |    |     |     |     |      |      |      |     |         |             |     |
|--------|----|-----|-----|-----|------|------|------|-----|---------|-------------|-----|
| Symbol | ⑦  | ⑥   | 5   | 4   | 3    | 2    | 1    | 0   | Address | After Reset | R/W |
| ADM    | CS | TRG | FR1 | FR0 | ADM3 | ADM2 | ADM1 | HSC | FF80H   | 01H         | R/W |

| ADM3 | ADM2 | ADM1 | Analog Input Channel Selection |
|------|------|------|--------------------------------|
| 0    | 0    | 0    | ANI0                           |
| 0    | 0    | 1    | ANI1                           |
| 0    | 1    | 0    | ANI2                           |
| 0    | 1    | 1    | ANI3                           |
| 1    | 0    | 0    | ANI4                           |
| 1    | 0    | 1    | ANI5                           |
| 1    | 1    | 0    | ANI6                           |
| 1    | 1    | 1    | ANI7                           |

★

| FR1              | FR0 | HSC | A/D Conversion Time Selection <sup>Note 1</sup>           |   |   |                              |
|------------------|-----|-----|---|---|---|------------------------------|
|                  |     |     | f <sub>x</sub> = 5.0 MHz Operation                        |   | f <sub>x</sub> = 4.19 MHz Operation                       |                              |
|                  |     |     | MCS=1   | MCS=0   | MCS=1   | MCS=0                        |
| 0                | 0   | 1   | 80/f <sub>x</sub> (Setting prohibited <sup>Note 2</sup> ) | 160/f <sub>x</sub> (32.0 μs)                              | 80/f <sub>x</sub> (19.1 μs)                               | 160/f <sub>x</sub> (38.1 μs) |
| 0                | 1   | 1   | 40/f <sub>x</sub> (Setting prohibited <sup>Note 2</sup> ) | 80/f <sub>x</sub> (Setting prohibited <sup>Note 2</sup> ) | 40/f <sub>x</sub> (Setting prohibited <sup>Note 2</sup> ) | 80/f <sub>x</sub> (19.1 μs)  |
| 1                | 0   | 0   | 50/f <sub>x</sub> (Setting prohibited <sup>Note 2</sup> ) | 100/f <sub>x</sub> (20.0 μs)                              | 50/f <sub>x</sub> (Setting prohibited <sup>Note 2</sup> ) | 100/f <sub>x</sub> (23.8 μs) |
| 1                | 0   | 1   | 100/f <sub>x</sub> (20.0 μs)                              | 200/f <sub>x</sub> (40.0 μs)                              | 100/f <sub>x</sub> (23.8 μs)                              | 200/f <sub>x</sub> (47.7 μs) |
| Other than above |     |     | Setting prohibited  |   |   |                              |

| TRG | External Trigger Selection                               |
|-----|--|
| 0   | No external trigger (software starts)                    |
| 1   | Conversion started by external trigger (hardware starts) |

| CS | A/D Conversion Operation Control |
|----|----------------------------------|
| 0  | Operation stop                   |
| 1  | Operation start                  |

- Notes**
1. Set so that the A/D conversion time is 19.1 μs or more.
  2. Setting prohibited because A/D conversion time is less than 19.1 μs.

★

- Cautions**
1. The following sequence is recommended for power consumption reduction of A/D converter when the standby function is used: Clear bit 7 (CS) to 0 first to stop the A/D conversion operation, and then execute the HALT or STOP instruction.
  2. When restarting the stopped A/D conversion operation, start the A/D conversion operation after clearing the interrupt request flag (ADIF) to 0.

- Remarks**
1. f<sub>x</sub> : Main system clock oscillation frequency
  2. MCS : Oscillation mode selection register (OSMS) bit 0

**(2) A/D converter input select register (ADIS)**

This register determines whether the ANI0/P10 to ANI7/P17 pins should be used for analog input channels or ports. Pins other than those selected as analog input can be used as input/output ports.

ADIS is set with an 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

RESET input sets ADIS to 00H.

**Cautions** 1. Set the analog input channel in the following order.

(1) Set the number of analog input channels with ADIS.

(2) Using A/D converter mode register (ADM), select one channel to undergo A/D conversion from among the channels set for analog input with ADIS.

2. No internal pull-up resistor can be used to the channels set for analog input with ADIS, irrespective of the value of bit 1 (PUO1) of the pull-up resistor option register L (PUOL).

**Figure 10-3. A/D Converter Input Select Register Format**

|        |   |   |   |   |       |       |       |       |         |             |     |
|--------|---|---|---|---|-------|-------|-------|-------|---------|-------------|-----|
| Symbol | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3     | 2     | 1     | 0     | Address | After Reset | R/W |
| ADIS   | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | ADIS3 | ADIS2 | ADIS1 | ADIS0 | FF84H   | 00H         | R/W |

| ADIS3            | ADIS2 | ADIS1 | ADIS0 | Number of Analog Input Channel Selection |
|------------------|-------|-------|-------|--|
| 0                | 0     | 0     | 0     | No analog input channel (P10-P17)        |
| 0                | 0     | 0     | 1     | 1 channel (ANI0, P11-P17)                |
| 0                | 0     | 1     | 0     | 2 channel (ANI0, ANI1, P12-P17)          |
| 0                | 0     | 1     | 1     | 3 channel (ANI0-ANI2, P13-P17)           |
| 0                | 1     | 0     | 0     | 4 channel (ANI0-ANI3, P14-P17)           |
| 0                | 1     | 0     | 1     | 5 channel (ANI0-ANI4, P15-P17)           |
| 0                | 1     | 1     | 0     | 6 channel (ANI0-ANI5, P16, P17)          |
| 0                | 1     | 1     | 1     | 7 channel (ANI0-ANI6, P17)               |
| 1                | 0     | 0     | 0     | 8 channel (ANI0-ANI7)                    |
| Other than above |       |       |       | Setting prohibited                       |

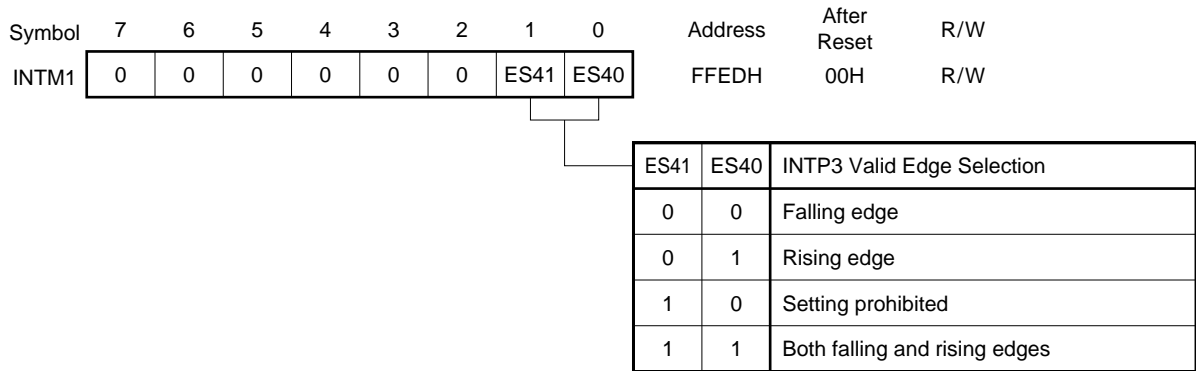
**(3) External interrupt mode register 1 (INTM1)**

This register sets the valid edge for INTP3.

INTM1 is set with an 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

$\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input sets INTM1 to 00H.

**Figure 10-4. External Interrupt Mode Register 1 Format**



**Caution** Set 0 to the bits 2 to 7.

## 10.4 A/D Converter Operations

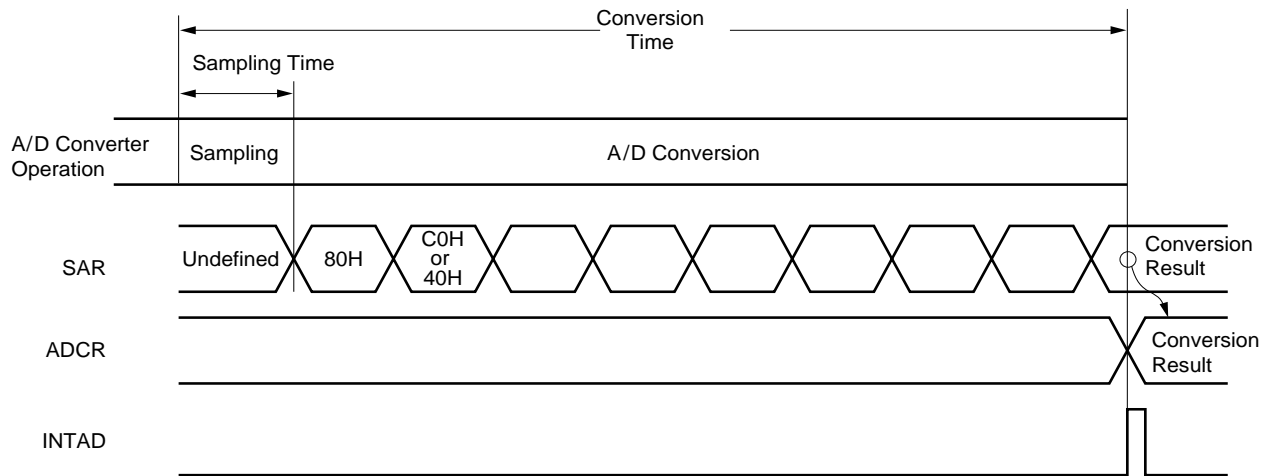
### 10.4.1 Basic operations of A/D converter

- (1) Set the number of analog input channels with A/D converter input select register (ADIS).
- (2) From among the analog input channels set with ADIS, select one channel for A/D conversion with A/D converter mode register (ADM).
- (3) Sample the voltage input to the selected analog input channel with the sample & hold circuit.
- (4) Sampling for the specified period of time sets the sample & hold circuit to the hold state so that the circuit holds the input analog voltage until termination of A/D conversion.
- (5) Bit 7 of the successive approximation register (SAR) is set. The series resistor string voltage tap is set at  $(1/2) AV_{REF}$  by the tap selector.
- (6) The voltage difference between the series resistor string voltage tap and the analog input is compared by the voltage comparator. If the analog input is larger than  $(1/2) AV_{REF}$ , the MSB of the SAR remains set. If it is smaller than  $(1/2) AV_{REF}$ , the MSB is reset.
- (7) Next, bit 6 of SAR is automatically set and the operation proceeds to the next comparison. In this case, the series resistor string voltage tap is selected according to the preset value of bit 7 as described below.
  - Bit 7 = 1 :  $(3/4) AV_{REF}$
  - Bit 7 = 0 :  $(1/4) AV_{REF}$

The voltage tap and analog input voltage are compared and bit 6 of SAR is manipulated with the result as follows.

- Analog input voltage  $\geq$  Voltage tap : Bit 6 = 1
  - Analog input voltage  $\leq$  Voltage tap : Bit 6 = 0
- (8) Comparison of this sort continues up to bit 0 of SAR.
  - (9) Upon completion of the comparison of 8 bits, any effective digital resultant value remains in SAR and the resultant value is transferred to and latched in the A/D conversion result register (ADCR).  
At the same time, the A/D conversion termination interrupt request (INTAD) can also be generated.

Figure 10-5. A/D Converter Basic Operation



A/D conversion operations are performed continuously until bit 7 (CS) of A/D converter mode register (ADM) is reset (0) by software.

If a write to the ADM is performed during an A/D conversion operation, the conversion operation is initialized, and if the CS bit is set (1), conversion starts again from the beginning.

After  $\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input, the value of ADCR is undefined.

**10.4.2 Input voltage and conversion results**

The relation between the analog input voltage input to the analog input pins (ANI0 to ANI7) and the A/D conversion result (the value stored in A/D conversion result register (ADCR)) is shown by the following expression.

$$ADCR = INT \left( \frac{V_{IN}}{AV_{REF}} \times 256 + 0.5 \right)$$

or

$$(ADCR - 0.5) \times \frac{AV_{REF}}{256} \leq V_{IN} < (ADCR + 0.5) \times \frac{AV_{REF}}{256}$$

Where, INT ( ) : Function which returns integer parts of value in parentheses.

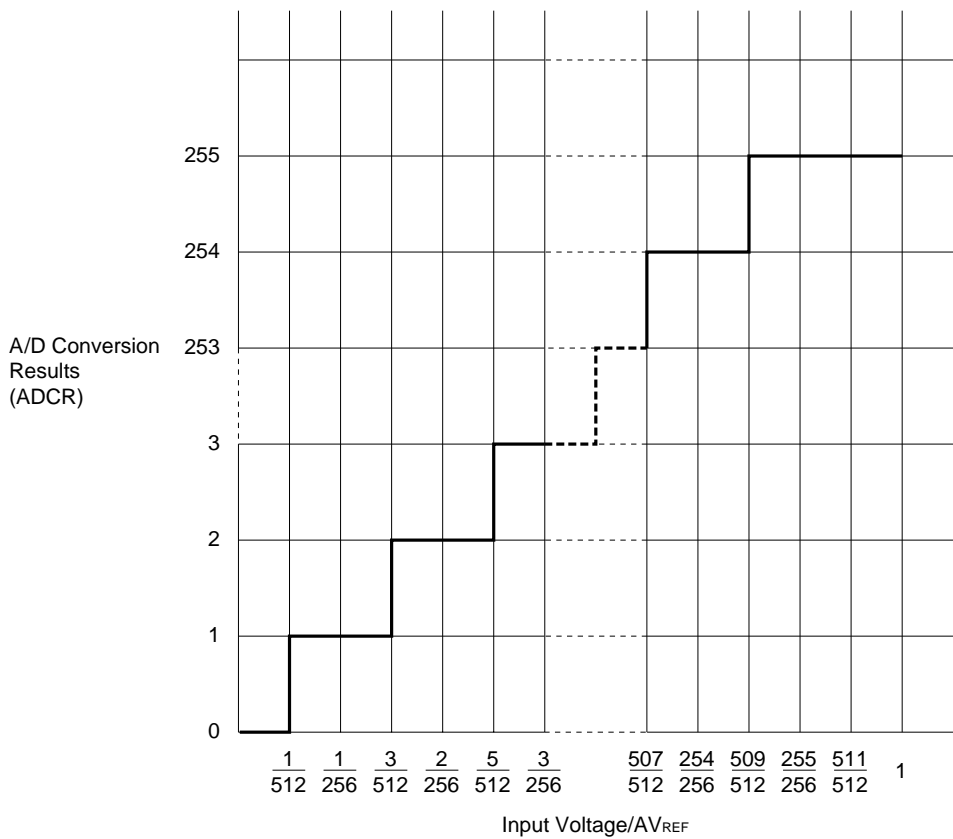
$V_{IN}$  : Analog input voltage

$AV_{REF}$  :  $AV_{REF}$  pin voltage

ADCR : Value of A/D conversion result register (ADCR)

Figure 10-6 shows the relation between the analog input voltage and the A/D conversion result.

**Figure 10-6. Relations between Analog Input Voltage and A/D Conversion Result**



**10.4.3 A/D converter operating mode**

Using the A/D converter input select register (ADIS) and the A/D converter mode register (ADM), select one channel for the analog input from ANI0 to ANI7 and start A/D conversion.

The following two ways are available to start A/D conversion.

- Hardware start: Conversion is started by trigger input (INTP3).
- Software start: Conversion is started by setting ADM.

The A/D conversion result is stored in the A/D conversion result register (ADCR) and the interrupt request signal (INTAD) is simultaneously generated.

**(1) A/D conversion by hardware start**

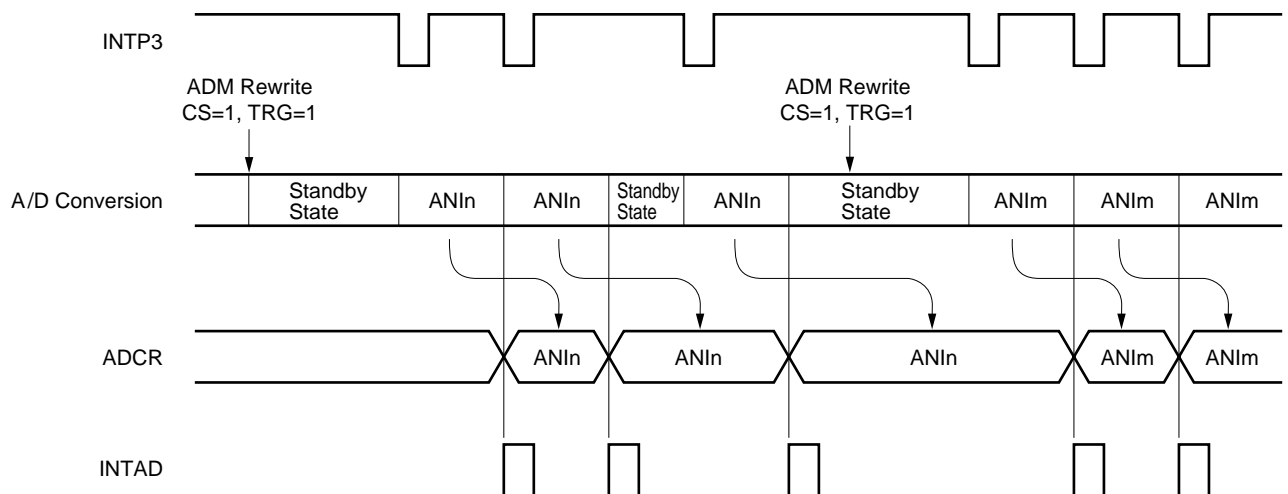
When bit 6 (TRG) and bit 7 (CS) of A/D converter mode register (ADM) are set to 1, the A/D conversion standby state is set. When the external trigger signal (INTP3) is input, the A/D conversion starts on the voltage applied to the analog input pins specified with bits 1 to 3 (ADM1 to ADM3) of ADM.

Upon termination of the A/D conversion, the conversion result is stored in the A/D conversion result register (ADCR) and the interrupt request signal (INTAD) is generated. After one A/D conversion operation is started and terminated, another operation is not started until a new external trigger signal is input.

If data with CS set to 1 is written to ADM again during A/D conversion, the converter suspends its A/D conversion operation and waits for a new external trigger signal to be input. When the external trigger input signal is reinput, A/D conversion is carried out from the beginning.

If data with CS set to 0 is written to ADM during A/D conversion, the A/D conversion operation stops immediately.

**Figure 10-7. A/D Conversion by Hardware Start**



- Remarks**
1.  $n = 0, 1, \dots, 7$
  2.  $m = 0, 1, \dots, 7$



**(2) A/D conversion operation in software start**

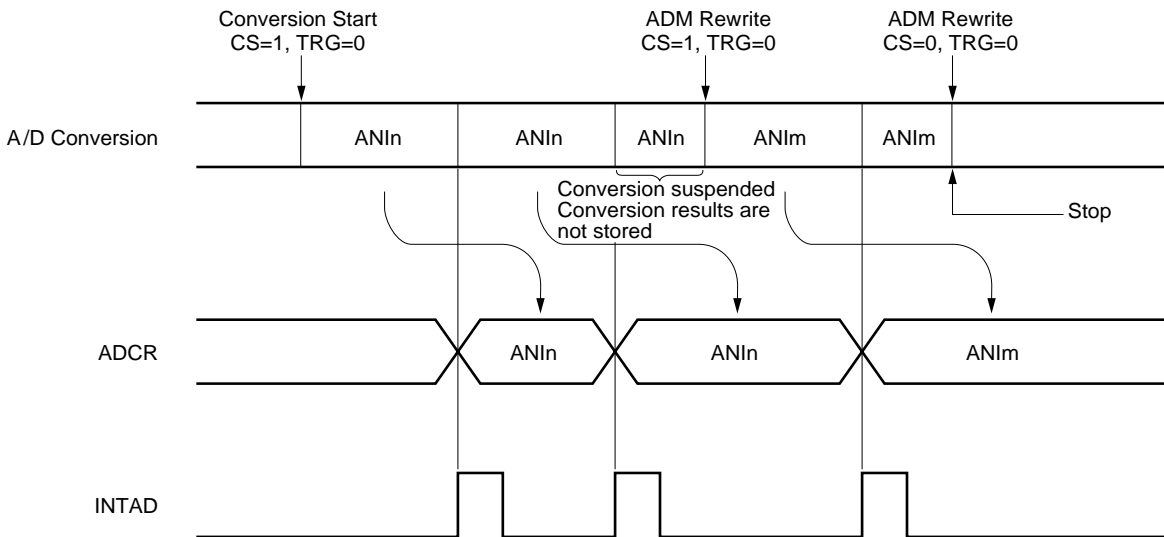
When bit 6 (TRG) and bit 7 (CS) of A/D converter mode register (ADM) are set to 0 and 1, respectively, the A/D conversion starts on the voltage applied to the analog input pins specified with bits 1 to 3 (ADM1 to ADM3) of ADM.

Upon termination of the A/D conversion, the conversion result is stored in the A/D conversion result register (ADCR) and the interrupt request signal (INTAD) is generated. After one A/D conversion operation is started and terminated, the next A/D conversion operation starts immediately. The A/D conversion operation continues repeatedly until new data is written to ADM.

If data with CS set to 1 is written to ADM again during A/D conversion, the converter suspends its A/D conversion operation and starts A/D conversion on the newly written data.

If data with CS set to 0 is written to ADM during A/D conversion, the A/D conversion operation stops immediately.

**Figure 10-8. A/D Conversion by Software Start**



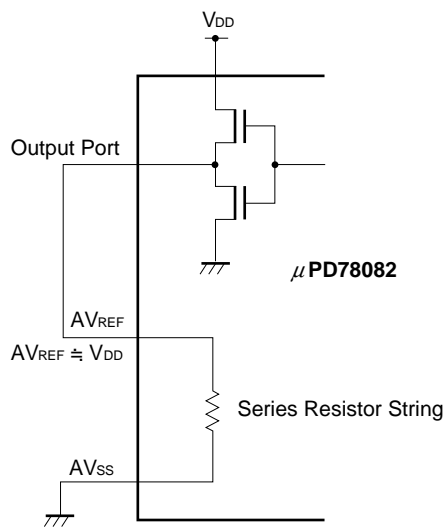
- Remarks**
1.  $n = 0, 1, \dots, 7$
  2.  $m = 0, 1, \dots, 7$

## 10.5 A/D Converter Cautions

### (1) Power consumption in standby mode

The A/D converter operates on the main system clock. Therefore, its operation stops in STOP mode. As a current still flows in the  $AV_{REF}$  pin at this time, this current must be cut in order to minimize the overall system power dissipation. In Figure 10-9, the power dissipation can be reduced by outputting a low-level signal to the output port in standby mode. However, there is no precision to the actual  $AV_{REF}$  voltage, and therefore the conversion values themselves lack precision and can only be used for relative comparison.

**Figure 10-9. Example of Method of Reducing Current Dissipation in Standby Mode**



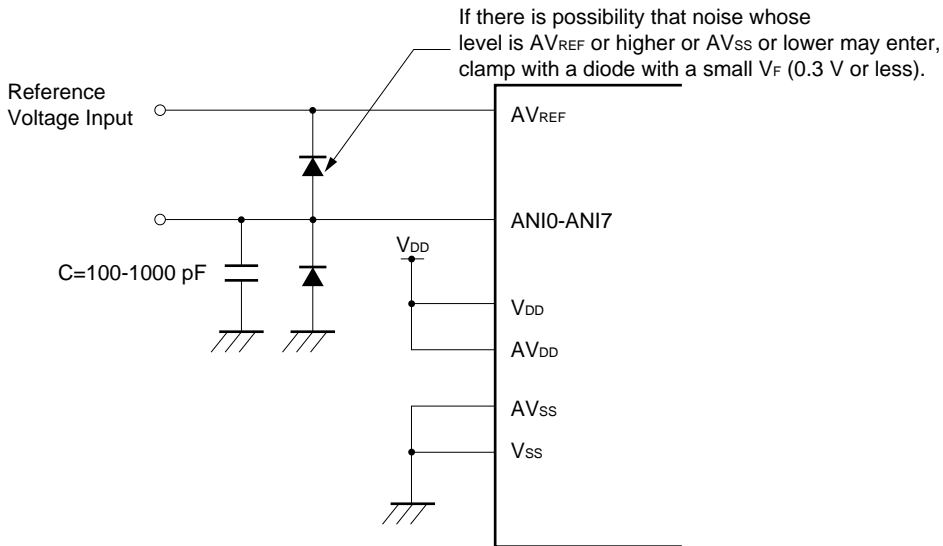
### (2) Input range of ANI0 to ANI7

The input voltages of ANI0 to ANI7 should be within the specification range. In particular, if a voltage above  $AV_{REF}$  or below  $AV_{SS}$  is input (even if within the absolute maximum rating range), the conversion value for that channel will be indeterminate. The conversion values of the other channels may also be affected.

**(3) Noise countermeasures**

In order to maintain 8-bit resolution, attention must be paid to noise on pins  $AV_{REF}$  and ANI0 to ANI7. Since the effect increases in proportion to the output impedance of the analog input source, it is recommended that a capacitor be connected externally as shown in Figure 10-10 in order to reduce noise.

**Figure 10-10. Analog Input Pin Disposition**



**(4) Pins ANI0/P10 to ANI7/P17**

The analog input pins ANI0 to ANI7 also function as input/output port (PORT1) pins. When A/D conversion is performed with any of pins ANI0 to ANI7 selected, be sure not to execute a PORT1 input instruction while conversion is in progress, as this may reduce the conversion resolution.

Also, if digital pulses are applied to a pin adjacent to the pin in the process of A/D conversion, the expected A/D conversion value may not be obtainable due to coupling noise. Therefore, avoid applying pulses to pins adjacent to the pin undergoing A/D conversion.

**(5)  $AV_{REF}$  pin input impedance**

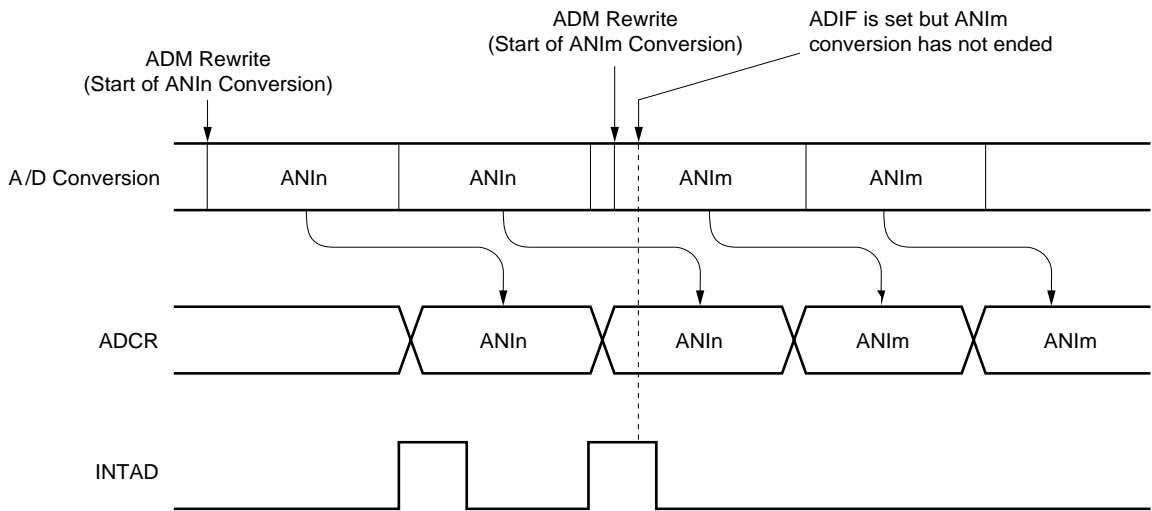
A series resistor string of approximately 10 k $\Omega$  is connected between the  $AV_{REF}$  pin and the  $AV_{SS}$  pin. Therefore, if the output impedance of the reference voltage source is high, this will result in parallel connection to the series resistor string between the  $AV_{REF}$  pin and the  $AV_{SS}$  pin, and there will be a large reference voltage error.

**(6) Interrupt request flag (ADIF)**

The interrupt request flag (ADIF) is not cleared even if the A/D converter mode register (ADM) is changed. Caution is therefore required since, if a change of analog input pin is performed during A/D conversion, the A/D conversion result and ADIF for the pre-change analog input may be set just before the ADM rewrite, and when ADIF is read immediately after the ADM rewrite, ADIF may be set despite the fact that the A/D conversion for the post-change analog input has not ended.

When the A/D conversion is stopped and then resumed, clear the ADIF before it is resumed.

**Figure 10-11. A/D Conversion End Interrupt Request Generation Timing**

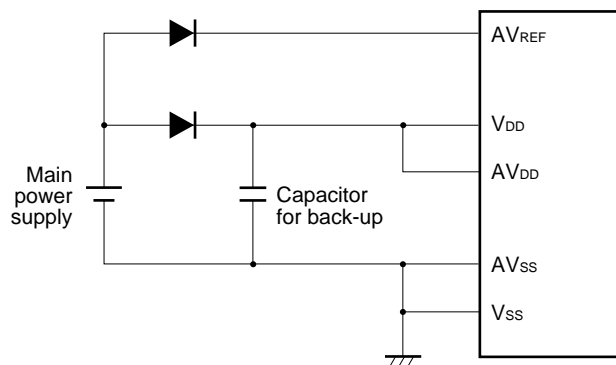


**(7) AV<sub>DD</sub> pin**

The AV<sub>DD</sub> pin is the analog circuit power supply pin, and supplies power to the input circuits of ANI0/P10 to ANI7/P17.

Therefore, be sure to apply the same voltage as V<sub>DD</sub> to this pin shown in the following figure even when the application circuit is designed so as to switch to a backup battery.

**Figure 10-12. Handling of AV<sub>DD</sub> Pin**



[MEMO]

## CHAPTER 11 SERIAL INTERFACE CHANNEL 2

### 11.1 Serial Interface Channel 2 Functions

Serial interface channel 2 has the following three modes.

- Operation stop mode
- Asynchronous serial interface (UART) mode
- 3-wire serial I/O mode

#### (1) Operation stop mode

This mode is used when serial transfer is not carried out to reduce power consumption.

#### (2) Asynchronous serial interface (UART) mode

In this mode, one byte of data is transmitted/received following the start bit, and full-duplex operation is possible.

A dedicated UART baud rate generator is incorporated, allowing communication over a wide range of baud rates. In addition, the baud rate can be defined by scaling the input clock to the ASCK pin.

The MIDI standard baud rate (31.25 kbps) can be used by employing the dedicated UART baud rate generator.

#### (3) 3-wire serial I/O mode (MSB-first/LSB-first switchable)

In this mode, 8-bit data transfer is performed using three lines: the serial clock ( $\overline{\text{SCK2}}$ ), and serial data lines (SI2, SO2).

In the 3-wire serial I/O mode, simultaneous transmission and reception is possible, increasing the data transfer processing speed.

Either the MSB or LSB can be specified as the start bit for an 8-bit data serial transfer, allowing connection to devices using either as the start bit.

The 3-wire serial I/O mode is useful for connection to peripheral I/Os and display controllers, etc., which incorporate a conventional synchronous clocked serial interface, such as the 75X/XL series, 78K series, 17K series, etc.

## 11.2 Serial Interface Channel 2 Configuration

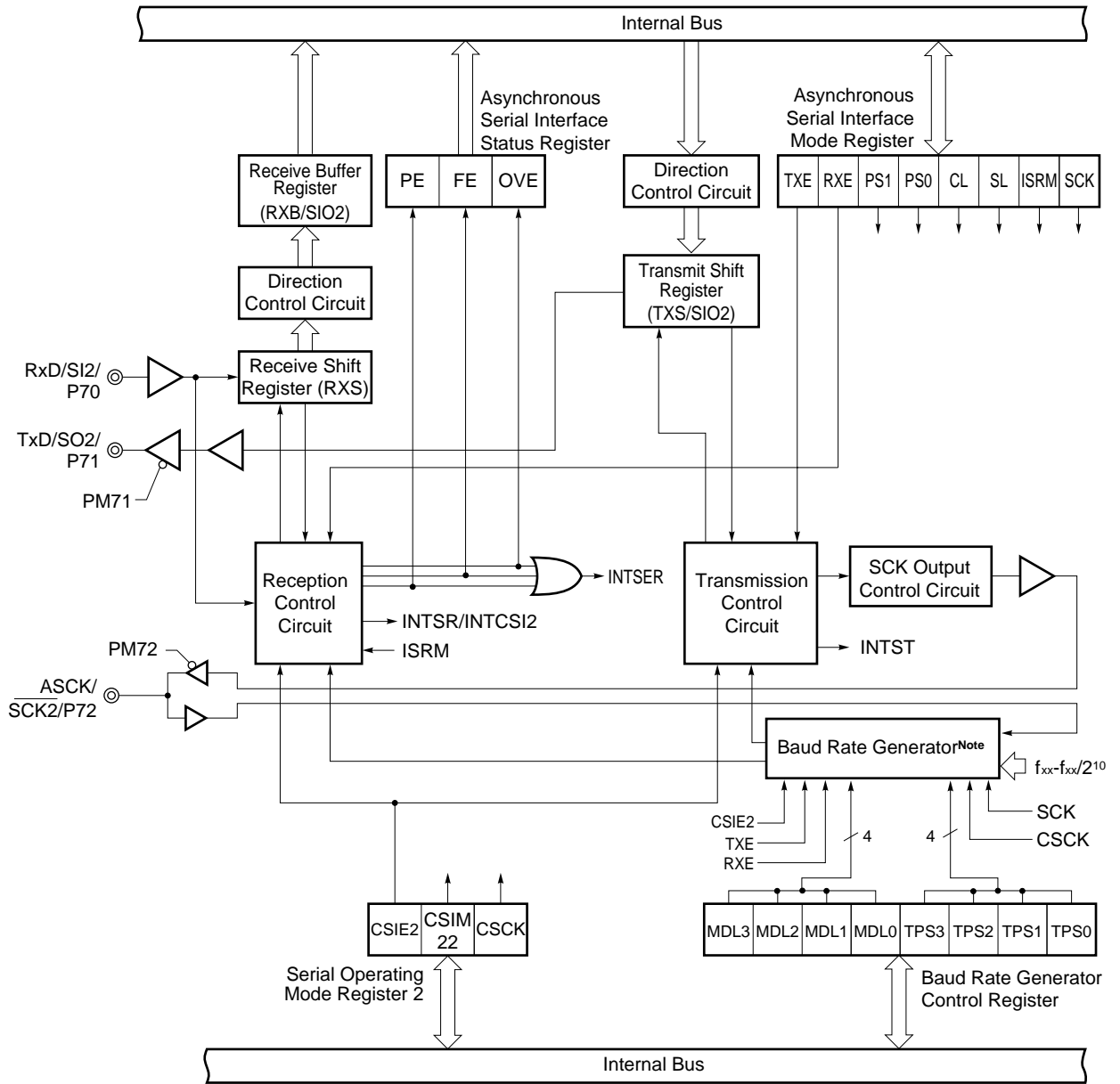
Serial interface channel 2 consists of the following hardware.

**Table 11-1. Serial Interface Channel 2 Configuration**

| Item             | Configuration   |
|------------------|---|
| Register         | Transmit shift register (TXS)<br>Receive shift register (RXS)<br>Receive buffer register (RXB)  |
| Control register | Serial operating mode register 2 (CSIM2)<br>Asynchronous serial interface mode register (ASIM)<br>Asynchronous serial interface status register (ASIS)<br>Baud rate generator control register (BRGC) |

★

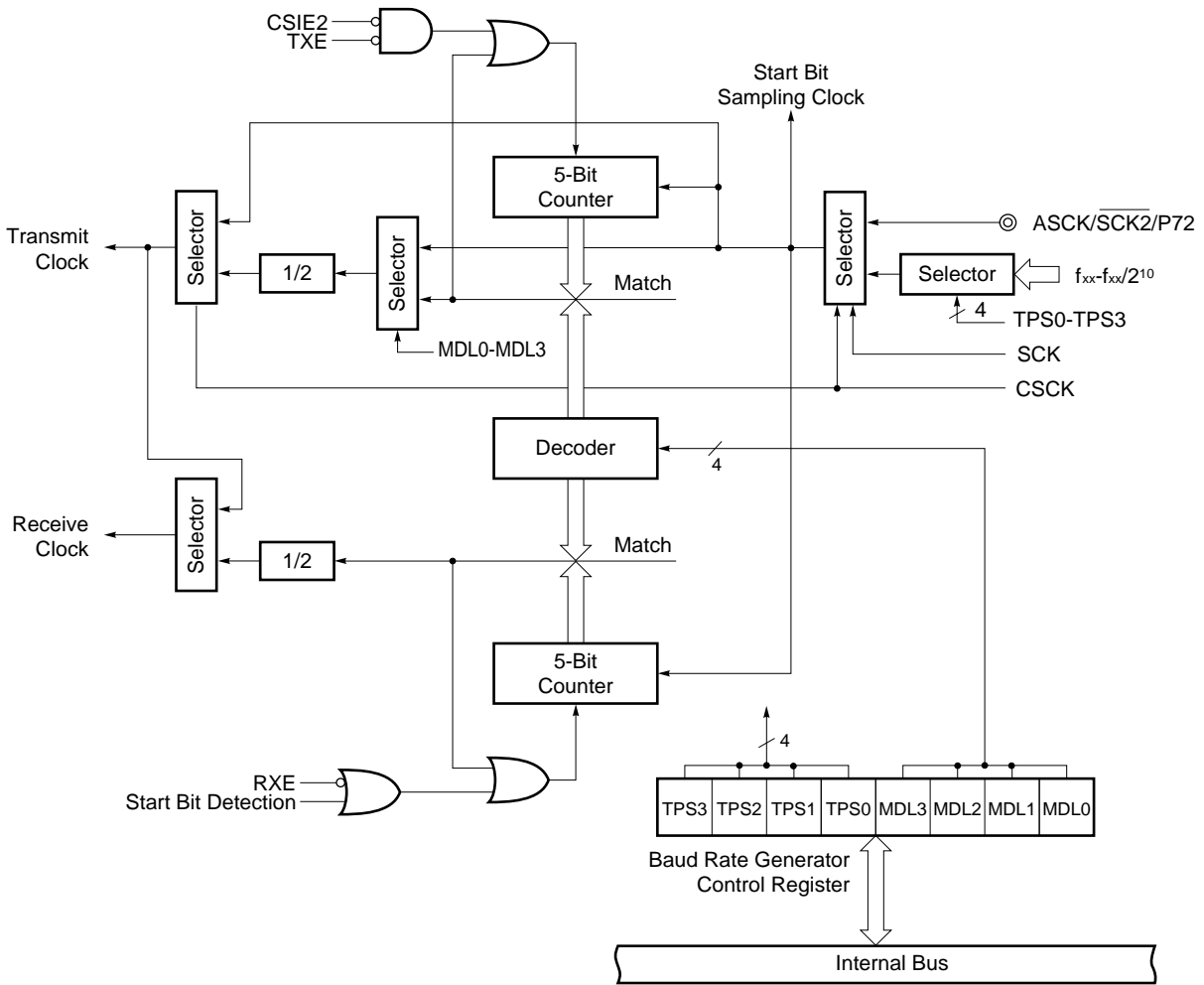
Figure 11-1. Serial Interface Channel 2 Block Diagram



**Note** See Figure 11-2 for the baud rate generator configuration.



Figure 11-2. Baud Rate Generator Block Diagram



**(1) Transmit shift register (TXS)**

This register is used to set the transmit data. The data written in TXS is transmitted as serial data. If the data length is specified as 7 bits, bits 0 to 6 of the data written in TXS are transferred as transmit data. Writing data to TXS starts the transmit operation. TXS is written to with an 8-bit memory manipulation instruction. It cannot be read. TXS value is FFH after  $\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input.

**Caution** TXS must not be written to during a transmit operation. TXS and the receive buffer register (RXB) are allocated to the same address, and when a read is performed, the value of RXB is read.

**(2) Receive shift register (RXS)**

This register is used to convert serial data input to the RxD pin to parallel data. When one byte of data is received, the receive data is transferred to the receive buffer register (RXB). RXS cannot be directly manipulated by a program.

**(3) Receive buffer register (RXB)**

This register holds receive data. Each time one byte of data is received, new receive data is transferred from the receive shift register (RXS). If the data length is specified as 7 bits, the receive data is transferred to bits 0 to 6 of RXB, and the MSB of RXB is always set to 0. RXB is read with an 8-bit memory manipulation instruction. It cannot be written to. RXB value is FFH after  $\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input.

**Caution** RXB and the transmit shift register (TXS) are allocated to the same address, and when a write is performed, the value is written to TXS.

**(4) Transmission control circuit**

This circuit performs transmit operation control such as the addition of a start bit, parity bit and stop bit to data written in the transmit shift register (TXS) in accordance with the contents set in the asynchronous serial interface mode register (ASIM).

**(5) Reception control circuit**

This circuit controls receive operations in accordance with the contents set in the asynchronous serial interface mode register (ASIM). It performs error checks for parity errors, etc., during a receive operation, and if an error is detected, sets a value in the asynchronous serial interface status register (ASIS) in accordance with the error contents.

### 11.3 Serial Interface Channel 2 Control Registers

Serial interface channel 2 is controlled by the following four registers.

- Serial Operating Mode Register 2 (CSIM2)
- Asynchronous Serial Interface Mode Register (ASIM)
- Asynchronous Serial Interface Status Register (ASIS)
- Baud Rate Generator Control Register (BRGC)

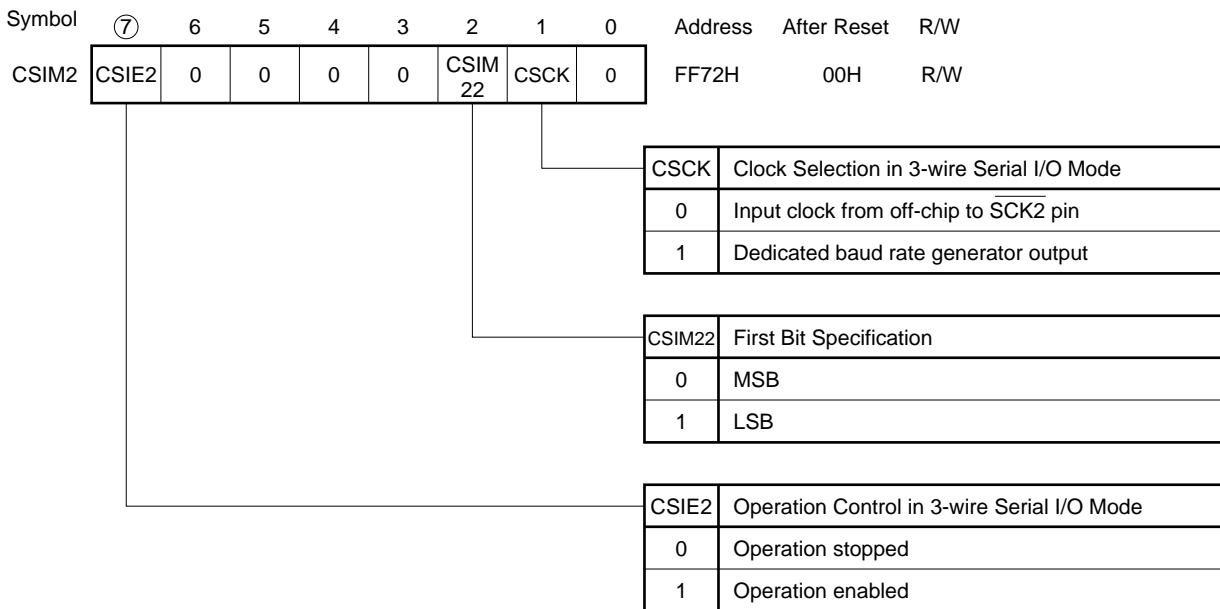
#### (1) Serial operating mode register 2 (CSIM2)

This register is set when serial interface channel 2 is used in the 3-wire serial I/O mode.

CSIM2 is set with a 1-bit or 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

RESET input sets CSIM2 to 00H.

Figure 11-3. Serial Operating Mode Register 2 Format

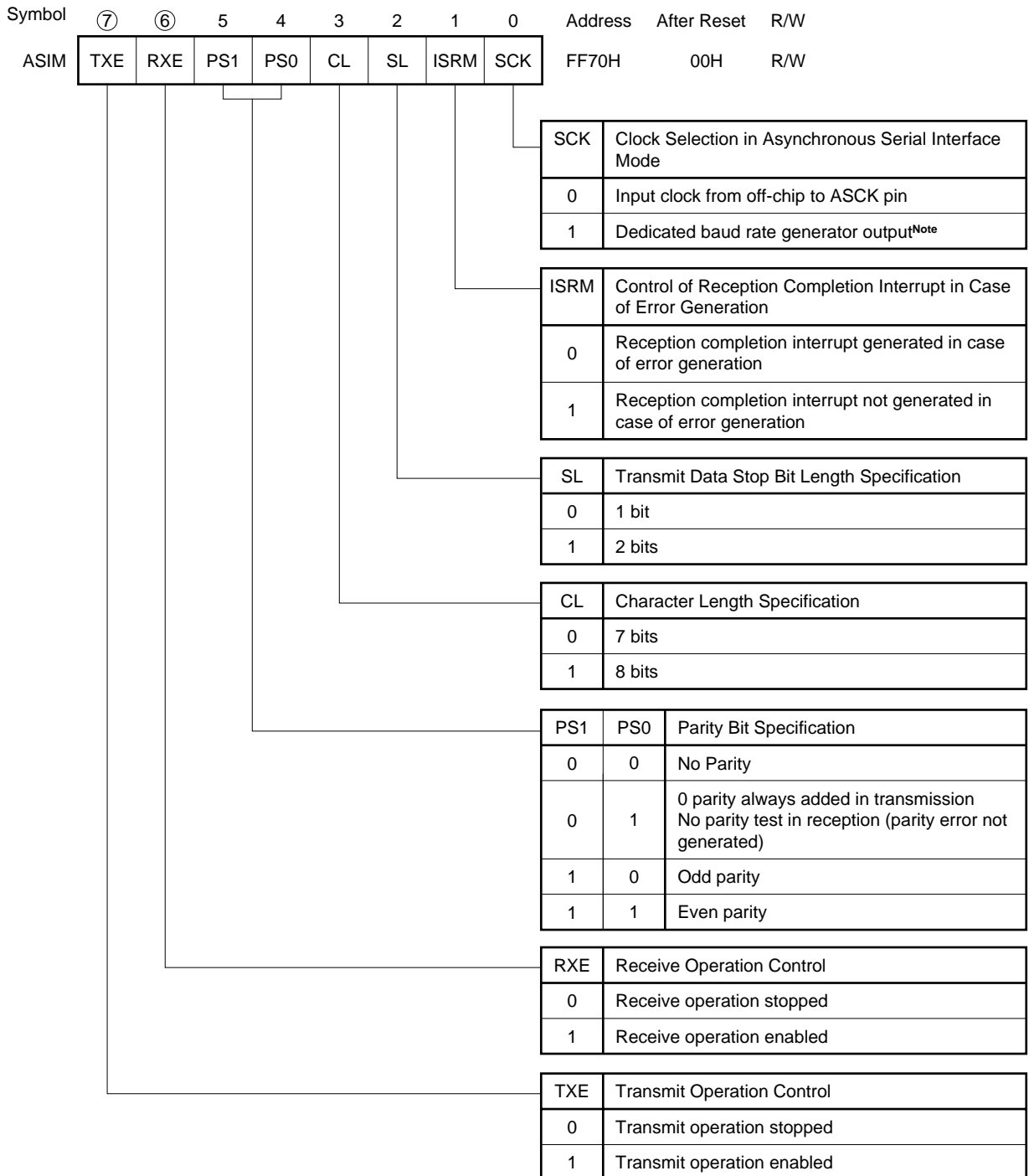


- Cautions**
1. Set 0 to the bits 0 and 3 to 6.
  2. When UART mode is selected, CSIM2 should be set to 00H.

**(2) Asynchronous serial interface mode register (ASIM)**

This register is set when serial interface channel 2 is used in the asynchronous serial interface mode. ASIM is set with a 1-bit or 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.  $\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input sets ASIM to 00H.

**Figure 11-4. Asynchronous Serial Interface Mode Register Format**



**Note** When SCK is set to 1 and the baud rate generator output is selected, the ASCK pin can be used as an input/output port.

- Cautions**
1. When the 3-wire serial I/O mode is selected, 00H should be set in ASIM.
  2. The serial transmit/receive operation must be stopped before changing the operating mode.

Table 11-2. Serial Interface Channel 2 Operating Mode Settings

(1) Operation Stop Mode

| ASIM             |     |     | CSIM2 |        |      | PM70               | P70                | PM71               | P71                | PM72               | P72                | Start Bit          | Shift Clock | P70/SI2 /RxD Pin Functions | P71/SO2 /TxD Pin Functions | P72/SCK2 /ASCK Pin Functions |
|------------------|-----|-----|-------|--------|------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|-------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|------------------------------|
| TXE              | RXE | SCK | CSIE2 | CSIM22 | CSCK |                    |                    |                    |                    |                    |                    |                    |             |                            |                            |                              |
| 0                | 0   | x   | 0     | x      | x    | x <sup>Note1</sup> | x <sup>Note1</sup> | x <sup>Note1</sup> | x <sup>Note1</sup> | x <sup>Note1</sup> | x <sup>Note1</sup> | —                  | —           | P70                        | P71                        | P72                          |
| Other than above |     |     |       |        |      |                    |                    |                    |                    |                    |                    | Setting prohibited |             |                            |                            |                              |

(2) 3-wire Serial I/O Mode

| ASIM             |     |     | CSIM2 |        |      | PM70               | P70                | PM71 | P71 | PM72 | P72 | Start Bit          | Shift Clock    | P70/SI2 /RxD Pin Functions | P71/SO2 /TxD Pin Functions | P72/SCK2 /ASCK Pin Functions |            |
|------------------|-----|-----|-------|--------|------|--------------------|--------------------|------|-----|------|-----|--------------------|----------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|------------------------------|------------|
| TXE              | RXE | SCK | CSIE2 | CSIM22 | CSCK |                    |                    |      |     |      |     |                    |                |                            |                            |                              |            |
| 0                | 0   | 0   | 1     | 0      | 0    | 1 <sup>Note2</sup> | x <sup>Note2</sup> | 0    | 1   | 1    | x   | MSB                | External clock | SI2 <sup>Note2</sup>       | SO2 (CMOS output)          | SCK2 input                   |            |
|                  |     |     |       |        | 1    |                    |                    |      |     | 0    | 1   |                    | Internal clock |                            |                            | SCK2 output                  |            |
|                  |     |     | 1     | 1      | 0    |                    |                    |      |     | 1    | x   |                    | LSB            |                            |                            | External clock               | SCK2 input |
|                  |     |     |       |        |      |                    |                    |      |     |      |     |                    |                |                            |                            | 1                            | 0          |
| Other than above |     |     |       |        |      |                    |                    |      |     |      |     | Setting prohibited |                |                            |                            |                              |            |

(3) Asynchronous Serial Interface Mode

| ASIM             |     |     | CSIM2 |        |      | PM70               | P70                | PM71               | P71                | PM72 | P72 | Start Bit          | Shift Clock        | P70/SI2 /RxD Pin Functions | P71/SO2 /TxD Pin Functions | P72/SCK2 /ASCK Pin Functions |
|------------------|-----|-----|-------|--------|------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|------|-----|--------------------|--------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|------------------------------|
| TXE              | RXE | SCK | CSIE2 | CSIM22 | CSCK |                    |                    |                    |                    |      |     |                    |                    |                            |                            |                              |
| 1                | 0   | 0   | 0     | 0      | 0    | x <sup>Note1</sup> | x <sup>Note1</sup> | 0                  | 1                  | 1    | x   | LSB                | External clock     | P70                        | TxD (CMOS output)          | ASCK input                   |
|                  |     | 1   |       |        |      |                    |                    |                    |                    |      |     |                    | x <sup>Note1</sup> |                            |                            | x <sup>Note1</sup>           |
| 0                | 1   | 0   | 0     | 0      | 0    | 1                  | x                  | x <sup>Note1</sup> | x <sup>Note1</sup> | 1    | x   |                    | External clock     | RxD                        | P71                        | ASCK input                   |
|                  |     | 1   |       |        |      |                    |                    |                    |                    |      |     |                    | x <sup>Note1</sup> |                            |                            | x <sup>Note1</sup>           |
| 1                | 1   | 0   | 0     | 0      | 0    | 1                  | x                  | 0                  | 1                  | 1    | x   | External clock     | TxD (CMOS output)  | ASCK input                 |                            |                              |
|                  |     | 1   |       |        |      |                    |                    |                    |                    |      |     | x <sup>Note1</sup> |                    |                            | x <sup>Note1</sup>         | Internal clock               |
| Other than above |     |     |       |        |      |                    |                    |                    |                    |      |     | Setting prohibited |                    |                            |                            |                              |

- Notes**
1. Can be used freely as port function.
  2. Can be used as P70 (CMOS input/output) when only transmitter is used.

**Remark** × : Don't care  
 PMxx : Port mode register  
 Pxx : Port output latch

**(3) Asynchronous serial interface status register (ASIS)**

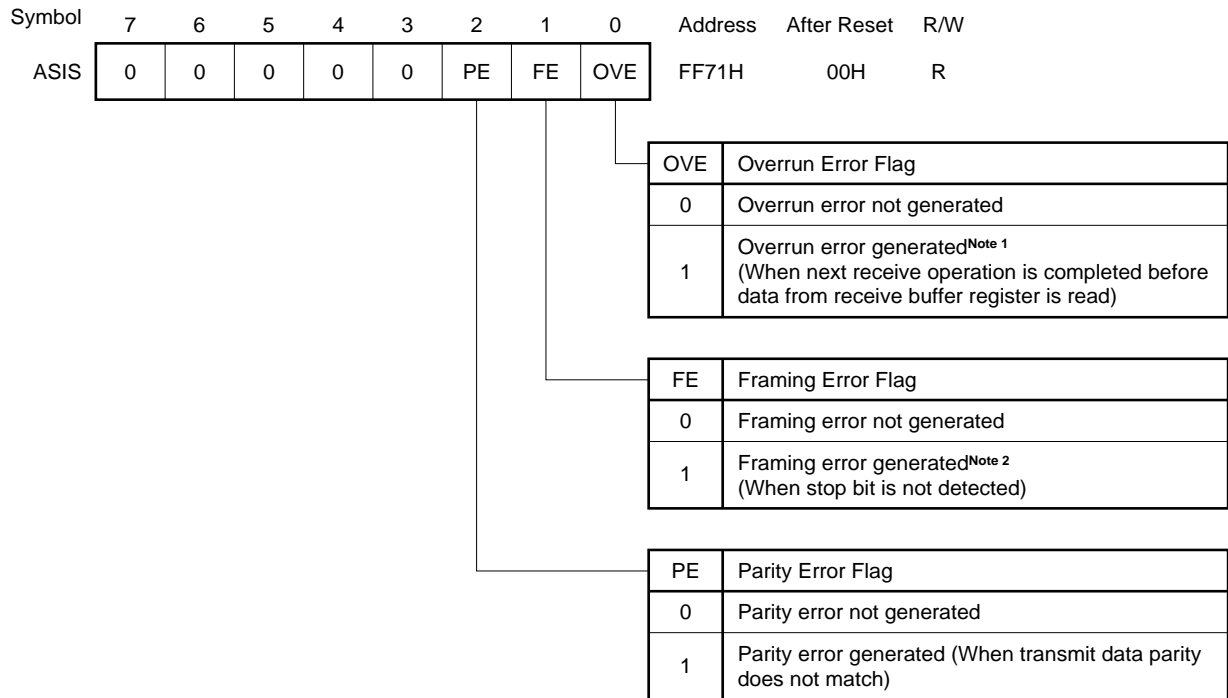
This is a register which displays the type of error when a reception error is generated in the asynchronous serial interface mode.

ASIS is read with a 1-bit or 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

In 3-wire serial I/O mode, the contents of the ASIS are undefined.

$\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input sets ASIS to 00H.

**Figure 11-5. Asynchronous Serial Interface Status Register Format**



- Notes**
1. The receive buffer register (RXB) must be read when an overrun error is generated. Overrun errors will continue to be generated until RXB is read.
  2. Even if the stop bit length has been set as 2 bits by bit 2 (SL) of the asynchronous serial interface mode register (ASIM), only single stop bit detection is performed during reception.

**(4) Baud rate generator control register (BRGC)**

This register sets the serial clock for serial interface channel 2.

BRGC is set with an 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

RESET input sets BRGC to 00H.

**Figure 11-6. Baud Rate Generator Control Register Format (1/2)**

|        |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |         |             |     |
|--------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|---------|-------------|-----|
| Symbol | 7    | 6    | 5    | 4    | 3    | 2    | 1    | 0    | Address | After Reset | R/W |
| BRGC   | TPS3 | TPS2 | TPS1 | TPS0 | MDL3 | MDL2 | MDL1 | MDL0 | FF73H   | 00H         | R/W |

| MDL3 | MDL2 | MDL1 | MDL0 | Baud Rate Generator Input Clock Selection | k  |
|------|------|------|------|---|----|
| 0    | 0    | 0    | 0    | f <sub>sck</sub> /16                      | 0  |
| 0    | 0    | 0    | 1    | f <sub>sck</sub> /17                      | 1  |
| 0    | 0    | 1    | 0    | f <sub>sck</sub> /18                      | 2  |
| 0    | 0    | 1    | 1    | f <sub>sck</sub> /19                      | 3  |
| 0    | 1    | 0    | 0    | f <sub>sck</sub> /20                      | 4  |
| 0    | 1    | 0    | 1    | f <sub>sck</sub> /21                      | 5  |
| 0    | 1    | 1    | 0    | f <sub>sck</sub> /22                      | 6  |
| 0    | 1    | 1    | 1    | f <sub>sck</sub> /23                      | 7  |
| 1    | 0    | 0    | 0    | f <sub>sck</sub> /24                      | 8  |
| 1    | 0    | 0    | 1    | f <sub>sck</sub> /25                      | 9  |
| 1    | 0    | 1    | 0    | f <sub>sck</sub> /26                      | 10 |
| 1    | 0    | 1    | 1    | f <sub>sck</sub> /27                      | 11 |
| 1    | 1    | 0    | 0    | f <sub>sck</sub> /28                      | 12 |
| 1    | 1    | 0    | 1    | f <sub>sck</sub> /29                      | 13 |
| 1    | 1    | 1    | 0    | f <sub>sck</sub> /30                      | 14 |
| 1    | 1    | 1    | 1    | f <sub>sck</sub> <sup>Note</sup>          | —  |

**Note** Can only be used in 3-wire serial I/O mode.

- Remarks**
1. f<sub>sck</sub> : 5-bit counter source clock
  2. k : Value set in MDL0 to MDL3 (0 ≤ k ≤ 14)

Figure 11-6. Baud Rate Generator Control Register Format (2/2)

| TPS3             | TPS2 | TPS1 | TPS0 | 5-Bit Counter Source Clock Selection |                           |              |            | n  |
|------------------|------|------|------|--------------------------------------|---------------------------|--------------|------------|----|
|                  |      |      |      | MCS=1                                |                           | MCS=0        |            |    |
| 0                | 0    | 0    | 0    | $f_{xx}/2^{10}$                      | $f_{xx}/2^{10}$ (4.9 kHz) | $f_x/2^{11}$ | (2.4 kHz)  | 11 |
| 0                | 1    | 0    | 1    | $f_{xx}$                             | $f_x$ (5.0 MHz)           | $f_x/2$      | (2.5 MHz)  | 1  |
| 0                | 1    | 1    | 0    | $f_{xx}/2$                           | $f_x/2$ (2.5 MHz)         | $f_x/2^2$    | (1.25 MHz) | 2  |
| 0                | 1    | 1    | 1    | $f_{xx}/2^2$                         | $f_x/2^2$ (1.25 MHz)      | $f_x/2^3$    | (625 kHz)  | 3  |
| 1                | 0    | 0    | 0    | $f_{xx}/2^3$                         | $f_x/2^3$ (625 kHz)       | $f_x/2^4$    | (313 kHz)  | 4  |
| 1                | 0    | 0    | 1    | $f_{xx}/2^4$                         | $f_x/2^4$ (313 kHz)       | $f_x/2^5$    | (156 kHz)  | 5  |
| 1                | 0    | 1    | 0    | $f_{xx}/2^5$                         | $f_x/2^5$ (156 kHz)       | $f_x/2^6$    | (78.1 kHz) | 6  |
| 1                | 0    | 1    | 1    | $f_{xx}/2^6$                         | $f_x/2^6$ (78.1 kHz)      | $f_x/2^7$    | (39.1 kHz) | 7  |
| 1                | 1    | 0    | 0    | $f_{xx}/2^7$                         | $f_x/2^7$ (39.1 kHz)      | $f_x/2^8$    | (19.5 kHz) | 8  |
| 1                | 1    | 0    | 1    | $f_{xx}/2^8$                         | $f_x/2^8$ (19.5 kHz)      | $f_x/2^9$    | (9.8 kHz)  | 9  |
| 1                | 1    | 1    | 0    | $f_{xx}/2^9$                         | $f_x/2^9$ (9.8 kHz)       | $f_x/2^{10}$ | (4.9 kHz)  | 10 |
| Other than above |      |      |      | Setting prohibited                   |                           |              |            |    |

**Caution** When a write is performed to BRGC during a communication operation, baud rate generator output is disrupted and communication cannot be performed normally. Therefore, BRGC must not be written to during a communication operation.

- Remarks**
1.  $f_x$  : Main system clock oscillation frequency
  2.  $f_{xx}$  : Main system clock frequency ( $f_x$  or  $f_x/2$ )
  3. MCS : Oscillation mode selection register (OSMS) bit 0
  4. n : Value set in TPS0 to TPS3 ( $1 \leq n \leq 11$ )
  5. Values in parentheses when operated at  $f_x=5.0$  MHz



The baud rate transmit/receive clock generated is either a signal scaled from the main system clock, or a signal scaled from the clock input from the ASCK pin.

**(a) Generation of baud rate transmit/receive clock by means of main system clock**

The transmit/receive clocks generated by scaling the main system clock. The baud rate generated from the main system clock is found from the following expression.

$$[\text{Baud rate}] = \frac{f_{xx}}{2^n \times (k+16)} \text{ [Hz]}$$

- where,
- $f_x$  : Main system clock oscillation frequency
  - $f_{xx}$  : Main system clock frequency ( $f_x$  or  $f_x/2$ )
  - $n$  : Value set in TPS0 to TPS3 ( $1 \leq n \leq 11$ )
  - $k$  : Value set in MDL0 to MDL3 ( $0 \leq k \leq 14$ )

**Table 11-3. Relation between Main System Clock and Baud Rate**

| Baud Rate (bps) | fx=5.0 MHz     |           |                |           | fx=4.19 MHz    |           |                |           |
|-----------------|----------------|-----------|----------------|-----------|----------------|-----------|----------------|-----------|
|                 | MCS=1          |           | MCS=0          |           | MCS=1          |           | MCS=0          |           |
|                 | BRGC Set Value | Error (%) | BRGC Set Value | Error (%) | BRGC Set Value | Error (%) | BRGC Set Value | Error (%) |
| 75              | —              |           | 00H            | 1.73      | 0BH            | 1.14      | EBH            | 1.14      |
| 110             | 06H            | 0.88      | E6H            | 0.88      | 03H            | -2.01     | E3H            | -2.01     |
| 150             | 00H            | 1.73      | E0H            | 1.73      | EBH            | 1.14      | DBH            | 1.14      |
| 300             | E0H            | 1.73      | D0H            | 1.73      | DBH            | 1.14      | CBH            | 1.14      |
| 600             | D0H            | 1.73      | C0H            | 1.73      | CBH            | 1.14      | BBH            | 1.14      |
| 1200            | C0H            | 1.73      | B0H            | 1.73      | BBH            | 1.14      | ABH            | 1.14      |
| 2400            | B0H            | 1.73      | A0H            | 1.73      | ABH            | 1.14      | 9BH            | 1.14      |
| 4800            | A0H            | 1.73      | 90H            | 1.73      | 9BH            | 1.14      | 8BH            | 1.14      |
| 9600            | 90H            | 1.73      | 80H            | 1.73      | 8BH            | 1.14      | 7BH            | 1.14      |
| 19200           | 80H            | 1.73      | 70H            | 1.73      | 7BH            | 1.14      | 6BH            | 1.14      |
| 31250           | 74H            | 0         | 64H            | 0         | 71H            | -1.31     | 61H            | -1.31     |
| 38400           | 70H            | 1.73      | 60H            | 1.73      | 6BH            | 1.14      | 5BH            | 1.14      |
| 76800           | 60H            | 1.73      | 50H            | 1.73      | 5BH            | 1.14      | —              | —         |

**Remark** MCS: Oscillation mode selection register (OSMS) bit 0

**(b) Generation of baud rate transmit/receive clock by means of external clock from ASCK pin**

The transmit/receive clock is generated by scaling the clock input from the ASCK pin. The baud rate generated from the clock input from the ASCK pin is obtained with the following expression.

$$[\text{Baud rate}] = \frac{f_{\text{ASCK}}}{2 \times (k+16)} \text{ [Hz]}$$

where,  $f_{\text{ASCK}}$  : Frequency of clock input to ASCK pin  
 $k$  : Value set in MDL0 to MDL3 ( $0 \leq k \leq 14$ )

**Table 11-4. Relation between ASCK Pin Input Frequency and Baud Rate (When BRGC is set to 00H)**

| Baud Rate (bps) | ASCK Pin Input Frequency |
|-----------------|--------------------------|
| 75              | 2.4 kHz                  |
| 110             | 3.52 kHz                 |
| 150             | 4.8 kHz                  |
| 300             | 9.6 kHz                  |
| 600             | 19.2 kHz                 |
| 1200            | 38.4 kHz                 |
| 2400            | 76.8 kHz                 |
| 4800            | 153.6 kHz                |
| 9600            | 307.2 kHz                |
| 19200           | 614.4 kHz                |
| 31250           | 1000.0 kHz               |
| 38400           | 1228.8 kHz               |

## 11.4 Serial Interface Channel 2 Operation

Serial interface channel 2 has the following three modes.

- Operation stop mode
- Asynchronous serial interface (UART) mode
- 3-wire serial I/O mode

### 11.4.1 Operation stop mode

In the operation stop mode, serial transfer is not performed, and therefore power consumption can be reduced.

In the operation stop mode, the P70/SI2/RxD, P71/SO2/TxD and P72/ $\overline{\text{SCK2}}$ /ASCK pins can be used as normal input/output ports.

#### (1) Register setting

Operation stop mode settings are performed using serial operating mode register 2 (CSIM2) and the asynchronous serial interface mode register (ASIM).

##### (a) Serial operating mode register 2 (CSIM2)

CSIM2 is set with a 1-bit or 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

$\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input sets CSIM2 to 00H.

| Symbol | ⑦     | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2          | 1    | 0 | Address | After Reset | R/W |
|--------|-------|---|---|---|---|------------|------|---|---------|-------------|-----|
| CSIM2  | CSIE2 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | CSIM<br>22 | CSCK | 0 | FF72H   | 00H         | R/W |

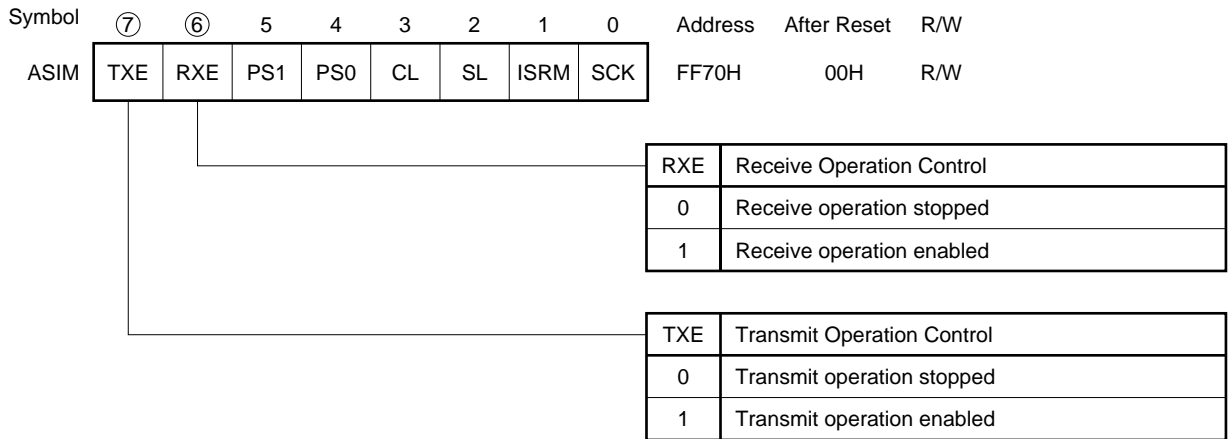
|       |   |
|-------|---|
| CSIE2 | Operation Control in 3-wire Serial I/O Mode |
| 0     | Operation stopped                           |
| 1     | Operation enabled                           |

**Caution** Set 0 to the bits 0 and 3 to 6.

**(b) Asynchronous serial interface mode register (ASIM)**

ASIM is set with a 1-bit or 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

RESET input sets ASIM to 00H.



**11.4.2 Asynchronous serial interface (UART) mode**

In this mode, one byte of data is transmitted/received following the start bit, and full-duplex operation is possible. A dedicated UART baud rate generator is incorporated, allowing communication over a wide range of baud rates. In addition, the baud rate can be defined by scaling the input clock to the ASCK pin. The MIDI standard baud rate (31.25 kbps) can be used by employing the dedicated UART baud rate generator.

**(1) Register setting**

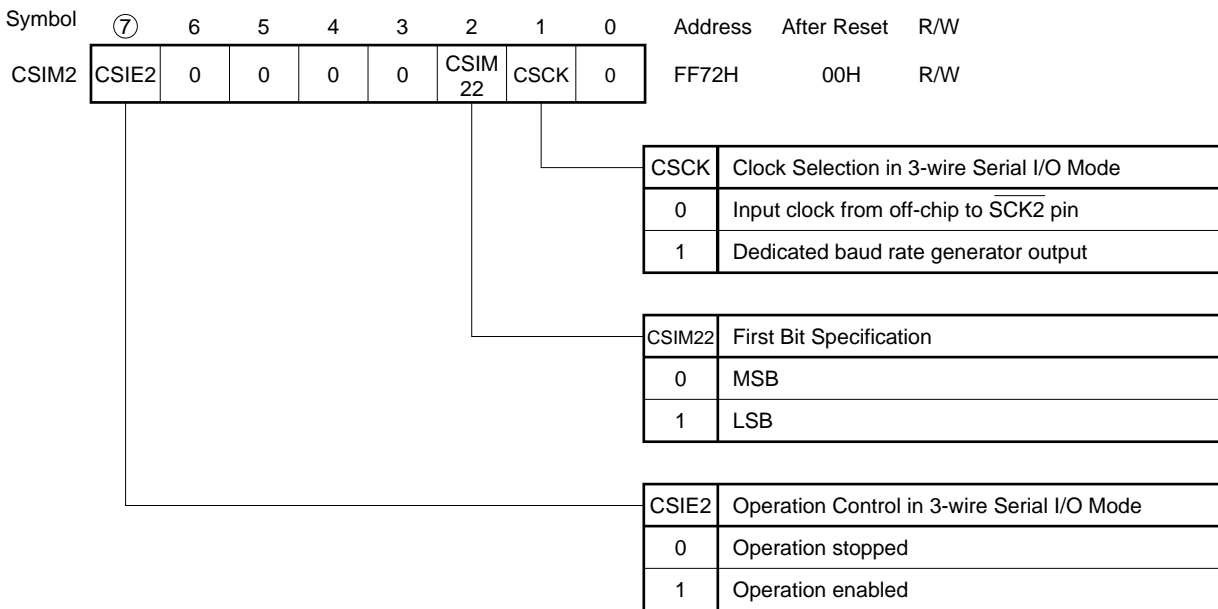
UART mode settings are performed using serial operating mode register 2 (CSIM2), the asynchronous serial interface mode register (ASIM), the asynchronous serial interface status register (ASIS), and the baud rate generator control register (BRGC).

**(a) Serial operating mode register 2 (CSIM2)**

CSIM2 is set with a 1-bit or 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

RESET input sets CSIM2 to 00H.

When the UART mode is selected, 00H should be set in CSIM2.

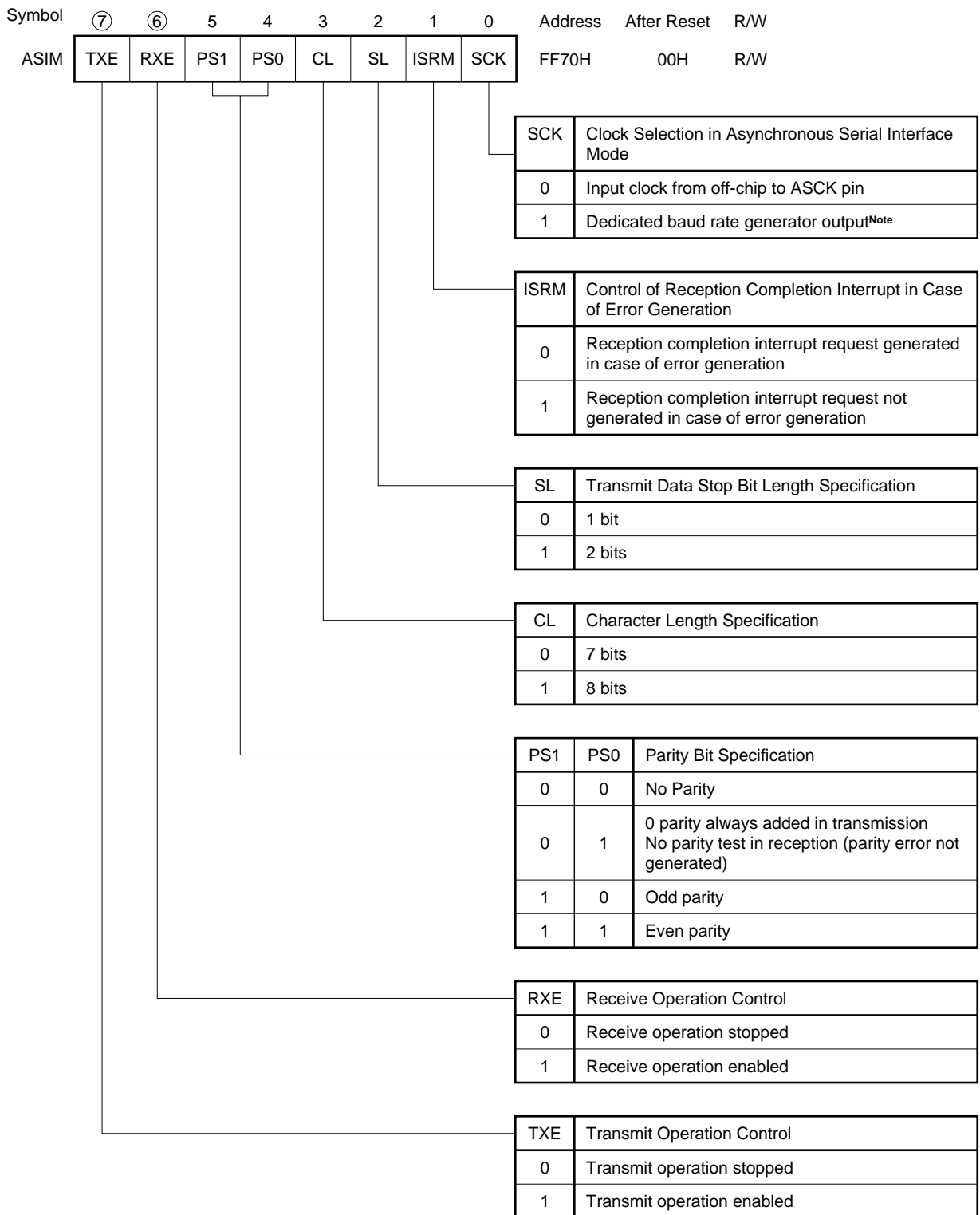


**Caution** Set 0 to the bits 0 and 3 to 6.

**(b) Asynchronous serial interface mode register (ASIM)**

ASIM is set with a 1-bit or 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

RESET input sets ASIM to 00H.



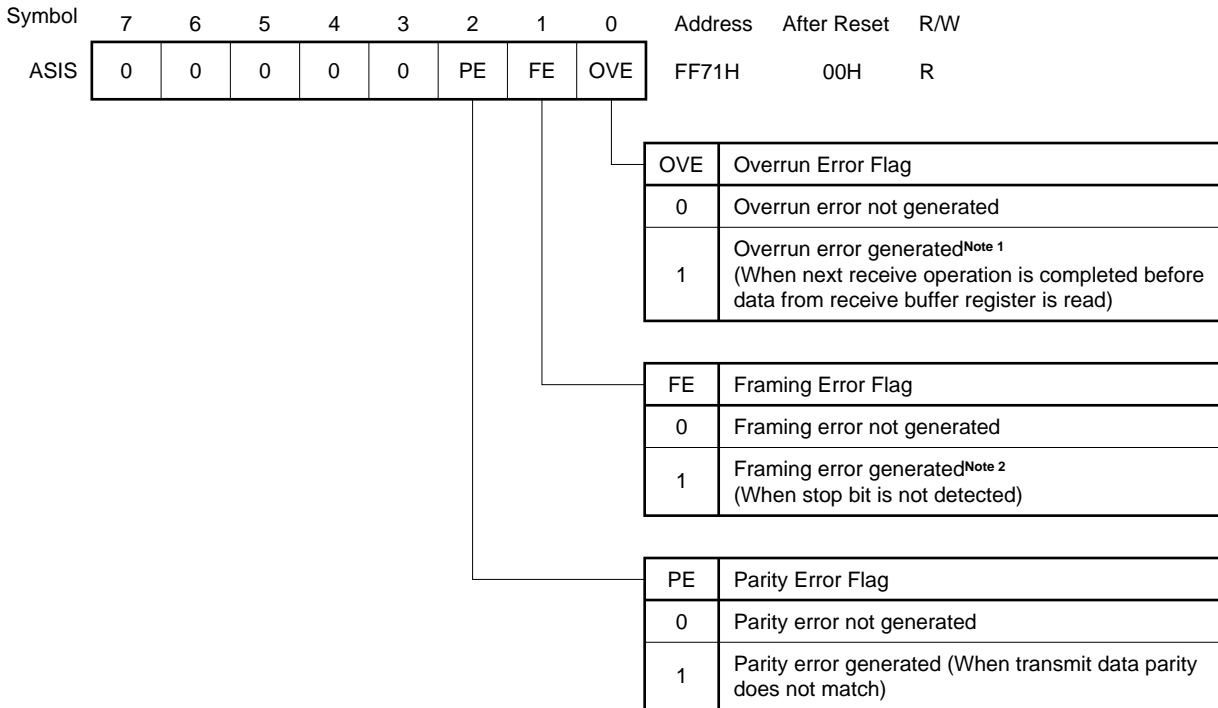
**Note** When SCK is set to 1 and the baud rate generator output is selected, the ASCK pin can be used as an input/output port.

**Caution** The serial transmit/receive operation must be stopped before changing the operating mode.

**(c) Asynchronous serial interface status register (ASIS)**

ASIS is set with a 1-bit or 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

$\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input sets ASIS to 00H.



- Notes**
1. The receive buffer register (RXB) must be read when an overrun error is generated. Overrun errors will continue to be generated until RXB is read.
  2. Even if the stop bit length has been set as 2 bits by bit 2 (SL) of the asynchronous serial interface mode register (ASIM), only single stop bit detection is performed during reception.

**(d) Baud rate generator control register (BRGC)**

BRGC is set with an 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

$\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input sets BRGC to 00H.

|        |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |         |             |     |
|--------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|---------|-------------|-----|
| Symbol | 7    | 6    | 5    | 4    | 3    | 2    | 1    | 0    | Address | After Reset | R/W |
| BRGC   | TPS3 | TPS2 | TPS1 | TPS0 | MDL3 | MDL2 | MDL1 | MDL0 | FF73H   | 00H         | R/W |

| MDL3 | MDL2 | MDL1 | MDL0 | Baud Rate Generator Input Clock Selection | k  |
|------|------|------|------|---|----|
| 0    | 0    | 0    | 0    | f <sub>sck</sub> /16                      | 0  |
| 0    | 0    | 0    | 1    | f <sub>sck</sub> /17                      | 1  |
| 0    | 0    | 1    | 0    | f <sub>sck</sub> /18                      | 2  |
| 0    | 0    | 1    | 1    | f <sub>sck</sub> /19                      | 3  |
| 0    | 1    | 0    | 0    | f <sub>sck</sub> /20                      | 4  |
| 0    | 1    | 0    | 1    | f <sub>sck</sub> /21                      | 5  |
| 0    | 1    | 1    | 0    | f <sub>sck</sub> /22                      | 6  |
| 0    | 1    | 1    | 1    | f <sub>sck</sub> /23                      | 7  |
| 1    | 0    | 0    | 0    | f <sub>sck</sub> /24                      | 8  |
| 1    | 0    | 0    | 1    | f <sub>sck</sub> /25                      | 9  |
| 1    | 0    | 1    | 0    | f <sub>sck</sub> /26                      | 10 |
| 1    | 0    | 1    | 1    | f <sub>sck</sub> /27                      | 11 |
| 1    | 1    | 0    | 0    | f <sub>sck</sub> /28                      | 12 |
| 1    | 1    | 0    | 1    | f <sub>sck</sub> /29                      | 13 |
| 1    | 1    | 1    | 0    | f <sub>sck</sub> /30                      | 14 |

(continued)

**Remark** f<sub>sck</sub> : 5-bit counter source clock  
 k : Value set in MDL0 to MDL3 (0 ≤ k ≤ 14)



| TPS3             | TPS2 | TPS1 | TPS0 | 5-Bit Counter Source Clock Selection |                        |                        |    | n |
|------------------|------|------|------|--------------------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|----|---|
|                  |      |      |      | MCS=1                                |                        | MCS=0                  |    |   |
| 0                | 0    | 0    | 0    | $f_{xx}/2^{10}$                      | $f_x/2^{10}$ (4.9 kHz) | $f_x/2^{11}$ (2.4 kHz) | 11 |   |
| 0                | 1    | 0    | 1    | $f_{xx}$                             | $f_x$ (5.0 MHz)        | $f_x/2$ (2.5 MHz)      | 1  |   |
| 0                | 1    | 1    | 0    | $f_{xx}/2$                           | $f_x/2$ (2.5 MHz)      | $f_x/2^2$ (1.25 MHz)   | 2  |   |
| 0                | 1    | 1    | 1    | $f_{xx}/2^2$                         | $f_x/2^2$ (1.25 MHz)   | $f_x/2^3$ (625 kHz)    | 3  |   |
| 1                | 0    | 0    | 0    | $f_{xx}/2^3$                         | $f_x/2^3$ (625 kHz)    | $f_x/2^4$ (313 kHz)    | 4  |   |
| 1                | 0    | 0    | 1    | $f_{xx}/2^4$                         | $f_x/2^4$ (313 kHz)    | $f_x/2^5$ (156 kHz)    | 5  |   |
| 1                | 0    | 1    | 0    | $f_{xx}/2^5$                         | $f_x/2^5$ (156 kHz)    | $f_x/2^6$ (78.1 kHz)   | 6  |   |
| 1                | 0    | 1    | 1    | $f_{xx}/2^6$                         | $f_x/2^6$ (78.1 kHz)   | $f_x/2^7$ (39.1 kHz)   | 7  |   |
| 1                | 1    | 0    | 0    | $f_{xx}/2^7$                         | $f_x/2^7$ (39.1 kHz)   | $f_x/2^8$ (19.5 kHz)   | 8  |   |
| 1                | 1    | 0    | 1    | $f_{xx}/2^8$                         | $f_x/2^8$ (19.5 kHz)   | $f_x/2^9$ (9.8 kHz)    | 9  |   |
| 1                | 1    | 1    | 0    | $f_{xx}/2^9$                         | $f_x/2^9$ (9.8 kHz)    | $f_x/2^{10}$ (4.9 kHz) | 10 |   |
| Other than above |      |      |      | Setting prohibited                   |                        |                        |    |   |

**Caution** When a write is performed to BRGC during a communication operation, baud rate generator output is disrupted and communication cannot be performed normally. Therefore, BRGC must not be written to during a communication operation.

- Remarks**
1.  $f_x$  : Main system clock oscillation frequency
  2.  $f_{xx}$  : Main system clock frequency ( $f_x$  or  $f_x/2$ )
  3. MCS : Oscillation mode selection register (OSMS) bit 0
  4. n : Value set in TPS0 to TPS3 ( $1 \leq n \leq 11$ )
  5. Values in parentheses when operated at  $f_x = 5.0$  MHz.

The baud rate transmit/receive clock generated is either a signal scaled from the main system clock, or a signal scaled from the clock input from the ASCK pin.

**(i) Generation of baud rate transmit/receive clock by means of main system clock**

The transmit/receive clock is generated by scaling the main system clock. The baud rate generated from the main system clock is obtained with the following expression.

$$[\text{Baud rate}] = \frac{f_{xx}}{2^n \times (k+16)} \text{ [Hz]}$$

- where,
- $f_x$  : Main system clock oscillation frequency
  - $f_{xx}$  : Main system clock frequency ( $f_x$  or  $f_x/2$ )
  - $n$  : Value set in TPS0 to TPS3 ( $1 \leq n \leq 11$ )
  - $k$  : Value set in MDL0 to MDL3 ( $0 \leq k \leq 14$ )

**Table 11-5. Relation between Main System Clock and Baud Rate**

| Baud Rate (bps) | fx=5.0 MHz     |           |                |           | fx=4.19 MHz    |           |                |           |
|-----------------|----------------|-----------|----------------|-----------|----------------|-----------|----------------|-----------|
|                 | MCS=1          |           | MCS=0          |           | MCS=1          |           | MCS=0          |           |
|                 | BRGC Set Value | Error (%) | BRGC Set Value | Error (%) | BRGC Set Value | Error (%) | BRGC Set Value | Error (%) |
| 75              | -              |           | 00H            | 1.73      | 0BH            | 1.14      | EBH            | 1.14      |
| 110             | 06H            | 0.88      | E6H            | 0.88      | 03H            | -2.01     | E3H            | -2.01     |
| 150             | 00H            | 1.73      | E0H            | 1.73      | EBH            | 1.14      | DBH            | 1.14      |
| 300             | E0H            | 1.73      | D0H            | 1.73      | DBH            | 1.14      | CBH            | 1.14      |
| 600             | D0H            | 1.73      | C0H            | 1.73      | CBH            | 1.14      | BBH            | 1.14      |
| 1200            | C0H            | 1.73      | B0H            | 1.73      | BBH            | 1.14      | ABH            | 1.14      |
| 2400            | B0H            | 1.73      | A0H            | 1.73      | ABH            | 1.14      | 9BH            | 1.14      |
| 4800            | A0H            | 1.73      | 90H            | 1.73      | 9BH            | 1.14      | 8BH            | 1.14      |
| 9600            | 90H            | 1.73      | 80H            | 1.73      | 8BH            | 1.14      | 7BH            | 1.14      |
| 19200           | 80H            | 1.73      | 70H            | 1.73      | 7BH            | 1.14      | 6BH            | 1.14      |
| 31250           | 74H            | 0         | 64H            | 0         | 71H            | -1.31     | 61H            | -1.31     |
| 38400           | 70H            | 1.73      | 60H            | 1.73      | 6BH            | 1.14      | 5BH            | 1.14      |
| 76800           | 60H            | 1.73      | 50H            | 1.73      | 5BH            | 1.14      | —              | —         |

★

**Remark** MCS: Oscillation mode selection register (OSMS) bit 0

**(ii) Generation of baud rate transmit/receive clock by means of external clock from ASCK pin**

The transmit/receive clock is generated by scaling the clock input from the ASCK pin. The baud rate generated from the clock input from the ASCK pin is obtained with the following expression.

$$[\text{Baud rate}] = \frac{f_{\text{ASCK}}}{2 \times (k+16)} \text{ [Hz]}$$

where,  $f_{\text{ASCK}}$  : Frequency of clock input to ASCK pin  
 $k$  : Value set in MDL0 to MDL3 ( $0 \leq k \leq 14$ )

**Table 11-6. Relation between ASCK Pin Input Frequency and Baud Rate (When BRGC is set to 00H)**

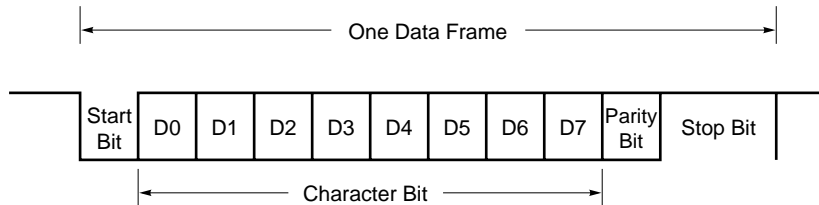
| Baud Rate (bps) | ASCK Pin Input Frequency |
|-----------------|--------------------------|
| 75              | 2.4 kHz                  |
| 110             | 3.52 kHz                 |
| 150             | 4.8 kHz                  |
| 300             | 9.6 kHz                  |
| 600             | 19.2 kHz                 |
| 1200            | 38.4 kHz                 |
| 2400            | 76.8 kHz                 |
| 4800            | 153.6 kHz                |
| 9600            | 307.2 kHz                |
| 19200           | 614.4 kHz                |
| 31250           | 1000.0 kHz               |
| 38400           | 1228.8 kHz               |

(2) Communication operation

(a) Data format

The transmit/receive data format is as shown in Figure 11-7.

Figure 11-7. Asynchronous Serial Interface Transmit/Receive Data Format



1 Data frame is configured from the following bits.

- Start bits ..... 1 bit
- Character bits ..... 7 bits/8 bits
- Parity bits ..... Even parity/odd parity/0 parity/no parity
- Stop bit(s) ..... 1 bit/2 bits

The specification of character bit length, parity selection, and specification of stop bit length for each data frame is carried out with asynchronous serial interface mode register (ASIM).

When 7 bits are selected as the number of character bits, only the lower 7 bits (bits 0 to 6) are valid; in transmission the most significant bit (bit 7) is ignored, and in reception the most significant bit (bit 7) is always "0".

The serial transfer rate is selected by means of the ASIM and the baud rate generator control register (BRGC).

If a serial data receive error is generated, the receive error contents can be determined by reading the status of the asynchronous serial interface status register (ASIS).

**(b) Parity types and operation**

The parity bit is used to detect a bit error in the communication data. Normally, the same kind of parity bit is used on the transmitting side and the receiving side. With even parity and odd parity, a one-bit (odd number) error can be detected. With 0 parity and no parity, an error cannot be detected.

**(i) Even parity****• Transmission**

The number of bits with a value of "1", including the parity bit, in the transmit data is controlled to be even.

The value of the parity bit is as follows:

Number of bits with a value of "1" in transmit data is odd: 1

Number of bits with a value of "1" in transmit data is even: 0

**• Reception**

The number of bits with a value of "1", including the parity bit, in the receive data is counted. If it is odd, a parity error occurs.

**(ii) Odd parity****• Transmission**

Conversely to the situation with even parity, the number of bits with a value of "1", including the parity bit, in the transmit data is controlled to be odd. The value of the parity bit is as follows:

Number of bits with a value of "1" in transmit data is odd: 0

Number of bits with a value of "1" in transmit data is even: 1

**• Reception**

The number of bits with a value of "1", including the parity bit, in the receive data is counted. If it is even, a parity error occurs.

**(iii) 0 Parity**

When transmitting, the parity bit is set to "0" irrespective of the transmit data.

At reception, a parity bit check is not performed. Therefore, a parity error is not generated, irrespective of whether the parity bit is set to "0" or "1".

**(iv) No parity**

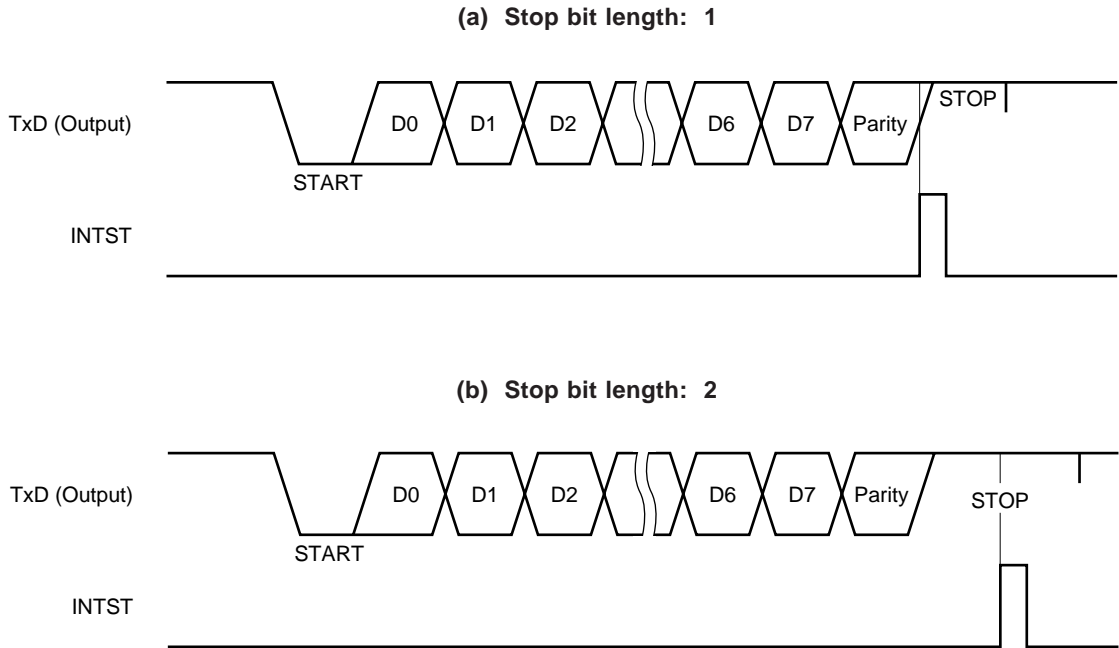
A parity bit is not added to the transmit data. At reception, data is received assuming that there is no parity bit. Since there is no parity bit, a parity error is not generated.

**(c) Transmission**

A transmit operation is started by writing transmit data to the transmit shift register (TXS). The start bit, parity bit and stop bit(s) are added automatically.

When the transmit operation starts, the data in the transmit shift register (TXS) is shifted out, and when the transmit shift register (TXS) is empty, a transmission completion interrupt request (INTST) is generated.

**Figure 11-8. Asynchronous Serial Interface Transmission Completion Interrupt Request Timing**



**Caution** Rewriting of the asynchronous serial interface mode register (ASIM) should not be performed during a transmit operation. If rewriting of the ASIM register is performed during transmission, subsequent transmit operations may not be possible (the normal state is restored by  $\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input).

It is possible to determine whether transmission is in progress by software by using a transmission completion interrupt request (INTST) or the interrupt request flag (STIF) set by the INTST.

**(d) Reception**

When the RXE bit of the asynchronous serial interface mode register (ASIM) is set (1), a receive operation is enabled and sampling of the RxD pin input is performed.

RxD pin input sampling is performed using the serial clock specified by ASIM.

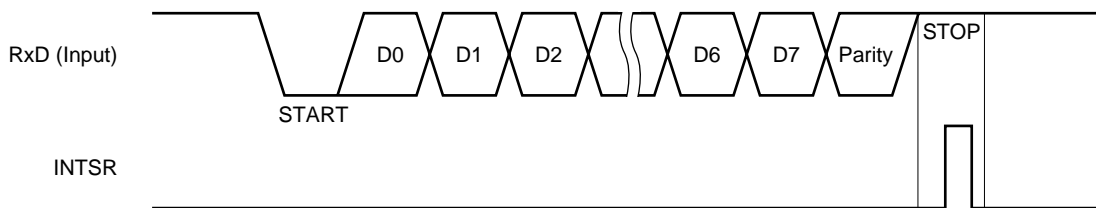
When the RxD pin input becomes low, the 5-bit counter of the baud rate generator (see Figure 11-2) starts counting, and at the time when the half time determined by specified baud rate has passed, the data sampling start timing signal is output. If the RxD pin input sampled again as a result of this start timing signal is low, it is identified as a start bit, the 5-bit counter is initialized and starts counting, and data sampling is performed. When character data, a parity bit and one stop bit are detected after the start bit, reception of one frame of data ends.

When one frame of data has been received, the receive data in the shift register is transferred to the receive buffer register (RXB), and a reception completion interrupt request (INTSR) is generated.

If an error is generated, the receive data in which the error was generated is still transferred to RXB, and INTSR is generated.

If the RXE bit is reset (0) during the receive operation, the receive operation is stopped immediately. In this case, the contents of RXB and ASIS are not changed, and INTSR and INTSER are not generated.

**Figure 11-9. Asynchronous Serial Interface Reception Completion Interrupt Request Timing**



**Caution** The receive buffer register (RXB) must be read even if a receive error is generated. If RXB is not read, an overrun error will be generated when the next data is received, and the receive error state will continue indefinitely.

(e) Receive errors

★

Three kinds of errors can occur during a receive operation: a parity error, framing error, or overrun error. When a data reception results error flag is set in the asynchronous serial interface register (ASIS), a reception error interrupt request (INTSER) is generated.

The reception error interrupt request is generated first before the reception completed interrupt request (INTSR). Receive error causes are shown in Table 11-7.

It is possible to determine what kind of error was generated during reception by reading the contents of the asynchronous serial interface status register (ASIS) in the reception error interrupt servicing (INTSER) (see **Figures 11-9** and **11-10**).

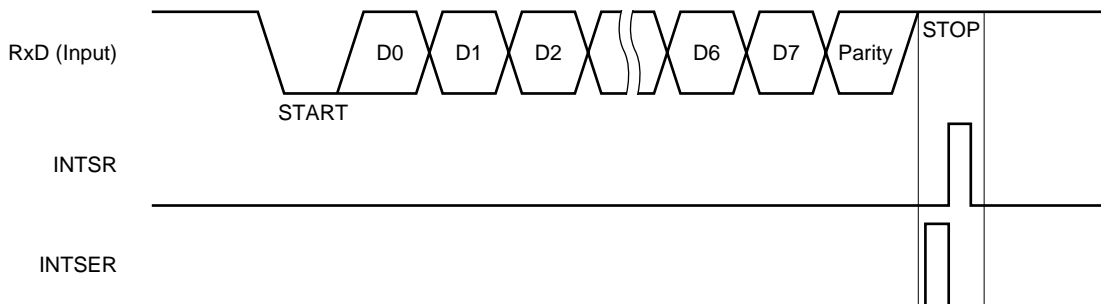
The contents of ASIS are reset (0) by reading the receive buffer register (RXB) or receiving the next data (if there is an error in the next data, the corresponding error flag is set).

**Table 11-7. Receive Error Causes**

| Receive Errors | Cause  |
|----------------|--|
| Parity error   | Transmission-time parity specification and reception data parity do not match        |
| Framing error  | Stop bit not detected  |
| Overrun error  | Reception of next data is completed before data is read from receive register buffer |

★

**Figure 11-10. Receive Error Timing**



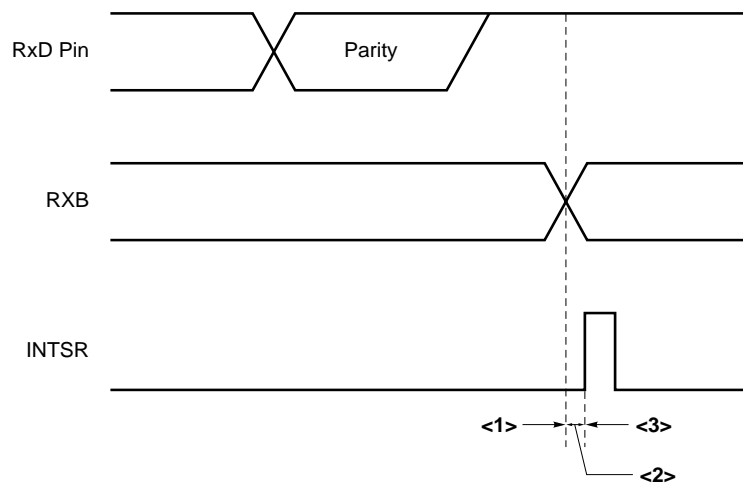
- Cautions**
1. The contents of the asynchronous serial interface status register (ASIS) are reset (0) by reading the receive buffer register (RXB) or receiving the next data. To ascertain the error contents, ASIS must be read before reading RXB.
  2. The receive buffer register (RXB) must be read even if a receive error is generated. If RXB is not read, an overrun error will be generated when the next data is received, and the receive error state will continue indefinitely.



**(3) UART mode cautions**

- (a) In cases where bit 7 (TXE) of the asynchronous serial interface mode register (ASIM) has been cleared and a transmit operation has been terminated during transmission, be sure to set 1 in TXE after setting FFH in the transmit shift register (TXS) before executing the next transmission.
- (b) In cases where bit 6 (RXE) of the asynchronous serial interface mode register (ASIM) has been cleared (0) and a receive operation terminated during reception, enable/disable will differ depending on the timing, the condition of the receive buffer register (RXB), and generation of the reception completed interrupt request (INTSR) . The timing is displayed in Figure 11-11.

**Figure 11-11 State of the Receive Buffer Register (RXB) when Reception is Interrupted, and Generation/ Non Generation of an Interrupt Request (INTSR)**



When RXE is set to 0 at a time indicated by <1>, RXB holds the previous data and does not generate INTSR.  
 When RXE is set to 0 at a time indicated by <2>, RXB renews the data and does not generate INTSR.  
 When RXE is set to 0 at a time indicated by <3>, RXB renews the data and generates INTSR.

**11.4.3 3-wire serial I/O mode**

The 3-wire serial I/O mode is useful for connection of peripheral I/Os and display controllers, etc., which incorporate a conventional synchronous clocked serial interface, such as the 75X/XL series, 78K series, 17K series, etc.

Communication is performed using three lines: the serial clock ( $\overline{SCK2}$ ), serial output (SO2), and serial input (SI2).

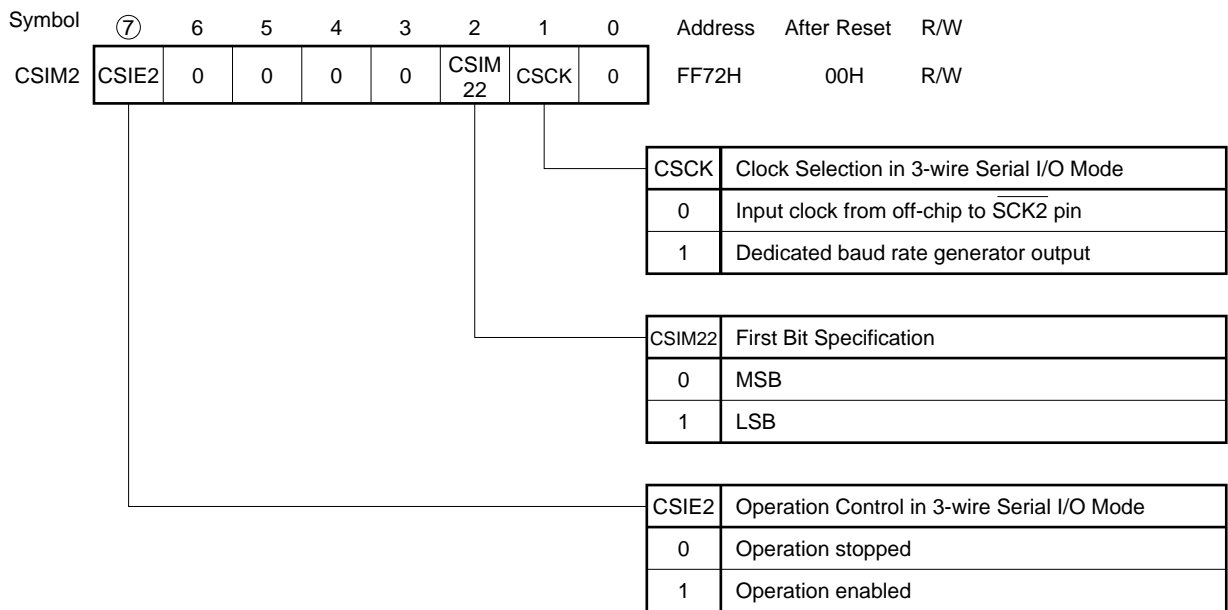
**(1) Register setting**

3-wire serial I/O mode settings are performed using serial operating mode register 2 (CSIM2), the asynchronous serial interface mode register (ASIM), and the baud rate generator control register (BRGC).

**(a) Serial operating mode register 2 (CSIM2)**

CSIM2 is set with a 1-bit or 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

$\overline{RESET}$  input sets CSIM2 to 00H.



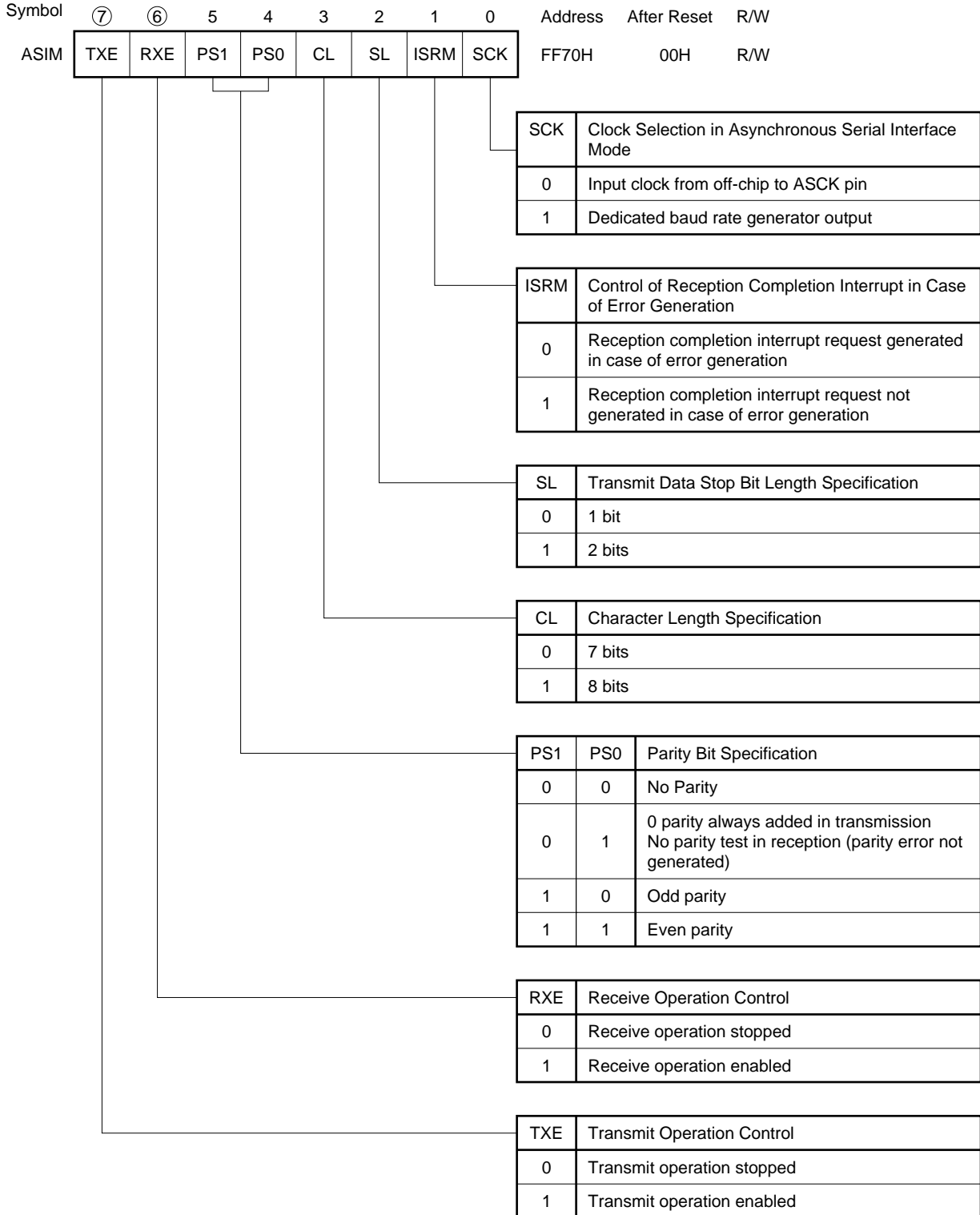
**Caution** Set 0 to the bits 0 and 3 to 6.

**(b) Asynchronous serial interface mode register (ASIM)**

ASIM is set with a 1-bit or 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

$\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input sets ASIM to 00H.

When the 3-wire serial I/O mode is selected, 00H should be set in ASIM.



★ (c) **Baud rate generator control register (BRGC)**

BRGC is set with an 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

RESET input sets BRGC to 00H.

|        |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |         |             |     |
|--------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|---------|-------------|-----|
| Symbol | 7    | 6    | 5    | 4    | 3    | 2    | 1    | 0    | Address | After Reset | R/W |
| BRGC   | TPS3 | TPS2 | TPS1 | TPS0 | MDL3 | MDL2 | MDL1 | MDL0 | FF73H   | 00H         | R/W |

| MDL3 | MDL2 | MDL1 | MDL0 | Baud Rate Generator Input Clock Selection | k  |
|------|------|------|------|---|----|
| 0    | 0    | 0    | 0    | f <sub>sck</sub> /16                      | 0  |
| 0    | 0    | 0    | 1    | f <sub>sck</sub> /17                      | 1  |
| 0    | 0    | 1    | 0    | f <sub>sck</sub> /18                      | 2  |
| 0    | 0    | 1    | 1    | f <sub>sck</sub> /19                      | 3  |
| 0    | 1    | 0    | 0    | f <sub>sck</sub> /20                      | 4  |
| 0    | 1    | 0    | 1    | f <sub>sck</sub> /21                      | 5  |
| 0    | 1    | 1    | 0    | f <sub>sck</sub> /22                      | 6  |
| 0    | 1    | 1    | 1    | f <sub>sck</sub> /23                      | 7  |
| 1    | 0    | 0    | 0    | f <sub>sck</sub> /24                      | 8  |
| 1    | 0    | 0    | 1    | f <sub>sck</sub> /25                      | 9  |
| 1    | 0    | 1    | 0    | f <sub>sck</sub> /26                      | 10 |
| 1    | 0    | 1    | 1    | f <sub>sck</sub> /27                      | 11 |
| 1    | 1    | 0    | 0    | f <sub>sck</sub> /28                      | 12 |
| 1    | 1    | 0    | 1    | f <sub>sck</sub> /29                      | 13 |
| 1    | 1    | 1    | 0    | f <sub>sck</sub> /30                      | 14 |
| 1    | 1    | 1    | 1    | f <sub>sck</sub>                          | —  |

(continued)

**Remark** f<sub>sck</sub> : 5-bit counter source clock  
 k : Value set in MDL0 to MDL3 (0 ≤ k ≤ 14)

| TPS3             | TPS2 | TPS1 | TPS0 | 5-Bit Counter Source Clock Selection |                        |                        |    | n |
|------------------|------|------|------|--------------------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|----|---|
|                  |      |      |      | MCS=1                                |                        | MCS=0                  |    |   |
| 0                | 0    | 0    | 0    | $f_{xx}/2^{10}$                      | $f_x/2^{10}$ (4.9 kHz) | $f_x/2^{11}$ (2.4 kHz) | 11 |   |
| 0                | 1    | 0    | 1    | $f_{xx}$                             | $f_x$ (5.0 MHz)        | $f_x/2$ (2.5 MHz)      | 1  |   |
| 0                | 1    | 1    | 0    | $f_{xx}/2$                           | $f_x/2$ (2.5 MHz)      | $f_x/2^2$ (1.25 MHz)   | 2  |   |
| 0                | 1    | 1    | 1    | $f_{xx}/2^2$                         | $f_x/2^2$ (1.25 MHz)   | $f_x/2^3$ (625 kHz)    | 3  |   |
| 1                | 0    | 0    | 0    | $f_{xx}/2^3$                         | $f_x/2^3$ (625 kHz)    | $f_x/2^4$ (313 kHz)    | 4  |   |
| 1                | 0    | 0    | 1    | $f_{xx}/2^4$                         | $f_x/2^4$ (313 kHz)    | $f_x/2^5$ (156 kHz)    | 5  |   |
| 1                | 0    | 1    | 0    | $f_{xx}/2^5$                         | $f_x/2^5$ (156 kHz)    | $f_x/2^6$ (78.1 kHz)   | 6  |   |
| 1                | 0    | 1    | 1    | $f_{xx}/2^6$                         | $f_x/2^6$ (78.1 kHz)   | $f_x/2^7$ (39.1 kHz)   | 7  |   |
| 1                | 1    | 0    | 0    | $f_{xx}/2^7$                         | $f_x/2^7$ (39.1 kHz)   | $f_x/2^8$ (19.5 kHz)   | 8  |   |
| 1                | 1    | 0    | 1    | $f_{xx}/2^8$                         | $f_x/2^8$ (19.5 kHz)   | $f_x/2^9$ (9.8 kHz)    | 9  |   |
| 1                | 1    | 1    | 0    | $f_{xx}/2^9$                         | $f_x/2^9$ (9.8 kHz)    | $f_x/2^{10}$ (4.9 kHz) | 10 |   |
| Other than above |      |      |      | Setting prohibited                   |                        |                        |    |   |

**Caution** When a write is performed to BRGC during a communication operation, baud rate generator output is disrupted and communication cannot be performed normally. Therefore, BRGC must not be written to during a communication operation.

- Remarks**
1.  $f_x$  : Main system clock oscillation frequency
  2.  $f_{xx}$  : Main system clock frequency ( $f_x$  or  $f_x/2$ )
  3. MCS : Oscillation mode selection register (OSMS) bit 0
  4. n : Value set in TPS0 to TPS3 ( $1 \leq n \leq 11$ )
  5. Values in parentheses when operated at  $f_x = 5.0$  MHz.

When the internal clock is used as the serial clock in the 3-wire serial I/O mode, set BRGC as described below. BRGC Setting is not required if an external serial clock is used.

**(i) When the baud rate generator is not used:**

Select a serial clock frequency with TPS0-TPS3. Be sure then to set MDL0 to MDL3 to 1,1,1,1. The serial clock frequency becomes the same as the source clock frequency for the 5-bit counter.

**(ii) When the baud rate generator is used:**

Select a serial clock frequency with TPS0-TPS3. Be sure then to set MDL0 to MDL3 to 1,1,1,1.

The serial clock frequency is calculated by the following formula:

$$\text{Serial clock frequency} = \frac{f_{xx}}{2^n \times (k + 16)} \text{ [Hz]}$$

- Remarks**
1.  $f_x$  : Main system clock oscillation frequency
  2.  $f_{xx}$  : Main system clock frequency ( $f_x$  or  $f_x/2$ )
  3.  $n$  : Value set in TPS0 to TPS3 ( $1 \leq n \leq 11$ )
  4.  $k$  : Value set in MDL0 to MDL3 ( $0 \leq k \leq 14$ )

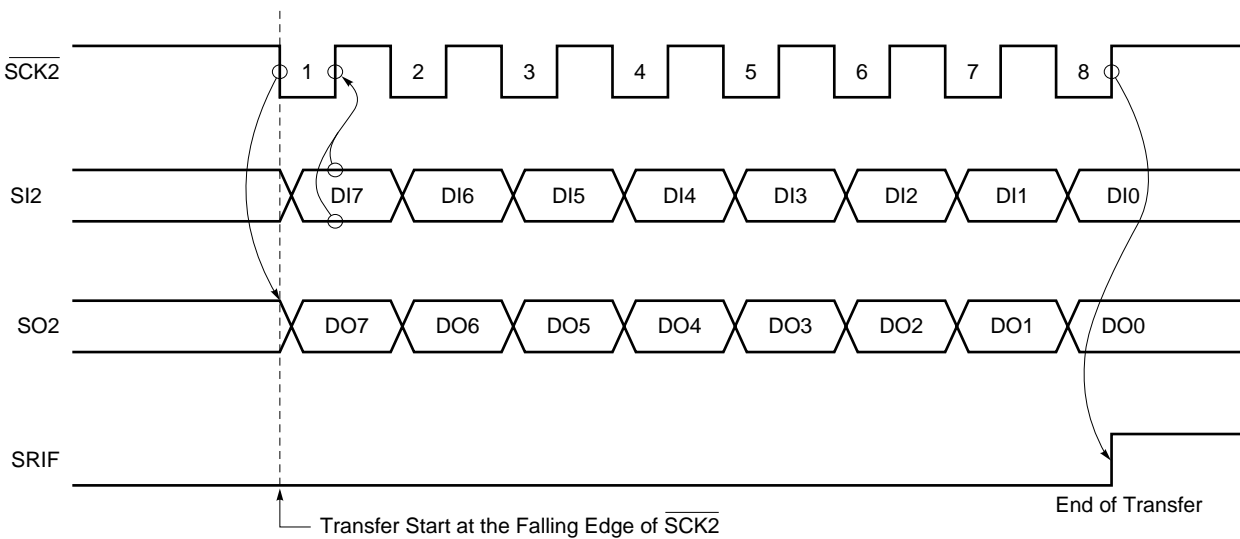
**(2) Communication operation**

In the 3-wire serial I/O mode, data transmission/reception is performed in 8-bit units. Data is transmitted/received bit by bit in synchronization with the serial clock.

Transmit shift register (TXS/SIO2) and receive shift register (RXS) shift operations are performed in synchronization with the fall of the serial clock  $\overline{SCK2}$ . Then transmit data is held in the SO2 latch and output from the SO2 pin. Also, receive data input to the SI2 pin is latched in the receive buffer register (RXB/SIO2) on the rise of  $\overline{SCK2}$ .

At the end of an 8-bit transfer, the operation of the TXS/SIO2 or RXS stops automatically, and the interrupt request flag (SRIF) is set.

**Figure 11-12. 3-Wire Serial I/O Mode Timing**



★ **(3) MSB/LSB switching as the start bit**

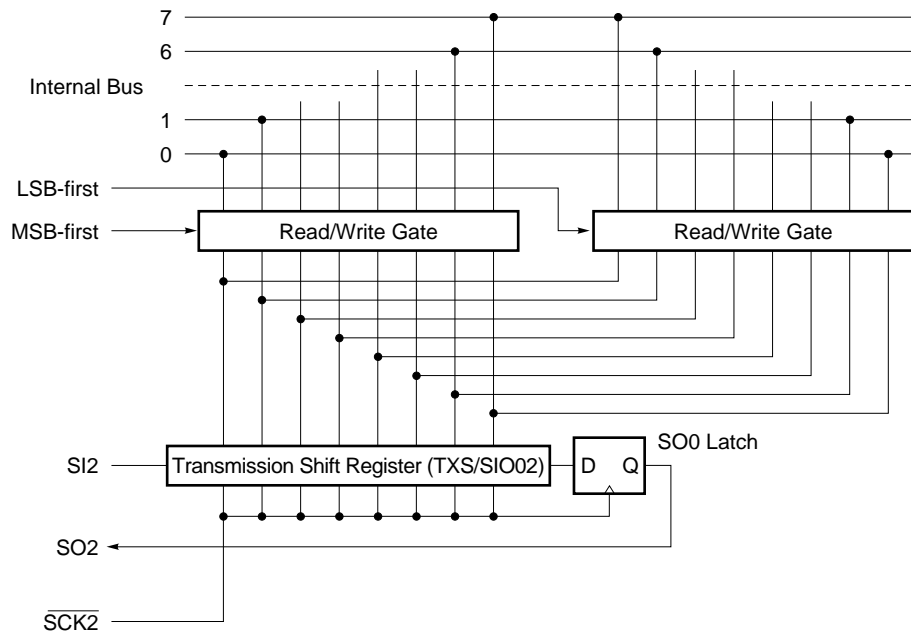
The 3-wire serial I/O mode enables to select transfer to start from MSB or LSB.

Figure 11-13 shows the configuration of the transmission shift register (TXS/SIO2) and internal bus. As shown in the figure, MSB/LSB can be read/written in reverse form.

MSB/LSB switching as the start bit can be specified with bit 2 (CSIM22) of the serial operating mode register 2 (CSIM2).

★

Figure 11-13. Circuit of Switching in Transfer Bit Order



Start bit switching is realized by switching the bit order for data write to SIO2. The SIO2 shift order remains unchanged.

Thus, switching between MSB-first and LSB-first must be performed before writing data to the shift register.

**(4) Transfer start**

Serial transfer is started by setting transfer data to the transmission shift register (TXS/SIO2) when the following two conditions are satisfied.

- Serial interface channel 2 operation control bit (CSIE2) = 1
- Internal serial clock is stopped or  $\overline{\text{SCK2}}$  is a high level after 8-bit serial transfer.

**Caution** If CSIE2 is set to "1" after data write to TXS/SIO2, transfer does not start.

Upon termination of 8-bit transfer, serial transfer automatically stops and the interrupt request flag (SRIF) is set.



[MEMO]

## CHAPTER 12 INTERRUPT FUNCTION

### 12.1 Interrupt Function Types

The following three types of interrupt functions are used.

#### (1) Non-maskable interrupt

This interrupt is acknowledged unconditionally even in the interrupt disabled status. It does not undergo interrupt priority control and is given top priority over all other interrupt requests.

It generates a standby release signal.

One of the non-maskable interrupts is the interrupt request from the Watchdog Timer.

#### (2) Maskable interrupts

These interrupts undergo mask control. Maskable interrupts can be divided into a high interrupt priority group and a low interrupt priority group by setting the priority specify flag register (PR0L, PR0H, PR1L).

Multiple high priority interrupts can be applied to low priority interrupts. If two or more interrupts with the same priority are simultaneously generated, each interrupts has a predetermined priority (see **Table 12-1**).

A standby release signal is generated.

Maskable interrupts include three external interrupt requests and eight internal interrupt requests.

#### (3) Software interrupt

This is a vectored interrupt that occurs when the BRK instruction is executed. It is acknowledged even in a disabled state. The software interrupt does not undergo interrupt priority control.

12.2 Interrupt Sources and Configuration

There are a total of 13 interrupts, combining non-maskable interrupts, maskable interrupts and software interrupts (see Table 12-1).

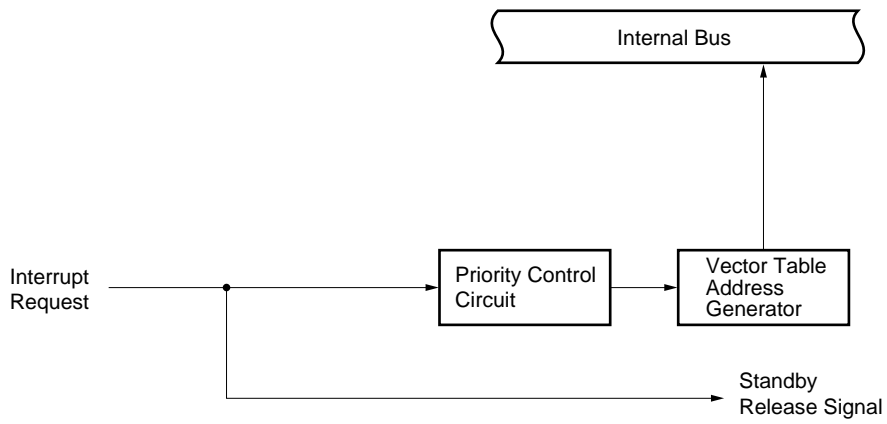
Table 12-1. Interrupt Source List

| Interrupt Type | Note 1<br>Default Priority | Interrupt Source                                       |   | Internal/<br>External | Vector Table Address | Note 2<br>Basic Configuration Type |
|----------------|----------------------------|--|---|-----------------------|----------------------|------------------------------------|
|                |                            | Name   | Trigger   |                       |                      |                                    |
| Non-maskable   | —                          | INTWDT   | Watchdog timer overflow (with watchdog timer mode 1 selected) | Internal              | 0004H                | (A)                                |
| Maskable       | 0                          | INTWDT   | Watchdog timer overflow (with interval timer mode selected)   |                       |                      | External                           |
|                | 1                          | INTP1  | Pin input edge detection                                      | (C)                   |                      |                                    |
|                | 2                          | INTP2  |   |                       |                      |                                    |
|                | 3                          | INTP3  |   |                       |                      |                                    |
|                | 4                          | INTSER   | Serial interface channel 2 UART reception error generation    | Internal              | 0018H                | (B)                                |
|                | 5                          | INTSR  | End of serial interface channel 2 UART reception              |                       | 001AH                |                                    |
|                |                            | INTCSI2  | End of serial interface channel 2 3-wire transfer             |                       |                      |                                    |
|                | 6                          | INTST  | End of serial interface channel 2 UART transfer               |                       | 001CH                |                                    |
|                | 7                          | INTAD  | End of A/D converter conversion                               |                       | 0028H                |                                    |
|                | 8                          | INTTM5   | Generation of 8-bit timer/event counter 5 match signal        |                       | 002AH                |                                    |
| 9              | INTTM6                     | Generation of 8 bit timer/event counter 6 match signal | 002CH   |                       |                      |                                    |
| Software       | —                          | BRK  | BRK instruction execution                                     | —                     | 003EH                | (D)                                |

- Notes**
1. Default priorities are intended for two or more simultaneously generated maskable interrupts. 0 is the highest priority and 9 is the lowest priority.
  2. Basic configuration types (A) to (D) correspond to (A) to (D) of Figure 12-1.

Figure 12-1. Basic Configuration of Interrupt Function (1/2)

(A) Internal non-maskable interrupt



(B) Internal maskable interrupt

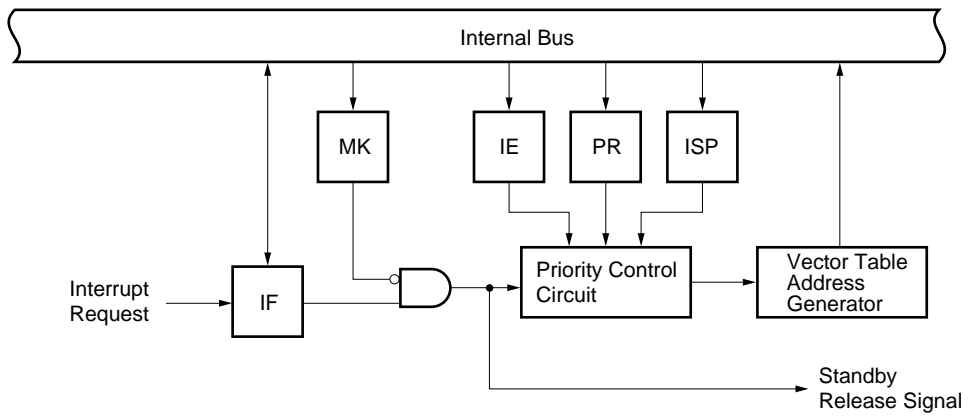
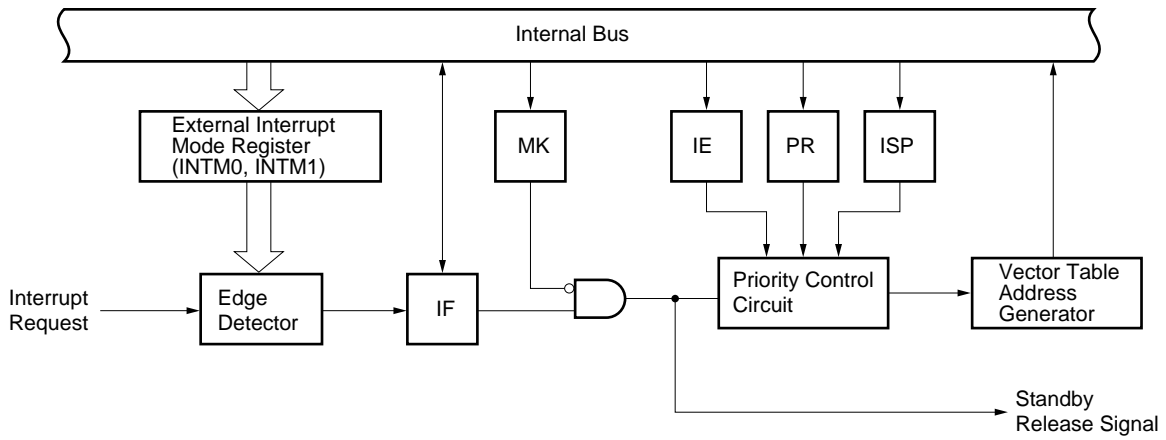
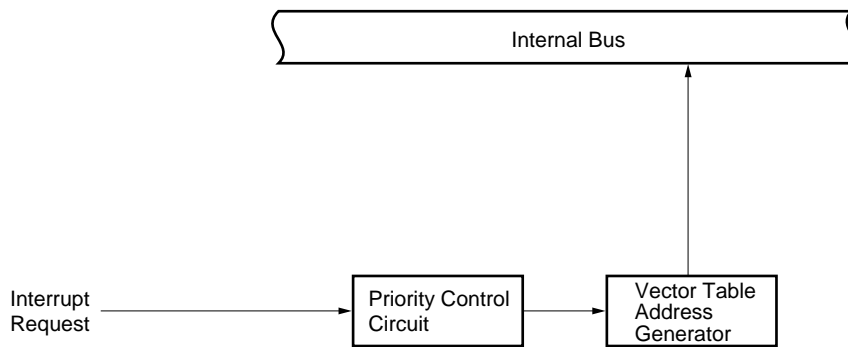


Figure 12-1. Basic Configuration of Interrupt Function (2/2)

(C) External maskable interrupt



(D) Software interrupt



- Remark**
- IF : Interrupt request flag
  - IE : Interrupt enable flag
  - ISP : Inservice priority flag
  - MK : Interrupt mask flag
  - PR : Priority specify flag

### 12.3 Interrupt Function Control Registers

The following five types of registers are used to control the interrupt functions.

- Interrupt request flag register (IF0L, IF0H, IF1L)
- Interrupt mask flag register (MK0L, MK0H, MK1L)
- Priority specify flag register (PR0L, PR0H, PR1L)
- External interrupt mode register (INTM0, INTM1)
- Program status word (PSW)

Table 12-2 gives a listing of interrupt request flags, interrupt mask flags, and priority specify flags corresponding to interrupt request sources.

**Table 12-2. Various Flags Corresponding to Interrupt Request Sources**

| Interrupt Source | Interrupt Request Flag |          | Interrupt Mask Flag |          | Priority Specify Flag |          |
|------------------|------------------------|----------|---------------------|----------|-----------------------|----------|
|                  |                        | Register |                     | Register |                       | Register |
| INTWDT           | TMIF4                  | IF0L     | TMMK4               | MK0L     | TMPR4                 | PR0L     |
| INTP1            | PIF1                   |          | PMK1                |          | PPR1                  |          |
| INTP2            | PIF2                   |          | PMK2                |          | PPR2                  |          |
| INTP3            | PIF3                   |          | PMK3                |          | PPR3                  |          |
| INTSER           | SERIF                  | IF0H     | SERMK               | MK0H     | SERPR                 | PR0H     |
| INTSR/INTCSI2    | SRIF                   |          | SRMK                |          | SRPR                  |          |
| INTST            | STIF                   |          | STMK                |          | STPR                  |          |
| INTAD            | ADIF                   | IF1L     | ADMK                | MK1L     | ADPR                  | PR1L     |
| INTTM5           | TMIF5                  |          | TMMK5               |          | TMPR5                 |          |
| INTTM6           | TMIF6                  |          | TMMK6               |          | TMPR6                 |          |

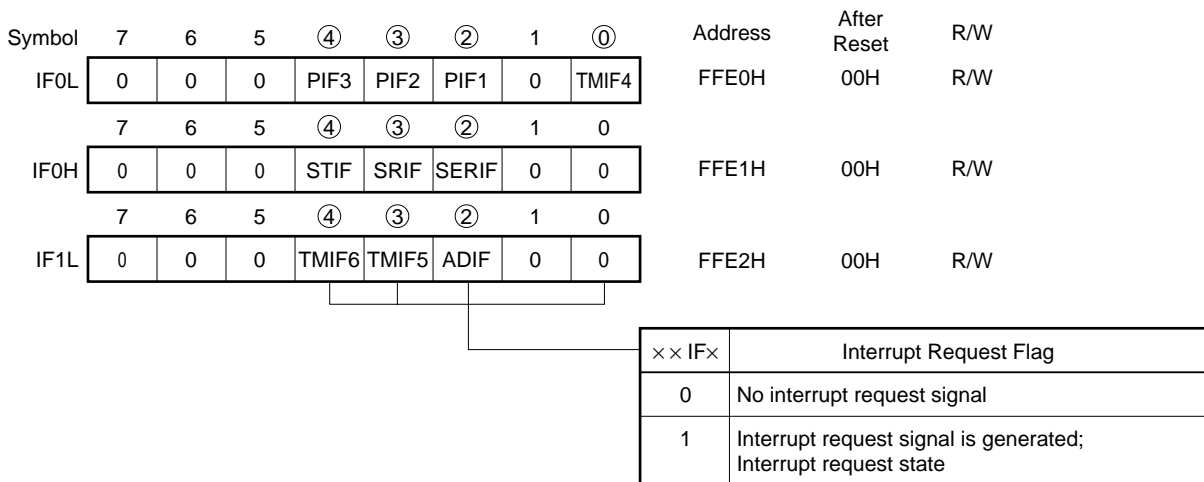
**(1) Interrupt request flag registers (IF0L, IF0H, IF1L)**

The interrupt request flag is set to 1 when the corresponding interrupt request is generated or an instruction is executed. It is cleared to 0 when an instruction is executed upon acknowledgment of an interrupt request or upon application of  $\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input.

IF0L, IF0H, and IF1L are set with a 1-bit or 8-bit memory manipulation instruction. If IF0L and IF0H are used as a 16-bit register IF0 use a 16-bit memory manipulation instruction for the setting.

$\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input sets these registers to 00H.

**Figure 12-2. Interrupt Request Flag Register Format**



- Cautions**
1. TMIF4 flag is R/W enabled only when a watchdog timer is used as an interval timer. If a watchdog timer is used in watchdog timer mode 1, set TMIF4 flag to 0.
  2. Set 0 to the bits 1, 5 to 7 of IF0L and bits 0, 1, 5 to 7 of IF0H and IF1L.

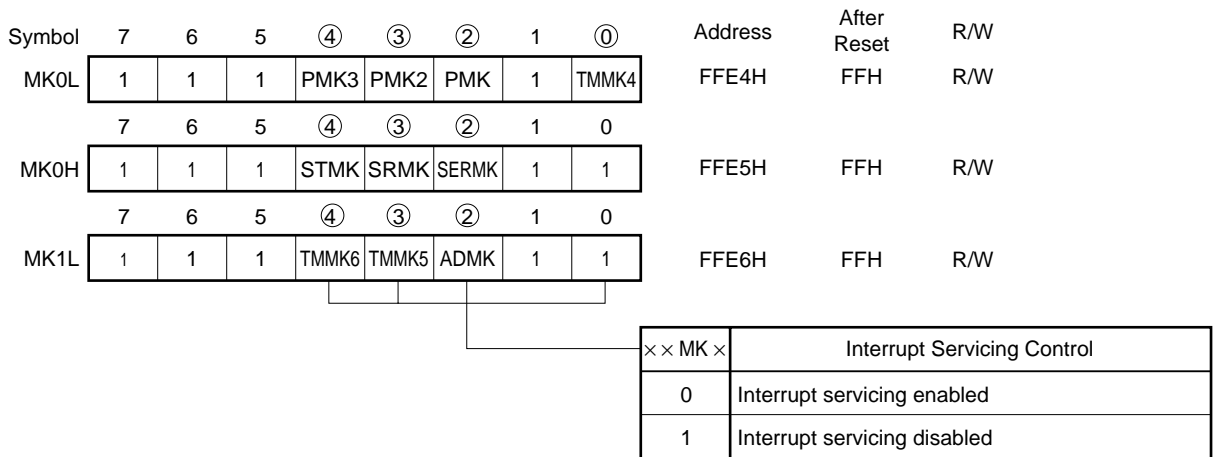
**(2) Interrupt mask flag registers (MK0L, MK0H, MK1L)**

The interrupt mask flag is used to enable/disable the corresponding maskable interrupt service and to set standby clear enable/disable.

MK0L, MK0H, and MK1L are set with a 1-bit or 8-bit memory manipulation instruction. If MK0L and MK0H are used as a 16-bit register MK0, use a 16-bit memory manipulation instruction for the setting.

RESET input sets these registers to FFH.

**Figure 12-3. Interrupt Mask Flag Register Format**



- Cautions**
1. If TMMK4 flag is read when a watchdog timer is used in watchdog timer mode 1, MK0 value becomes undefined.
  2. Because port 0 has a dual function as the external interrupt request input, when the output level is changed by specifying the output mode of the port function, an interrupt request flag is set. Therefore, 1 should be set in the interrupt mask flag before using the output mode.
  3. Set 1 to the bits 1, 5 to 7 of MK0L and bits 0, 1, 5 to 7 of MK0H and MK1L.



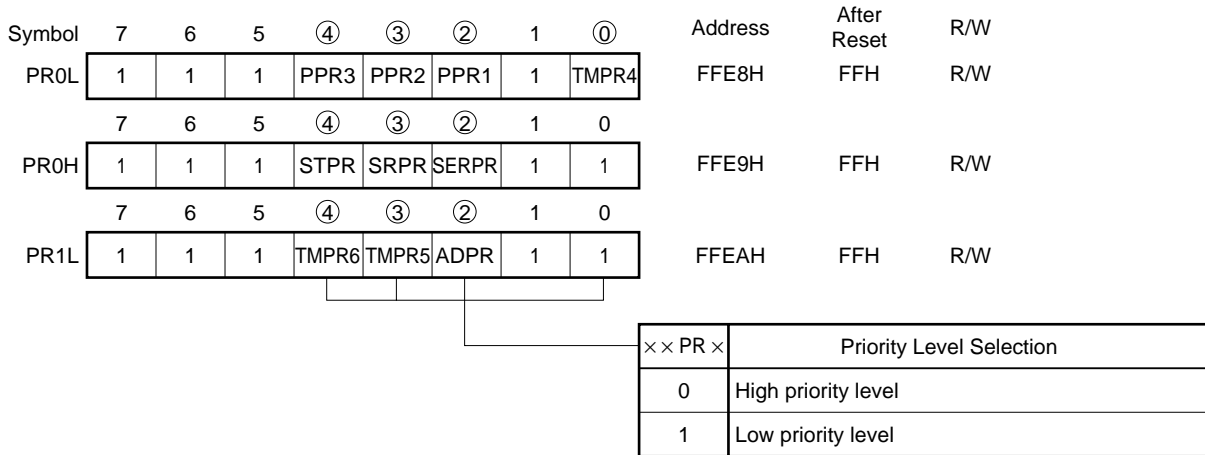
**(3) Priority specify flag registers (PR0L, PR0H, and PR1L)**

The priority specify flag is used to set the corresponding maskable interrupt priority orders.

PR0L, PR0H, and PR1L are set with a 1-bit or 8-bit memory manipulation instruction. If PR0L and PR0H are used as a 16-bit register PR0, use a 16-bit memory manipulation instruction for the setting.

RESET input sets these registers to FFH.

**Figure 12-4. Priority Specify Flag Register Format**



- Cautions**
1. If a watchdog timer is used in watchdog timer mode 1, set TMPR4 flag to 1.
  2. Set 1 to the bits 1, 5 to 7 of PR0L and bits 0, 1, 5 to 7 of PR0H and PR1L.

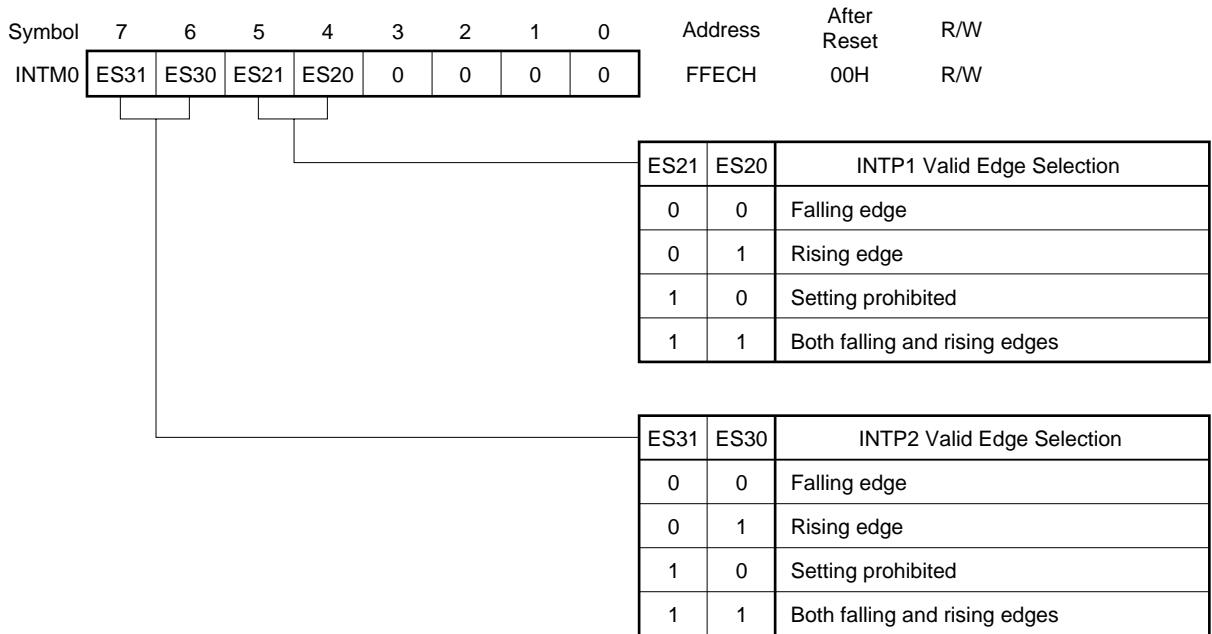
**(4) External interrupt mode register (INTM0, INTM1)**

These registers set the valid edge for INTP1 to INTP3.

INTM0 and INTM1 are set by 8-bit memory manipulation instructions.

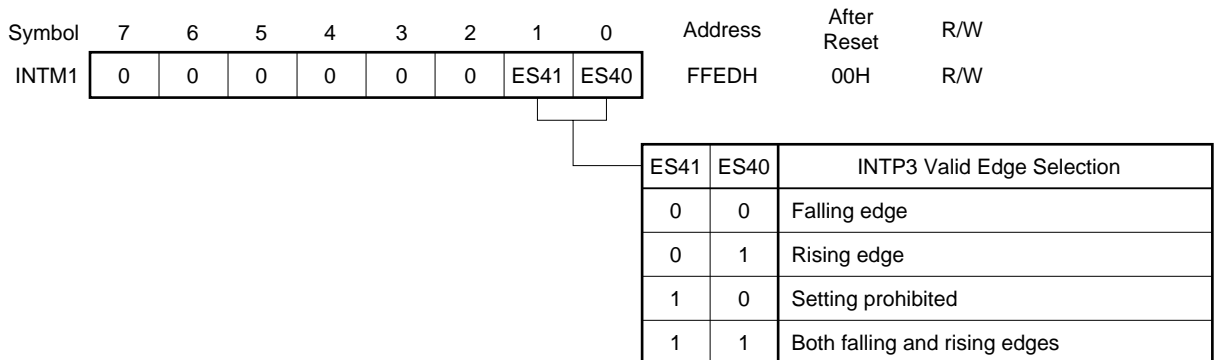
$\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input sets these registers to 00H.

**Figure 12-5. External Interrupt Mode Register 0 Format**



**Caution** Set 0 to the bits 0 to 3.

**Figure 12-6. External Interrupt Mode Register 1 Format**



**Caution** Set 0 to the bits 2 to 7.

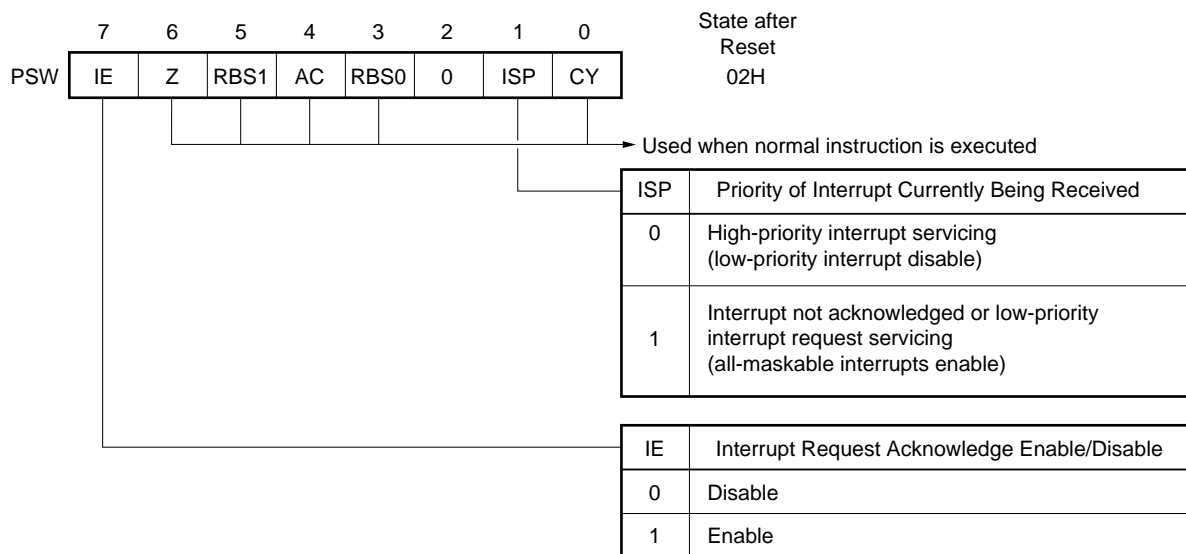
**(5) Program status word (PSW)**

The program status word is a register to hold the instruction execution result and the current status for interrupt request. The IE flag to set maskable interrupt enable/disable and the ISP flag to control multiple interrupt processing are mapped.

Besides 8-bit unit read/write, this register can carry out operations with a bit manipulation instruction and dedicated instructions (EI and DI). When a vectored interrupt request is acknowledged or when the BRK instruction is executed, the contents of PSW is automatically saved to the stack and the IE flag is reset to 0. If a maskable interrupt request is acknowledged the contents of the priority specify flag of the acknowledged interrupt are transferred to the ISP flag. The contents of PSW are also saved to the stack by the PUSH PSW instruction. It is reset from the stack with the RETI, RETB, and POP PSW instructions.

RESET input sets PSW to 02H.

**Figure 12-7. Program Status Word Configuration**



## 12.4 Interrupt Servicing Operations

### 12.4.1 Non-maskable interrupt request acknowledge operation

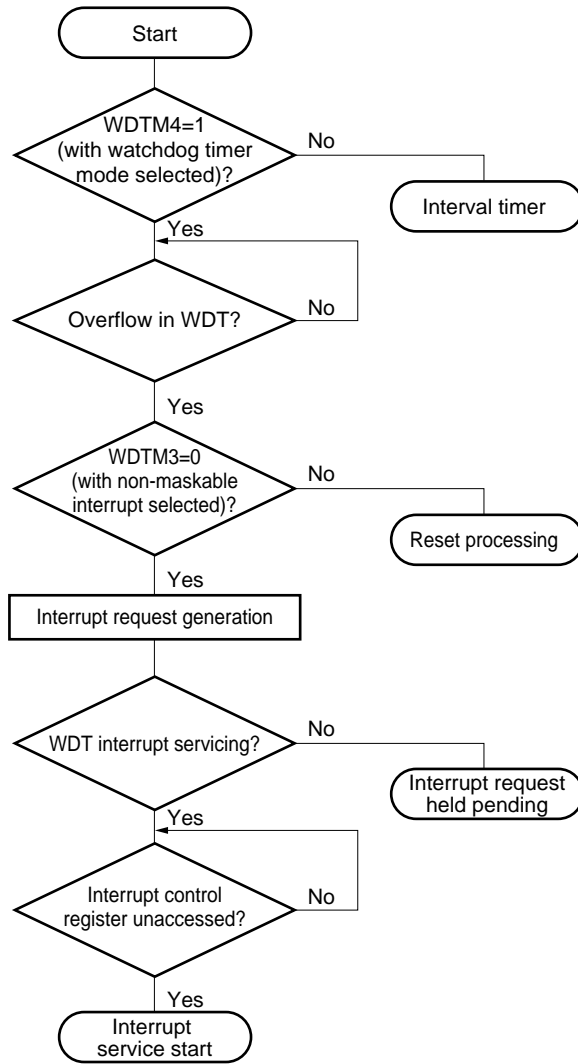
A non-maskable interrupt request is unconditionally acknowledged even if in an interrupt request acknowledge disable state. It does not undergo interrupt priority control and has highest priority over all other interrupts.

If a non-maskable interrupt request is acknowledged, the contents of program status word (PSW) and program counter (PC), in that order, are saved to the stack, the IE flag and ISP flag are reset (0), and the contents of the vector table are loaded in the PC and branched.

A new non-maskable interrupt request generated during execution of a non-maskable interrupt servicing program is acknowledged after the current execution of the non-maskable interrupt servicing program is terminated (following RETI instruction execution) and one main routine instruction is executed. If a new non-maskable interrupt request is generated twice or more during non-maskable interrupt service program execution, only one non-maskable interrupt request is acknowledged after termination of the non-maskable interrupt service program execution.

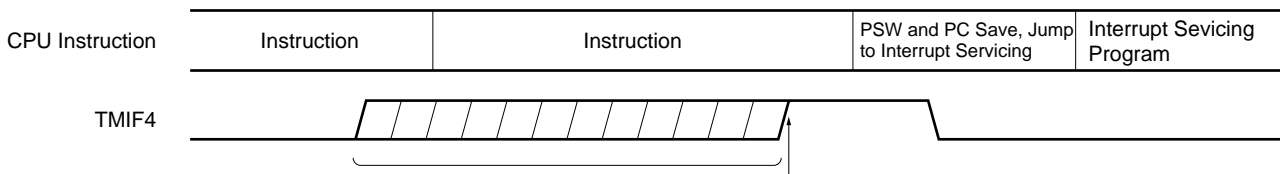
The flowchart showing the flow from non-maskable interrupt request generation to acknowledgment is shown in Figure 12-8, the non-maskable interrupt request acknowledge timing is shown in Figure 12-9, and acknowledge operation in the case where multiple non-maskable interrupt requests are generated, is shown in Figure 12-10.

Figure 12-8. Flowchart from Non-Maskable Interrupt Request Generation to Acknowledgment



WDTM : Watchdog timer mode register  
 WDT : Watchdog timer

Figure 12-9. Non-Maskable Interrupt Request Acknowledge Timing

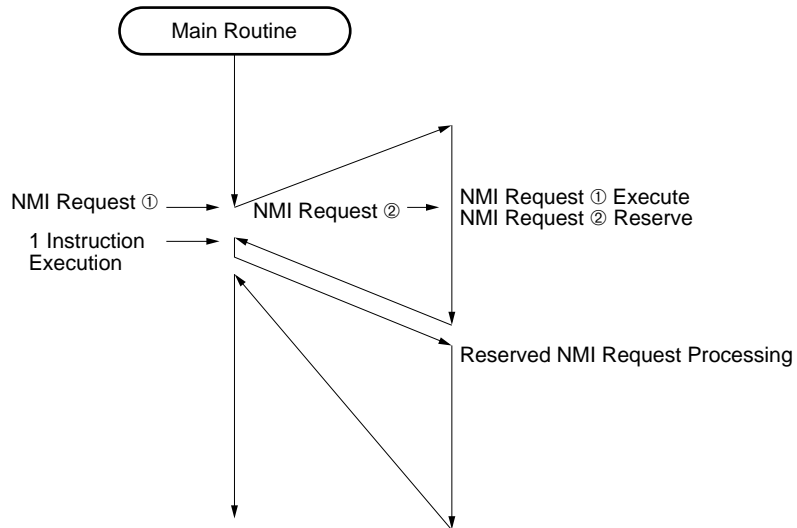


Interrupt requests which generate within this space are acknowledged with ↑ timing.

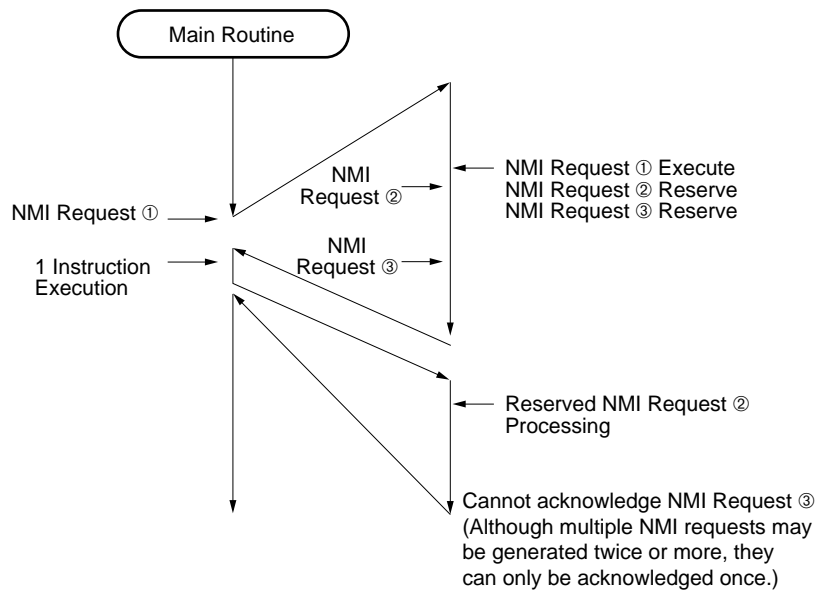
TMIF4 : Watchdog timer interrupt request flag

Figure 12-10. Non-Maskable Interrupt Request Acknowledge Operation

- (a) If a new non-maskable interrupt request is generated during non-maskable interrupt servicing program execution



- (b) If two non-maskable interrupt requests are generated during non-maskable interrupt servicing program execution



**12.4.2 Maskable interrupt request acknowledge operation**

A maskable interrupt request becomes acknowledgeable when an interrupt request flag is set to 1 and the interrupt mask (MK) flag is cleared to 0. A vectored interrupt request is acknowledged in an interrupt enable state (with IE flag set to 1). However, a low-priority interrupt request is not acknowledged during high-priority interrupt service (with ISP flag reset to 0).

The waiting time from the point when a maskable interrupt request is generated until interrupt processing is executed is as shown in Table 12-3.

Please refer to Figures 12-12 and 12-13 concerning interrupt request acknowledgement timing.

**Table 12-3. Times from Maskable Interrupt Request Generation to Interrupt Service**

|             | Minimum Time | Maximum Time <sup>Note</sup> |
|-------------|--------------|------------------------------|
| When xxPR=0 | 7 clocks     | 32 clocks                    |
| When xxPR=1 | 8 clocks     | 33 clocks                    |

**Note** If an interrupt request is generated just before a divide instruction, the wait time is maximized.

**Remark** 1 clock :  $\frac{1}{f_{CPU}}$  (f<sub>CPU</sub>: CPU clock)

If two or more maskable interrupt requests are generated simultaneously, the request specified for higher priority with the priority specify flag is acknowledged first. Also, when the same priority is specified with the priority specify flag, the interrupt request with the higher default priority is acknowledged first.

Any reserved interrupt requests are acknowledged when they become acknowledgeable.

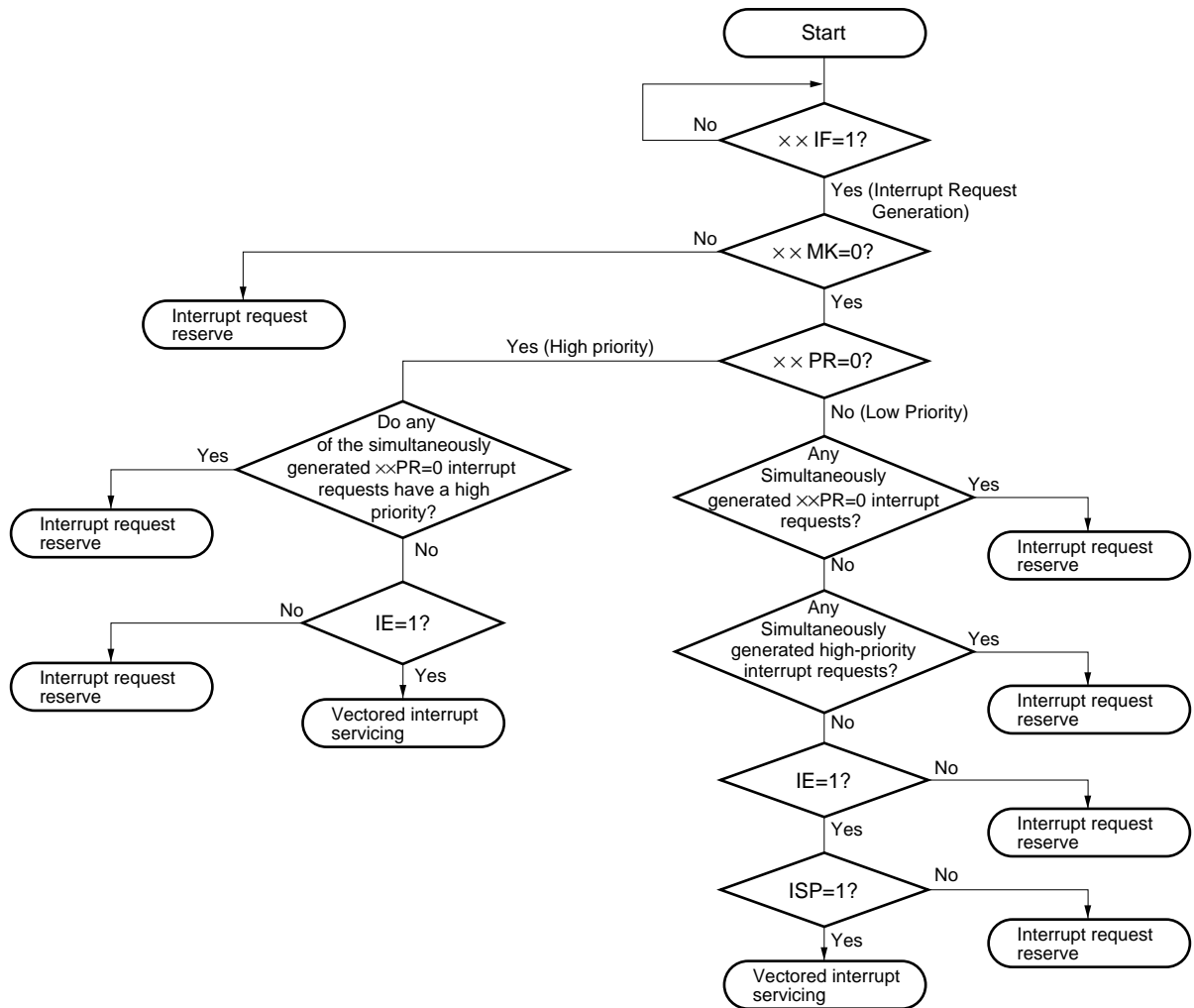
Figure 12-11 shows interrupt request acknowledge algorithms.

If a maskable interrupt request is acknowledged, the contents are saved to the stack in the order of first, program status word (PSW), then, program counter (PC), then the IE flag is reset (0) and the contents of the acknowledged interrupt request priority specification flag are transferred to the ISP flag.

Further, the data in the vector table which has been determined with each interrupt request, are loaded into the PC and branched.

Return from the interrupt is possible with the RETI instruction.

Figure 12-11. Interrupt Request Acknowledge Processing Algorithm



××IF : Interrupt request flag

××MK : Interrupt mask flag

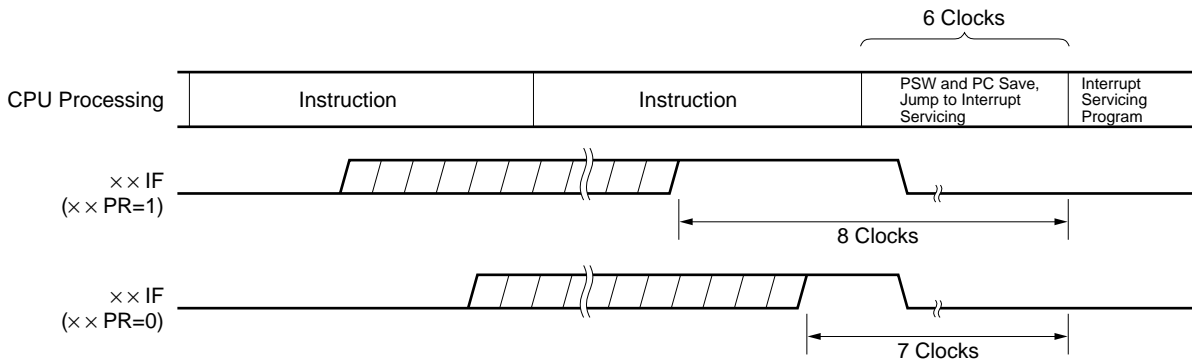
××PR : Priority specify flag

IE : Flag which controls maskable interrupt request acknowledgment (1 = enable, 0 = disable)

ISP : Flag which indicates the priority of the interrupt currently being processed. (0 = high priority interrupt being processed, 1= interrupt request not acknowledged, or low priority interrupt being processed.)

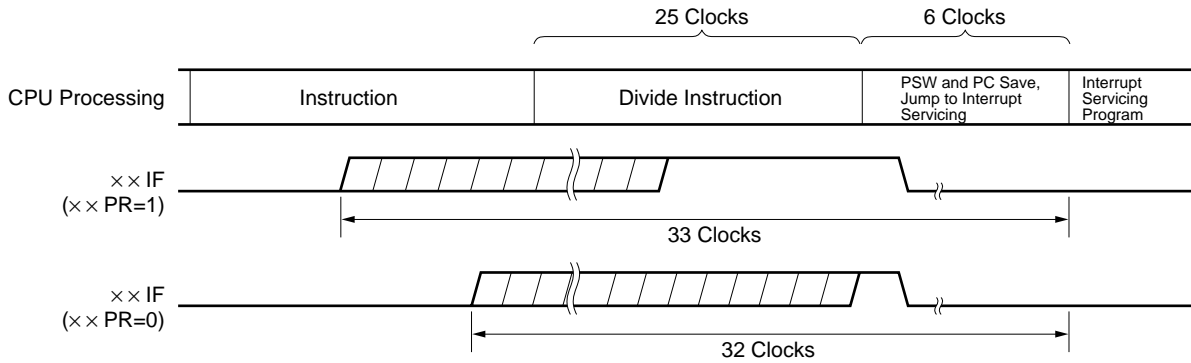


Figure 12-12. Interrupt Request Acknowledge Timing (Minimum Time)



Remark 1 clock :  $\frac{1}{f_{CPU}}$  ( $f_{CPU}$ : CPU clock)

Figure 12-13. Interrupt Request Acknowledge Timing (Maximum Time)



Remark 1 clock :  $\frac{1}{f_{CPU}}$  ( $f_{CPU}$ : CPU clock)

### 12.4.3 Software interrupt request acknowledge operation

A software interrupt request is acknowledged by BRK instruction execution. Software interrupt cannot be disabled.

If a software interrupt request is acknowledged, the contents are saved to the stack in the order of first, program status word (PSW), then the program counter (PC), then the IE flag is reset (0) and the contents of the vector tables (003EH, 003FH) are loaded into the PC and branched.

Return from the software interrupt is possible with the RETB instruction.

**Caution Do not use the RETI instruction for returning from the software interrupt.**

### 12.4.4 Multiple interrupt servicing

When another interrupt is acknowledged while an interrupt is being processed, this is called multiple interrupt.

Multiple interrupts are not generated unless interrupt request acknowledge is enabled (IE = 1) (non-maskable interrupts excepted). Also, at the point when an interrupt request is acknowledged, acknowledgment of other interrupt requests is disabled (IE = 0). Therefore, in order to enable multiple interrupts, it is necessary during interrupt processing to set the IE flag (1) using the IE instruction, and enable interrupts.

There are cases where multiple requests are not enabled even though interrupts are enabled. However, this is controlled by the priority of the interrupt. There are two interrupt priorities, the default priority and the programmable priority. Multiple interrupt control is handled by programmable priority control.

In interrupt enabled condition, when an interrupt request is generated which is the same level, or which has a higher priority than the interrupt currently being processed, it is acknowledged as a multiple interrupt. When an interrupt request is generated which has a lower priority than the interrupt currently being processed, it is not acknowledged as a multiple interrupt.

Interrupt requests which have not been permitted as multiple interrupts because of low priority or because of the interrupt being disabled, are reserved, and after the current interrupt processing has been completed, they are acknowledged after executing one of the main processing instructions.

Multiple interrupts are not permitted during non-maskable interrupt processing.

Multiple interrupt enabled interrupt requests are shown in Table 12-4, and an example of multiple interrupts is given in Figure 12-14 .

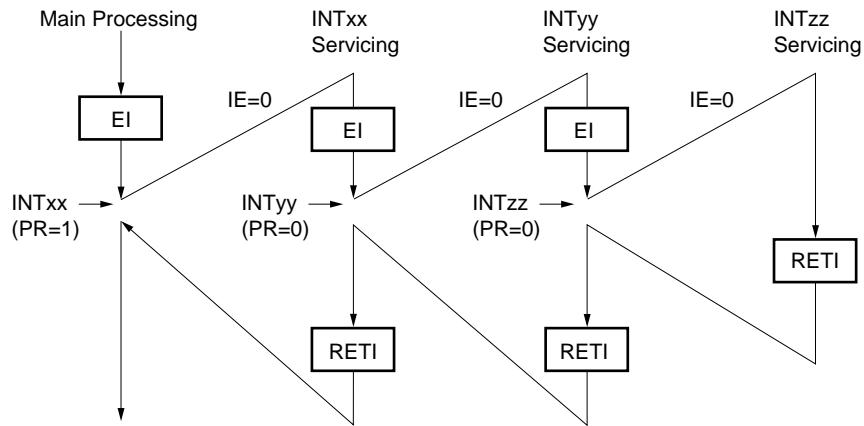
**Table 12-4. Interrupt Request Enabled for Multiple Interrupt during Interrupt Servicing**

| Multiple Interrupt Request<br>Interrupt during processing |       | Non-maskable<br>Interrupt Request | Maskable Interrupt Request |      |      |      |
|---|-------|-----------------------------------|----------------------------|------|------|------|
|   |       |                                   | PR=0                       |      | PR=1 |      |
|   |       |                                   | IE=1                       | IE=0 | IE=1 | IE=0 |
| Non-maskable interrupt                                    |       | D                                 | D                          | D    | D    | D    |
| Maskable interrupt  | ISP=0 | E                                 | E                          | D    | D    | D    |
|   | ISP=1 | E                                 | E                          | D    | E    | D    |
| Software interrupt  |       | E                                 | E                          | D    | E    | D    |

- Remarks**
1. E : Multiple interrupt enable
  2. D : Multiple interrupt disable
  3. ISP and IE are the flags contained in PSW
    - ISP=0 : An interrupt with higher priority is being serviced
    - ISP=1 : An interrupt request is not accepted or an interrupt with lower priority is being serviced
    - IE=0 : Interrupt request acknowledge is disabled
    - IE=1 : Interrupt request acknowledge is enabled
  4. PR is a flag contained in PR0L, PR0H, and PR1L
    - PR=0 : Higher priority level
    - PR=1 : Lower priority level

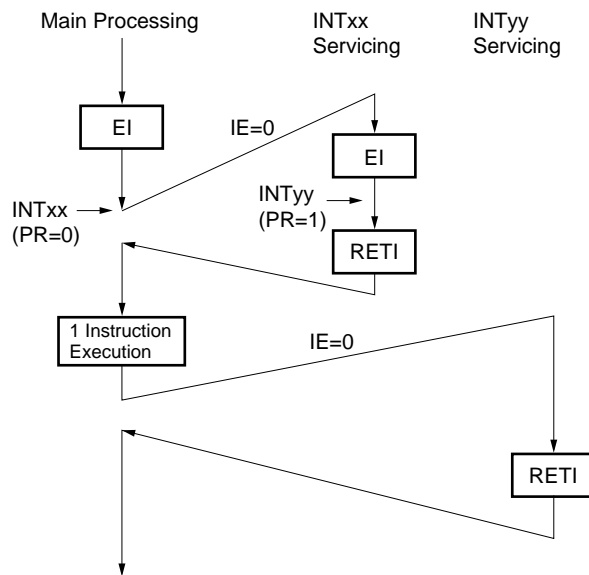
Figure 12-14. Multiple Interrupt Example (1/2)

Example 1. Example of when a multiple interrupt is generated twice.



Two interrupt requests, INTyy and INTzz, are acknowledged during processing of interrupt INTxx, and a multiple interrupt is generated. Before each interrupt request is acknowledged, the EI instruction is always executed and interrupt request acknowledgment enabled.

Example 2. Example of when a multiple interrupt is not generated because of priority control.

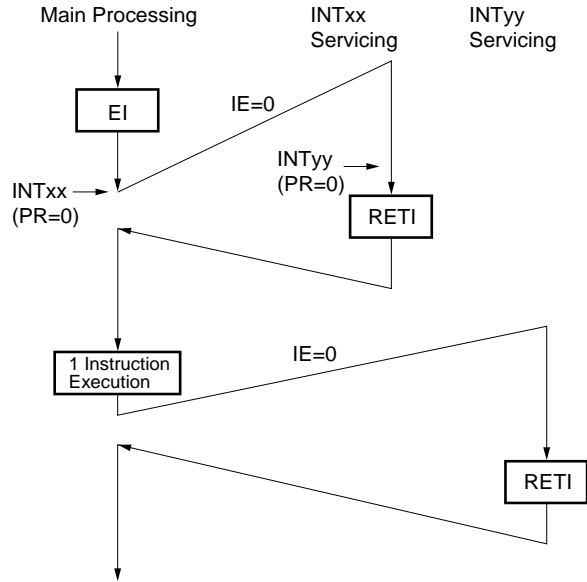


Interrupt request INTyy, which has been generated during processing of interrupt INTxx, and which has an interrupt priority that is lower than that of INTxx, is not acknowledged, and a multiple interrupt is not generated. Interrupt request INTyy is reserved and is acknowledged after execution of one main processing instructions.

- PR = 0 : High priority level
- PR = 1 : Low priority level
- IE = 0 : Interrupt request acknowledge disabled

Figure 12-14 Multiple Interrupt Example (2/2)

Example 3. Example of when a multiple interrupt is not generated because interrupts are not enabled.



Because interrupts are not enabled (the EI instruction is not executed) during processing of interrupt INTxx, interrupt request INTyy is not acknowledged and a multiple interrupt is not generated. Interrupt request INTyy is reserved and acknowledged after one main processing instruction is implemented.

PR = 0 : High priority level

IE = 0 : Interrupt request acknowledge disabled.

### 12.4.5 Interrupt request reserve

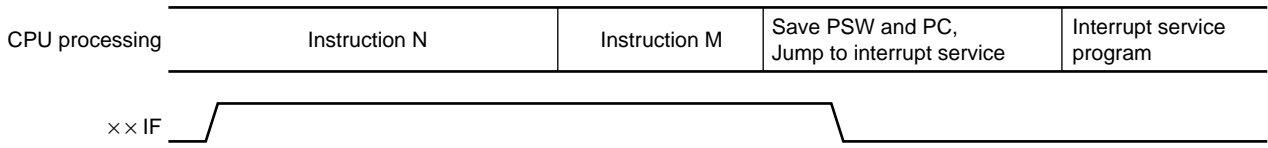
There are some instructions which, though an interrupt request may be generated while they are being executed, will reserve the acknowledgment of the request until after execution of the next instruction. These instructions (interrupt request reserve instructions) are shown below.

- MOV PSW, #byte
- MOV A, PSW
- MOV PSW, A
- MOV1 PSW.bit, CY
- MOV1 CY, PSW.bit
- AND1 CY, PSW.bit
- OR1 CY, PSW.bit
- XOR1 CY, PSW.bit
- SET1 PSW.bit
- CLR1 PSW.bit
- RETB
- RETI
- PUSH PSW
- POP PSW
- BT PSW.bit, \$addr16
- BF PSW.bit, \$addr16
- BTCLR PSW.bit, \$addr16
- EI
- DI
- Manipulate instructions for IF0L, IF0H, IF1L, MK0L, MK0H, MK1L, PR0L, PR0H, PR1L, INTM0, INTM1 registers

**Caution** The BRK instruction is not one of the above interrupt request reserve instructions. However in the case of software interrupts, which are activated by execution of the BRK instruction, the IE flag is cleared to 0. Therefore, even if a maskable interrupt request is generated during BRK instruction execution, the interrupt request will not be acknowledged. However, non-maskable interrupt requests will be acknowledged.

The interrupt request reserve timing is shown in Figure 12-15.

**Figure 12-15. Interrupt Request Hold**



- Remarks**
1. Instruction N: Instruction that holds interrupts requests
  2. Instruction M: Instructions other than instruction N
  3. The operation of x x IF (interrupt request) is not affected by x x PR (priority level) values.

## CHAPTER 13 STANDBY FUNCTION

### 13.1 Standby Function and Configuration

#### 13.1.1 Standby function

The standby function is designed to decrease power consumption of the system. The following two modes are available.

##### (1) HALT mode

HALT instruction execution sets the HALT mode. The HALT mode is intended to stop the CPU operation clock. System clock oscillator continues oscillation. In this mode, current consumption cannot be decreased as in the STOP mode. The HALT mode is valid to restart immediately upon interrupt request and to carry out intermittent operations.

##### (2) STOP mode

STOP instruction execution sets the STOP mode. In the STOP mode, the main system clock oscillator stops and the whole system stops. CPU current consumption can be considerably decreased.

★ Data memory low-voltage hold (down to  $V_{DD} = 1.8\text{ V}$ ) is possible. Thus, the STOP mode is effective to hold data memory contents with ultra-low current consumption. Because this mode can be cleared upon interrupt request, it enables intermittent operations to be carried out.

However, because a wait time is necessary to secure an oscillation stabilization time after the STOP mode is cleared, select the HALT mode if it is necessary to start processing immediately upon interrupt request.

In any mode, all the contents of the register, flag and data memory just before standby mode setting are held. The input/output port output latch and output buffer statuses are also held.

**Cautions** 1. When proceeding to the STOP mode, be sure to stop the peripheral hardware operation and execute the STOP instruction.

★ 2. The following sequence is recommended for power consumption reduction of the A/D converter when the standby function is used: first clear bit 7 (CS) of A/D converter mode register (ADM) to 0 to stop the A/D conversion operation, and then execute the HALT or STOP instruction.



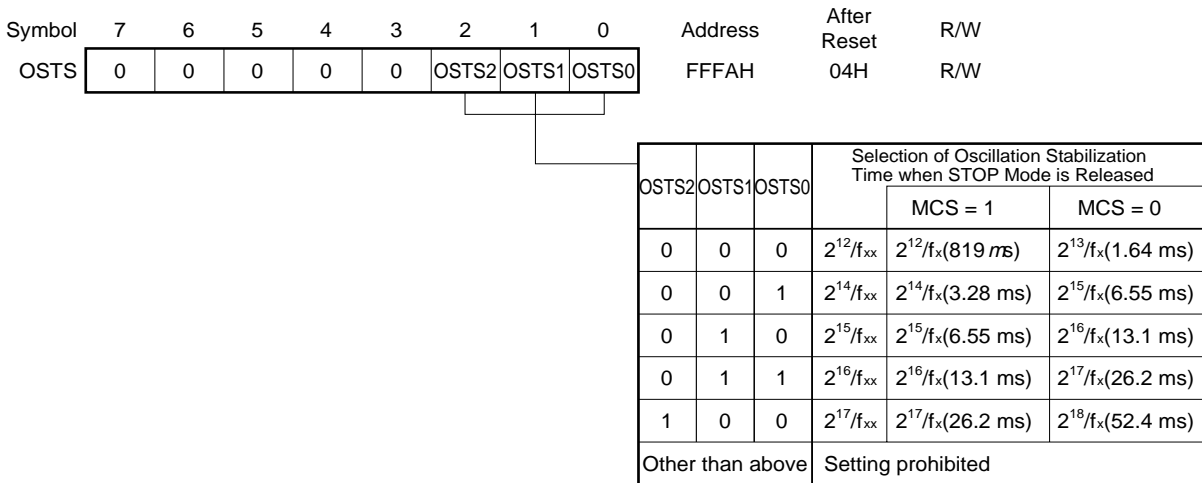
13.1.2 Standby function control register

A wait time after the STOP mode is cleared upon interrupt request till the oscillation stabilizes is controlled with the oscillation stabilization time select register (OSTS).

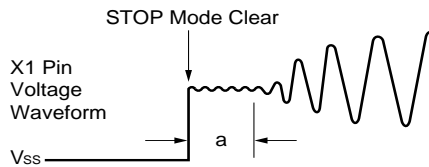
OSTS is set with an 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

RESET input sets OSTS to 04H. However, it takes  $2^{17}/f_x$ , not  $2^{18}/f_x$ , until the STOP mode is cleared by RESET input.

Figure 13-1. Oscillation Stabilization Time Select Register Format



**Caution** The wait time after STOP mode clear does not include the time (see "a" in the illustration below) from STOP mode clear to clock oscillation start, regardless of clearance by RESET input or by interrupt generation.



- Remarks
1.  $f_{xx}$  : Main system clock frequency ( $f_x$  or  $f_x/2$ )
  2.  $f_x$  : Main system clock oscillation frequency
  3. MCS : Oscillation mode select register (OSMS) bit 0
  4. Values in parentheses when operated at  $f_x = 5.0$  MHz

## 13.2 Standby Function Operations

### 13.2.1 HALT mode

#### (1) HALT mode set and operating status

The HALT mode is set by executing the HALT instruction.

The operating status in the HALT mode is described below.

**Table 13-1. HALT Mode Operating Status**

| Item                           | HALT Mode Operating Status                             |
|--------------------------------|--|
| Clock generator                | Can be oscillated. Supply to the CPU clock is stopped. |
| CPU                            | Operation stops.                                       |
| Port                           | Status before HALT mode setting is held.               |
| 8-bit timer/event counter 5, 6 | Operable.  |
| Watchdog timer                 |  |
| A/D converter                  |  |
| Serial interface               |  |
| External interrupt request     |  |

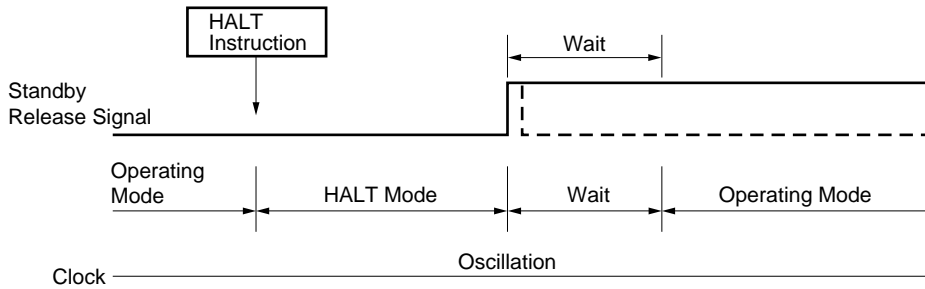
**(2) HALT mode clear**

The HALT mode can be cleared with the following three types of sources.

**(a) Clear upon unmasked interrupt request**

An unmasked interrupt request is used to clear the HALT mode. If interrupt acknowledge is enabled, vectored interrupt service is carried out. If disabled, the next address instruction is executed.

**Figure 13-2. HALT Mode Clear upon Interrupt Generation**



**Remarks 1.** The broken line indicates the case when the interrupt request which has cleared the standby status is acknowledged.

**2.** Wait time will be as follows:

- When vectored interrupt service is carried out: 8 to 9 clocks
- When vectored interrupt service is not carried out: 2 to 3 clocks

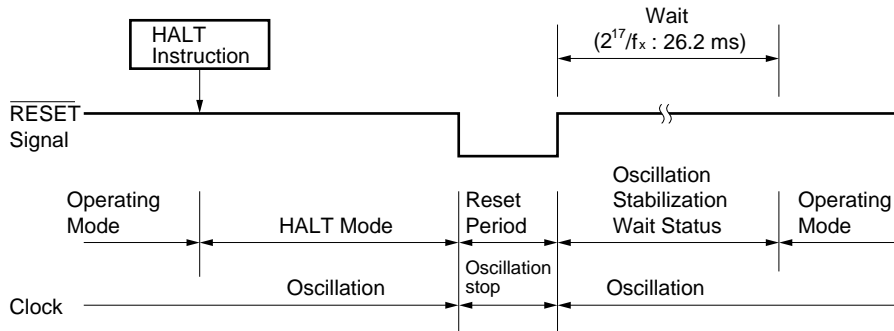
**(b) Clear upon non-maskable interrupt request**

The HALT mode is cleared and vectored interrupt service is carried out whether interrupt acknowledge is enabled or disabled.

(c) Clear upon  $\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input

As is the case with normal reset operation, a program is executed after branch to the reset vector address.

Figure 13-3. HALT Mode Release by  $\overline{\text{RESET}}$  Input



- Remarks**
1.  $f_x$ : main system clock oscillation frequency
  2. Values in parentheses when operated at  $f_x = 5.0 \text{ MHz}$

Table 13-2. Operation after HALT Mode Release

| Release Source                  | MK <sub>xx</sub> | PR <sub>xx</sub> | IE | ISP | Operation                          |
|---------------------------------|------------------|------------------|----|-----|------------------------------------|
| Maskable interrupt request      | 0                | 0                | 0  | ×   | Next address instruction execution |
|                                 | 0                | 0                | 1  | ×   | Interrupt service execution        |
|                                 | 0                | 1                | 0  | 1   | Next address instruction execution |
|                                 | 0                | 1                | ×  | 0   |                                    |
|                                 | 0                | 1                | 1  | 1   | Interrupt service execution        |
|                                 | 1                | ×                | ×  | ×   | HALT mode hold                     |
| Non-maskable interrupt request  | –                | –                | ×  | ×   | Interrupt service execution        |
| $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ input | –                | –                | ×  | ×   | Reset processing                   |

**Remark** ×: Don't care

## 13.2.2 STOP mode

## (1) STOP mode set and operating status

The STOP mode is set by executing the STOP instruction.

★

- Cautions**
1. When the STOP mode is set, the X2 pin is internally connected to V<sub>DD</sub> via a pull-up resistor to minimize the leakage current at the crystal oscillator. Thus, do not use the STOP mode in a system where an external clock is used for the main system clock.
  2. Because the interrupt request signal is used to clear the standby mode, if there is an interrupt source with the interrupt request flag set and the interrupt mask flag reset, the standby mode is immediately cleared if set. Thus, the STOP mode is reset to the HALT mode immediately after execution of the STOP instruction. After the wait set using the oscillation stabilization time select register (OSTS), the operating mode is set.

The operating status in the STOP mode is described below.

**Table 13-3. STOP Mode Operating Status**

| Item                           | STOP Mode Operating Status   |
|--------------------------------|--|
| Clock generator                | Oscillation stops.   |
| CPU                            | Operation stops.   |
| Port                           | Status before STOP mode setting is held.   |
| 8-bit timer/event counter 5, 6 | Operable when TI5 and TI6 are selected for the count clock.  |
| Watchdog timer                 | Operation stops.   |
| A/D converter                  |  |
| Serial interface               | Three-wire serial I/O is operable when the externally input clock is selected as the serial clock. UART operation stops. |
| External interrupt request     | Operable.  |

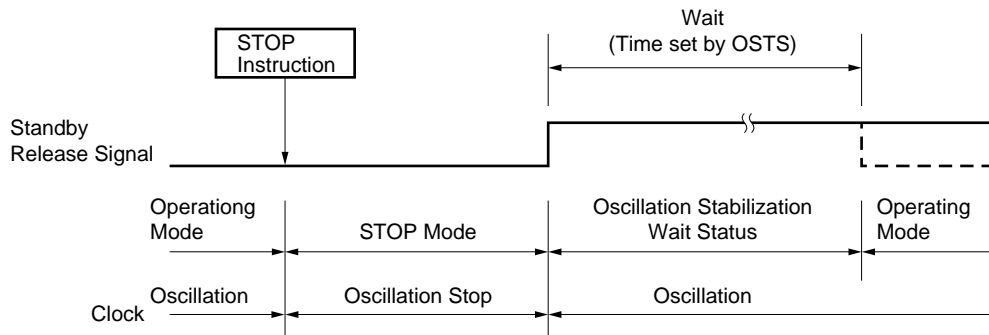
**(2) STOP mode release**

The STOP mode can be cleared with the following two types of sources.

**(a) Release by unmasked interrupt request**

An unmasked interrupt request is used to release the STOP mode. If interrupt acknowledge is enabled after the lapse of oscillation stabilization time, vectored interrupt service is carried out. If interrupt acknowledge is disabled, the next address instruction is executed.

**Figure 13-4. STOP Mode Release by Interrupt Generation**

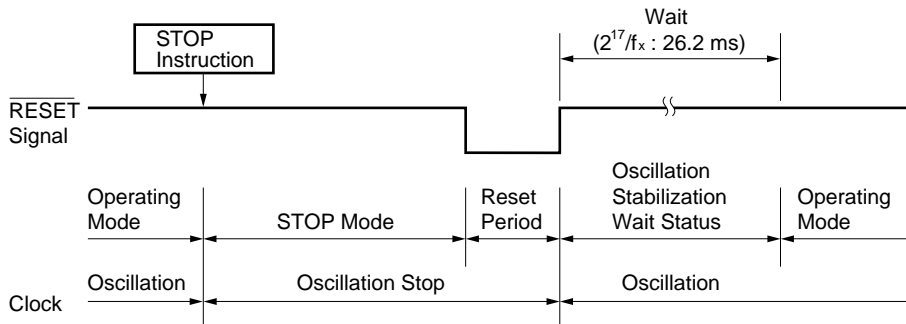


**Remark** The broken line indicates the case when the interrupt request which has cleared the standby status is acknowledged.

**(b) Release by  $\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input**

The STOP mode is cleared and after the lapse of oscillation stabilization time, reset operation is carried out.

**Figure 13-5. Release by STOP Mode  $\overline{\text{RESET}}$  Input**



- Remarks**
1.  $f_x$ : main system clock oscillation frequency
  2. Values in parentheses when operated at  $f_x = 5.0 \text{ MHz}$

**Table 13-4. Operation after STOP Mode Release**

| Release Source                  | MK <sub>xx</sub> | PR <sub>xx</sub> | IE | ISP | Operation                          |
|---------------------------------|------------------|------------------|----|-----|------------------------------------|
| Maskable interrupt request      | 0                | 0                | 0  | ×   | Next address instruction execution |
|                                 | 0                | 0                | 1  | ×   | Interrupt service execution        |
|                                 | 0                | 1                | 0  | 1   | Next address instruction execution |
|                                 | 0                | 1                | ×  | 0   |                                    |
|                                 | 0                | 1                | 1  | 1   | Interrupt service execution        |
|                                 | 1                | ×                | ×  | ×   | STOP mode hold                     |
| $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ input | —                | —                | ×  | ×   | Reset processing                   |

**Remark** ×: Don't care

## CHAPTER 14 RESET FUNCTION

### 14.1 Reset Function

The following two operations are available to generate the reset signal.

- (1) External reset input with  $\overline{\text{RESET}}$  pin
- (2) Internal reset by watchdog timer overrun time detection

External reset and internal reset have no functional differences. In both cases, program execution starts at the address at 0000H and 0001H by  $\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input.

When a low level is input to the  $\overline{\text{RESET}}$  pin or the watchdog timer overflows, a reset is applied and each hardware is set to the status as shown in Table 14-1. Each pin has high impedance during reset input or during oscillation stabilization time just after reset clear.

When a high level is input to the  $\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input, the reset is cleared and program execution starts after the lapse of oscillation stabilization time ( $2^{17}/f_x$ ). The reset applied by watchdog timer overflow is automatically cleared after a reset and program execution starts after the lapse of oscillation stabilization time ( $2^{17}/f_x$ ) (see **Figure 14-2 to 14-4**).

- Cautions**
1. For an external reset, input a low level for 10  $\mu\text{s}$  or more to the  $\overline{\text{RESET}}$  pin.
  2. Main system clock oscillation stops during reset input.
  3. When the STOP mode is cleared by reset, the STOP mode contents are held during reset input. However, the port pin becomes high-impedance.

Figure 14-1. Block Diagram of Reset Function

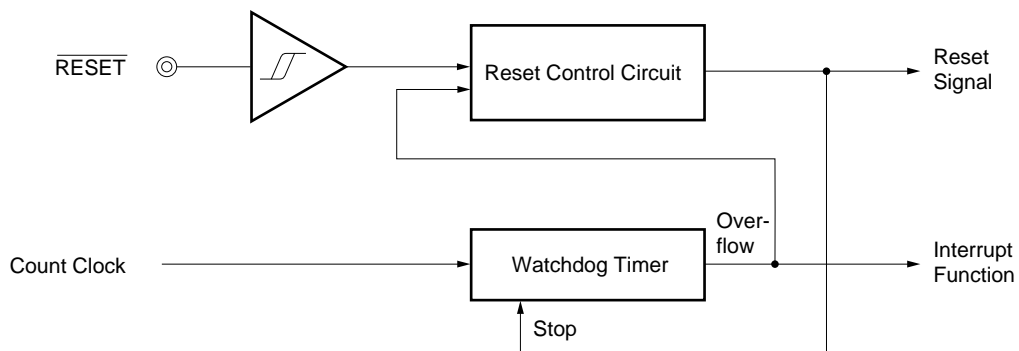




Figure 14-2. Timing of Reset Input by  $\overline{\text{RESET}}$  Input

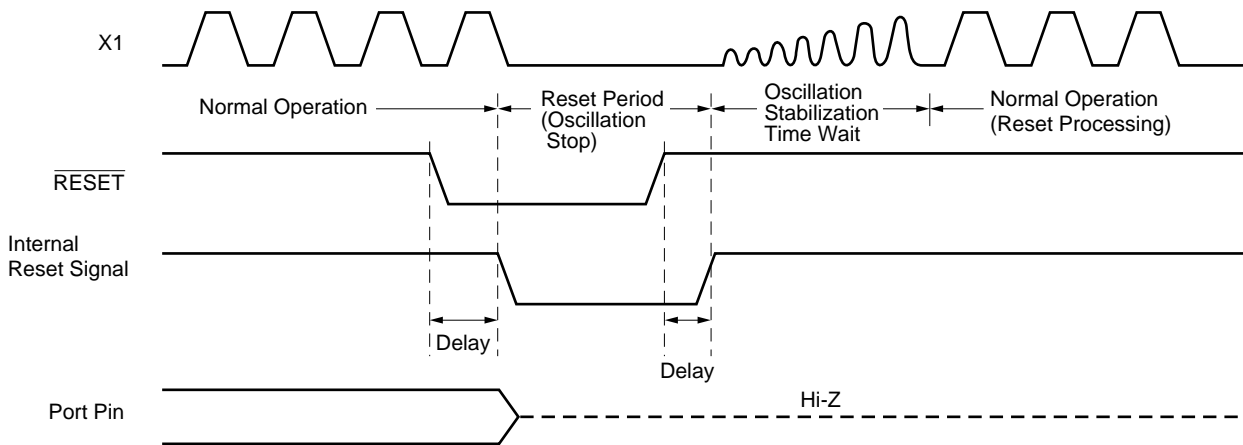


Figure 14-3. Timing of Reset due to Watchdog Timer Overflow

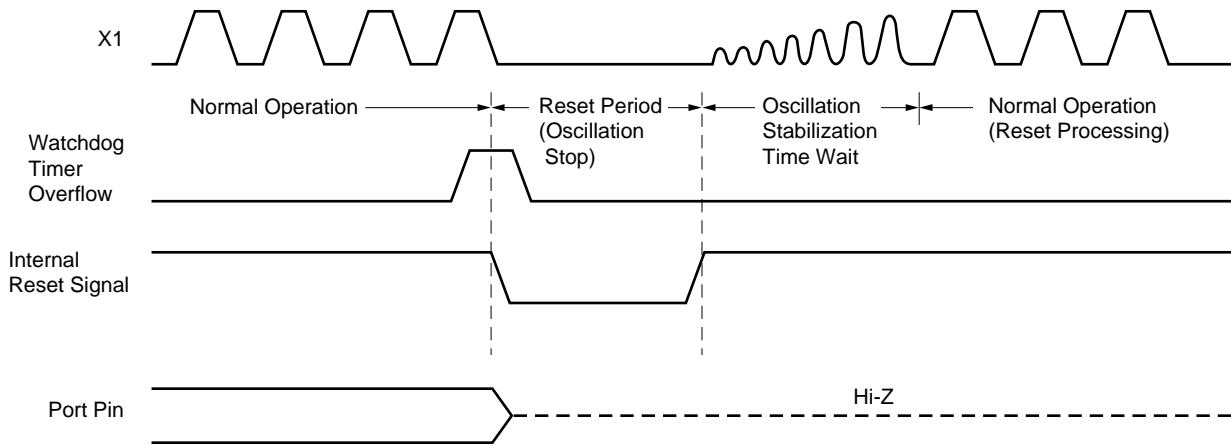
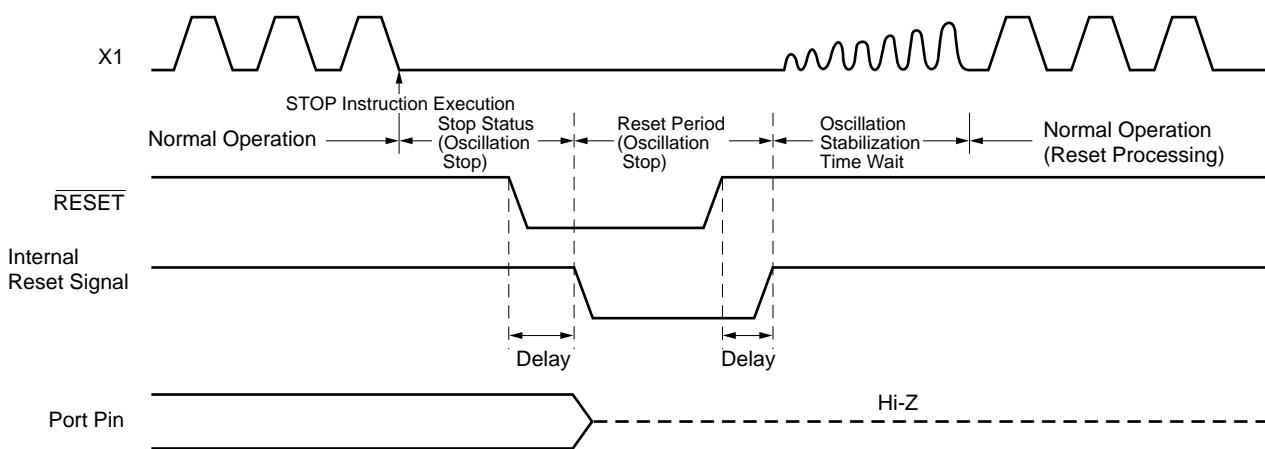


Figure 14-4. Timing of Reset Input in STOP Mode by  $\overline{\text{RESET}}$  Input



**Table 14-1. Hardware Status after Reset (1/2)**

| Hardware  |   | Status after Reset   |
|---|---|--|
| Program counter (PC) <b>Note1</b>                     |   | The contents of reset vector tables (0000H and 0001H) are set. |
| Stack pointer (SP)                                    |   | Undefined  |
| Program status word (PSW)                             |   | 02H  |
| RAM   | Data memory   | Undefined <b>Note2</b>   |
|   | General register  | Undefined <b>Note2</b>   |
| Port (Output latch)                                   | Port 0, Port 1, Port 3, Port 5, Port 7, Port 10 (P0, P1, P3, P5, P7, P10) | 00H  |
| Port mode register (PM0, PM1, PM3, PM5, PM7, PM10)    |   | FFH  |
| Pull-up resistor option register (PUOH, PUOL)         |   | 00H  |
| Processor clock control register (PCC)                |   | 04H  |
| Oscillation mode selection register (OSMS)            |   | 00H  |
| Memory size switching register (IMS)                  |   | <b>Note3</b>   |
| Oscillation stabilization time select register (OSTS) |   | 04H  |
| Timer clock selection register 0 (TCL0)               |   | 00H  |
| 8-bit timer/event counter 5 and 6                     | Timer register (TM5, TM6)   | 00H  |
|   | Compare registers (CR50, CR60)  | 00H  |
|   | Clock select register (TCL5, TCL6)  | 00H  |
|   | Mode control registers (TMC5, TMC6)                                       | 00H  |
| Watchdog timer  | Clock select register (TCL2)  | 00H  |
|   | Mode register (WDTM)  | 00H  |
| Serial Interface                                      | Mode register (CSIM2)   | 00H  |
|   | Asynchronous serial interface mode register (ASIM)                        | 00H  |
|   | Asynchronous serial interface status register (ASIS)                      | 00H  |
|   | Baud rate generator control register (BRGC)                               | 00H  |
|   | Transmit shift register (TXS)   | FFH  |
|   | Receive buffer register (RXB)   | -----  |
| A/D converter   | Mode register (ADM)   | 01H  |
|   | Conversion result register (ADCR)   | Undefined  |
|   | Input select register (ADIS)  | 00H  |

Table 14-1. Hardware Status after Reset (2/2)

|           | Hardware  | Status after Reset |
|-----------|---|--------------------|
| Interrupt | Request flag register (IF0L, IF0H, IF1L)          | 00H                |
|           | Mask flag register (MK0L, MK0H, MK1L)             | FFH                |
|           | Priority specify flag register (PR0L, PR0H, PR1L) | FFH                |
|           | External interrupt mode register (INTM0, INTM1)   | 00H                |

- Notes**
1. During reset input or oscillation stabilization time wait, only the PC contents among the hardware statuses become undefined. All other hardware statuses remains unchanged after reset.
  2. The post-reset status is held in the standby mode.
  3. The values after reset depend on the product.  
 $\mu$ PD78081 : 82H,  $\mu$ PD78082 : 64H,  $\mu$ PD78P083 : 46H

## CHAPTER 15 $\mu$ PD78P083

The  $\mu$ PD78P083 is a single-chip microcontroller with an on-chip one-time PROM or with an on-chip EPROM which has program write, erasure and rewrite capability.

Differences between the  $\mu$ PD78P083 and mask ROM versions are shown in Table 15-1.

**Table 15-1. Differences between the  $\mu$ PD78P083 and Mask ROM Versions**

| Parameter   | $\mu$ PD78P083                        | Mask ROM Versions                                      |
|---|---------------------------------------|--|
| Internal ROM type   | One-time PROM/EPROM                   | Mask ROM   |
| Internal ROM capacity   | 24 Kbytes                             | $\mu$ PD78081 : 8 Kbytes<br>$\mu$ PD78082 : 16 Kbytes  |
| Internal high-speed RAM capacity  | 512 bytes                             | $\mu$ PD78081 : 256 bytes<br>$\mu$ PD78082 : 384 bytes |
| Internal ROM and internal high-speed RAM capacity change by internal memory size switching register (IMS) | Enable <b>Note</b>                    | Disable  |
| IC pin  | Not available                         | Available  |
| $V_{PP}$ pin  | Available                             | Not available  |
| Electrical specifications   | Refer to a data sheet of each product |  |

**Note** The internal PROM becomes 24 Kbytes and the internal expansion RAM becomes 512 bytes by the RESET input.

- ★ **Caution** Noise resistance and noise radiation differs between PROM versions and Mask ROM versions. If studying the replacement of PROM versions with mask ROM versions in the process of prototype to volume production, do a thorough evaluation with mask ROM versions with CS versions (not ES versions).

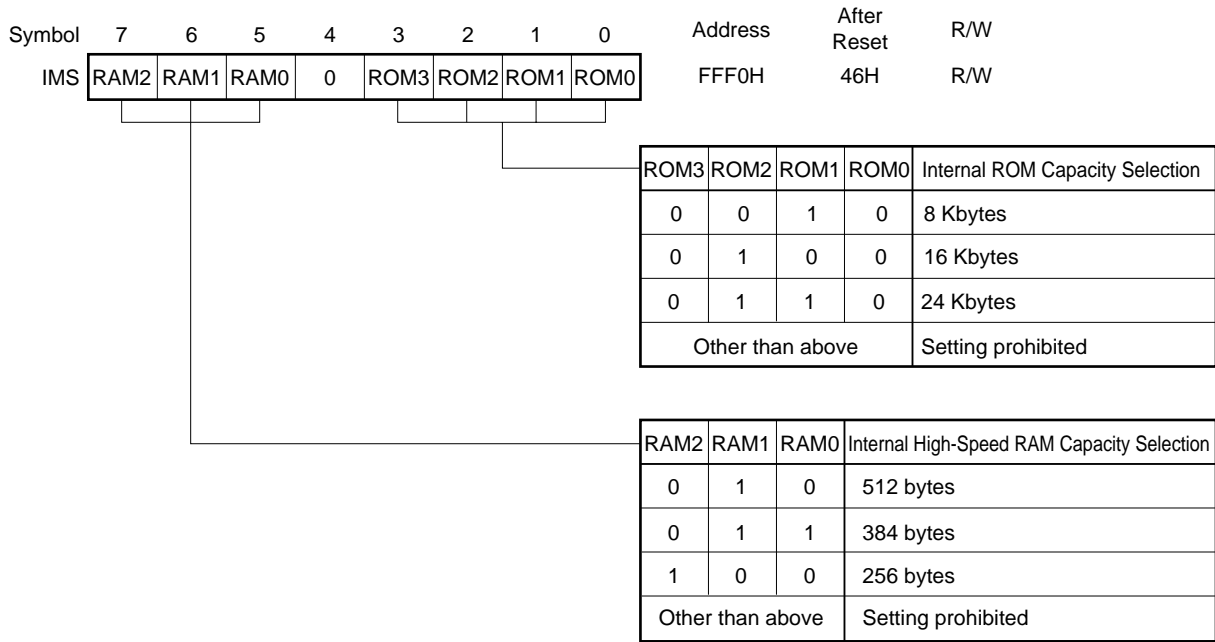
### 15.1 Memory Size Switching Register

It is possible to specify the internal memory of the  $\mu$ PD78P083 by means of the memory size switching register (IMS). By setting the IMS, memory mapping can be made to match the memory mapping of the  $\mu$ PD78081 and 78082, which have different internal memory.

IMS is set with an 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

$\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input sets IMS to 46H.

★ **Figure 15-1. Memory Size Switching Register Format**



**Caution** If using mask ROM versions, do not specify any values in the IMS other than when resetting.

The IMS settings to give the same memory map as mask ROM versions are shown in Table 15-2.

**Table 15-2. Examples of Memory Size Switching Register Settings**

| Relevant Mask ROM Version | IMS Setting |
|---------------------------|-------------|
| $\mu$ PD78081             | 82H         |
| $\mu$ PD78082             | 64H         |

## 15.2 PROM Programming

The  $\mu$ PD78P083 incorporate a 24-Kbyte PROM as program memory, respectively. To write a program into the  $\mu$ PD78P083 PROM, make the device enter the PROM programming mode by setting the levels of the  $V_{PP}$  and  $\overline{\text{RESET}}$  pins as specified. For the connection of unused pins, see paragraph (2) “PROM programming mode” in section 1.5 Pin Configuration (Top View).

**Caution** Perform program writing only in the 0000H to 5FFFH address range (specify the last address as 5FFFH.)

The program cannot be correctly written by a PROM programmer which does not have a write address specification function.

### 15.2.1 Operating modes

When +5 V or +12.5 V is applied to the  $V_{PP}$  pin and a low-level signal is applied to the  $\overline{\text{RESET}}$  pin, the  $\mu$ PD78P083 are set to the PROM programming mode. This is one of the operating modes shown in Table 15-3 below according to the setting of the  $\overline{\text{CE}}$ ,  $\overline{\text{OE}}$ , and  $\overline{\text{PGM}}$  pins.

The PROM contents can be read by setting the read mode.

**Table 15-3. PROM Programming Operating Modes**

| Operating mode \ Pin | $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ | $V_{PP}$ | $V_{DD}$ | $\overline{\text{CE}}$ | $\overline{\text{OE}}$ | $\overline{\text{PGM}}$ | D0-D7          |
|----------------------|---------------------------|----------|----------|------------------------|------------------------|-------------------------|----------------|
| Page data latch      | L                         | +12.5 V  | +6.5 V   | H                      | L                      | H                       | Data input     |
| Page write           |                           |          |          | H                      | H                      | L                       | High impedance |
| Byte write           |                           |          |          | L                      | H                      | L                       | Data input     |
| Program verify       |                           |          |          | L                      | L                      | H                       | Data output    |
| Program inhibit      |                           |          |          | ×                      | H                      | H                       | High impedance |
|                      |                           |          |          | ×                      | L                      | L                       |                |
| Read                 | +5 V                      | +5V      | L        | L                      | H                      | Data output             |                |
| Output disabled      |                           |          | L        | H                      | ×                      | High impedance          |                |
| Standby              |                           |          | H        | ×                      | ×                      | High impedance          |                |

**Remark** ×: L or H

#### (1) Read mode

Read mode is set by setting  $\overline{\text{CE}}$  to L and  $\overline{\text{OE}}$  to L.

#### (2) Output disable mode

If  $\overline{\text{OE}}$  is set to H, data output becomes high impedance and the output disable mode is set.

Therefore, if multiple  $\mu$ PD78P083s are connected to the data bus, data can be read from any one device by controlling the  $\overline{\text{OE}}$  pin.

**(3) Standby mode**

Setting  $\overline{CE}$  to H sets the standby mode.

In this mode, data output becomes high impedance irrespective of the status of  $\overline{OE}$ .

**(4) Page data latch mode**

Setting  $\overline{CE}$  to H,  $\overline{PGM}$  to H, and  $\overline{OE}$  to L at the start of the page write mode sets the page data latch mode.

In this mode, 1-page 4-byte data is latched in the internal address/data latch circuit.

**(5) Page write mode**

After a 1-page 4-byte address and data are latched by the page data latch mode, a page write is executed by applying a 0.1-ms program pulse (active-low) to the  $\overline{PGM}$  pin while  $\overline{CE}=H$  and  $\overline{OE}=H$ . After this, program verification can be performed by setting  $\overline{CE}$  to L and  $\overline{OE}$  to L.

If programming is not performed by one program pulse, repeated write and verify operations are executed X times ( $X \leq 10$ ).

**(6) Byte write mode**

A byte write is executed by applying a 0.1-ms program pulse (active-low) to the  $\overline{PGM}$  pin while  $\overline{CE}=L$  and  $\overline{OE}=H$ . After this, program verification can be performed by setting  $\overline{OE}$  to L.

If programming is not performed by one program pulse, repeated write and verify operations are executed X times ( $X \leq 10$ ).

**(7) Program verify mode**

Setting  $\overline{CE}$  to L,  $\overline{PGM}$  to H, and  $\overline{OE}$  to L sets the program verify mode.

After writing is performed, this mode should be used to check whether the data was written correctly.

**(8) Program inhibit mode**

The program inhibit mode is used when the  $\overline{OE}$  pins,  $V_{PP}$  pins and pins D0 to D7 of multiple  $\mu$ PD78P083s are connected in parallel and any one of these devices must be written to.

The page write mode or byte write mode described above is used to perform a write. At this time, the write is not performed on the device which has the  $\overline{PGM}$  pin driven high.

15.2.2 PROM write procedure

Figure 15-2. Page Program Mode Flowchart

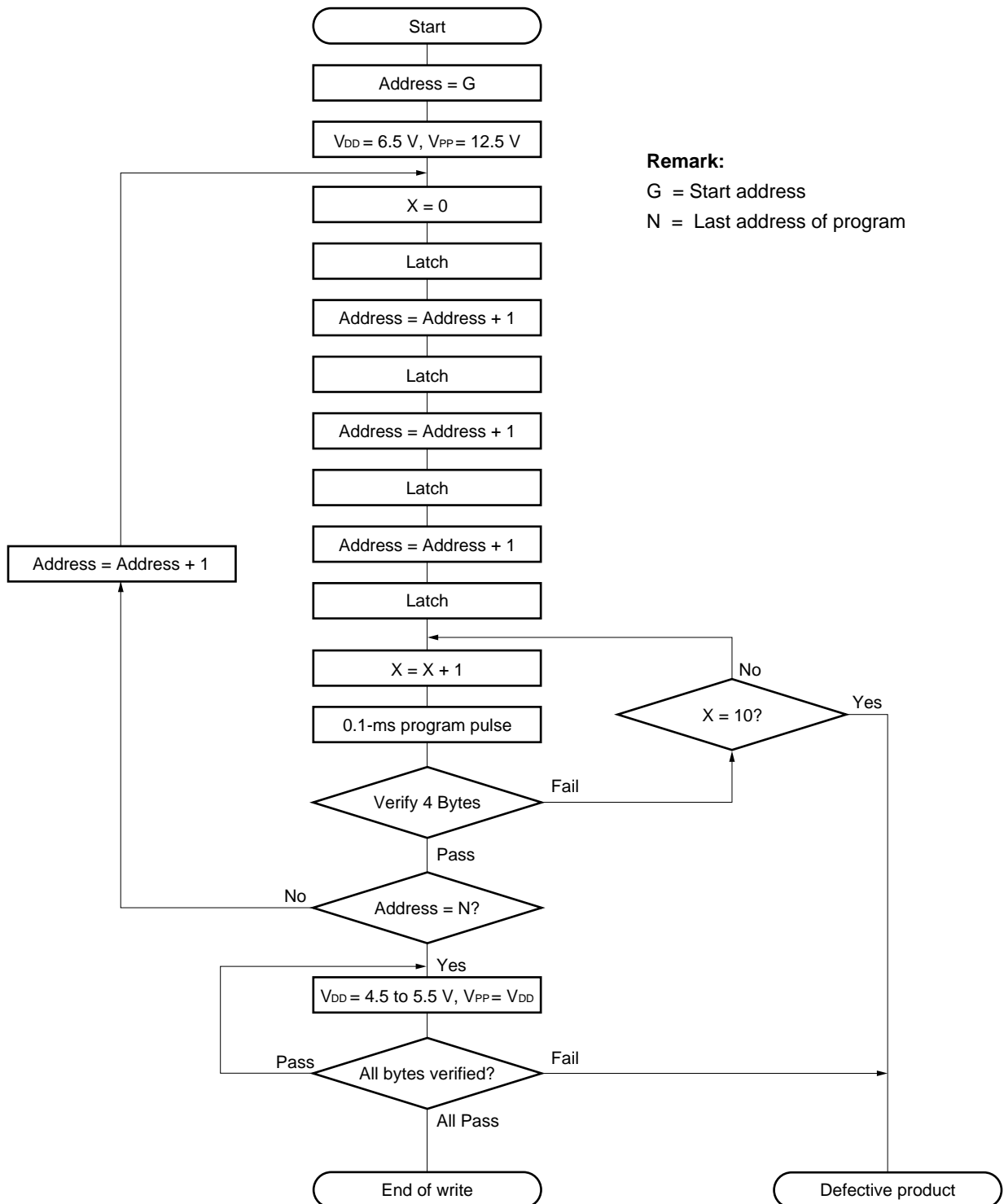




Figure 15-3. Page Program Mode Timing

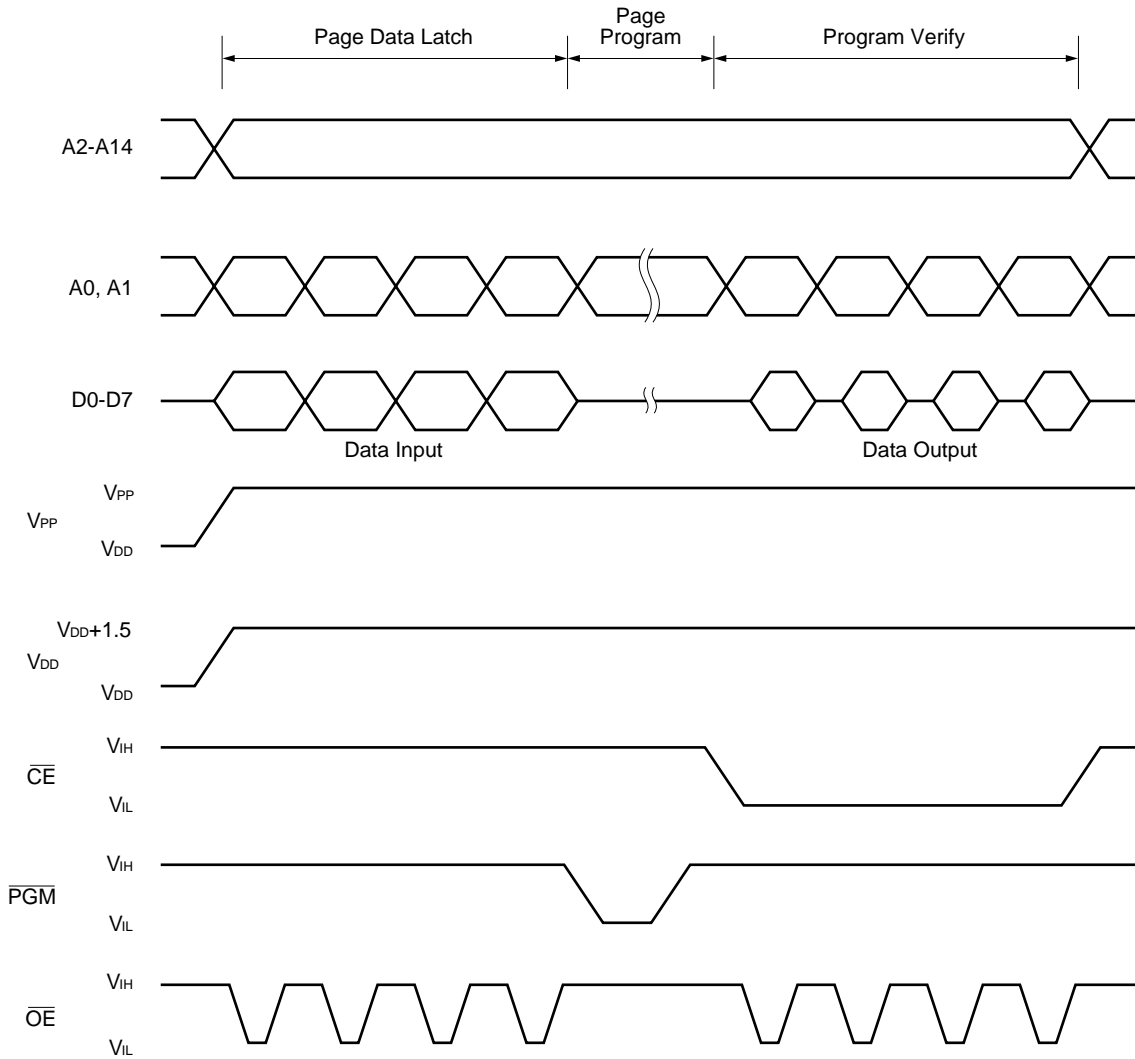


Figure 15-4. Byte Program Mode Flowchart

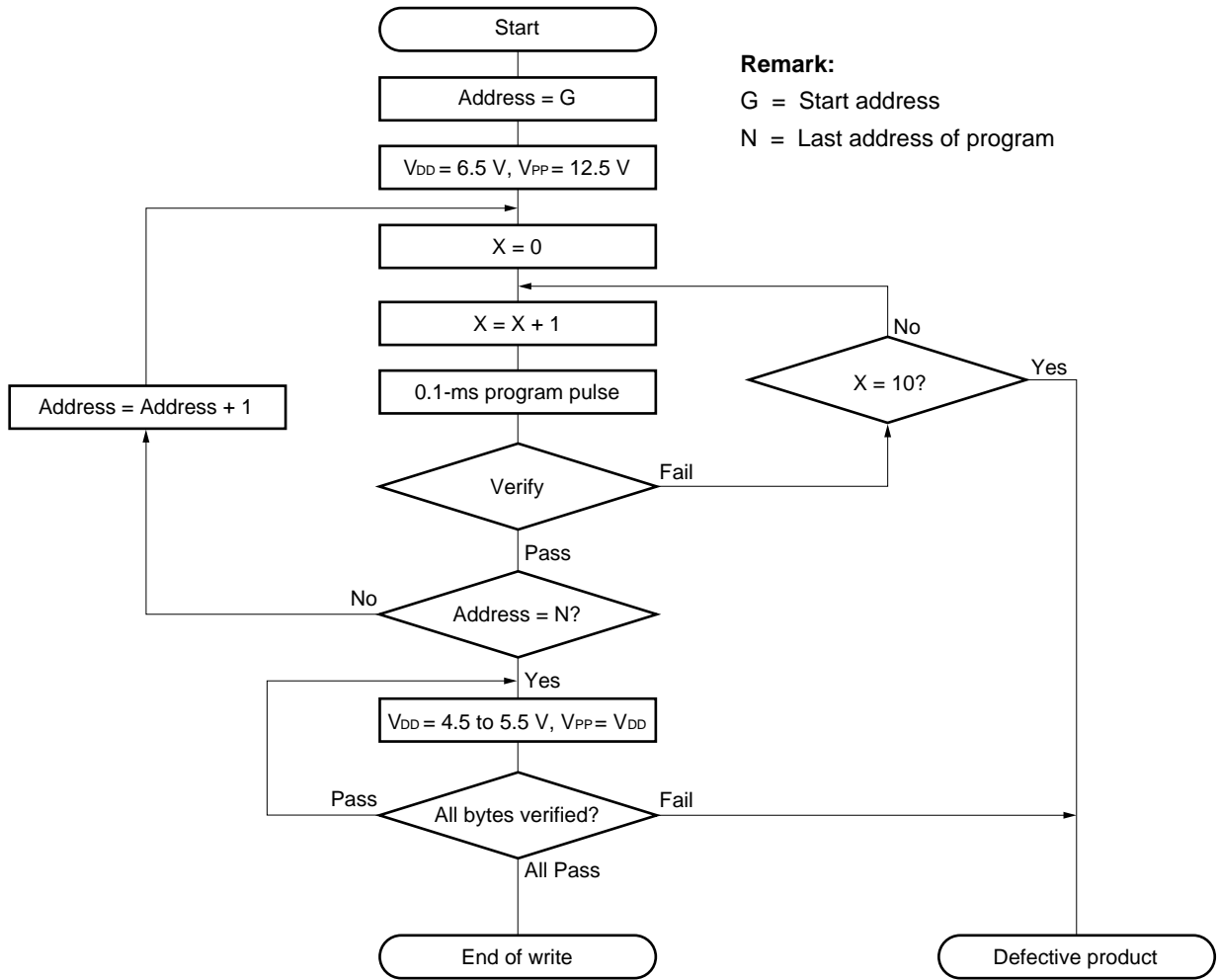
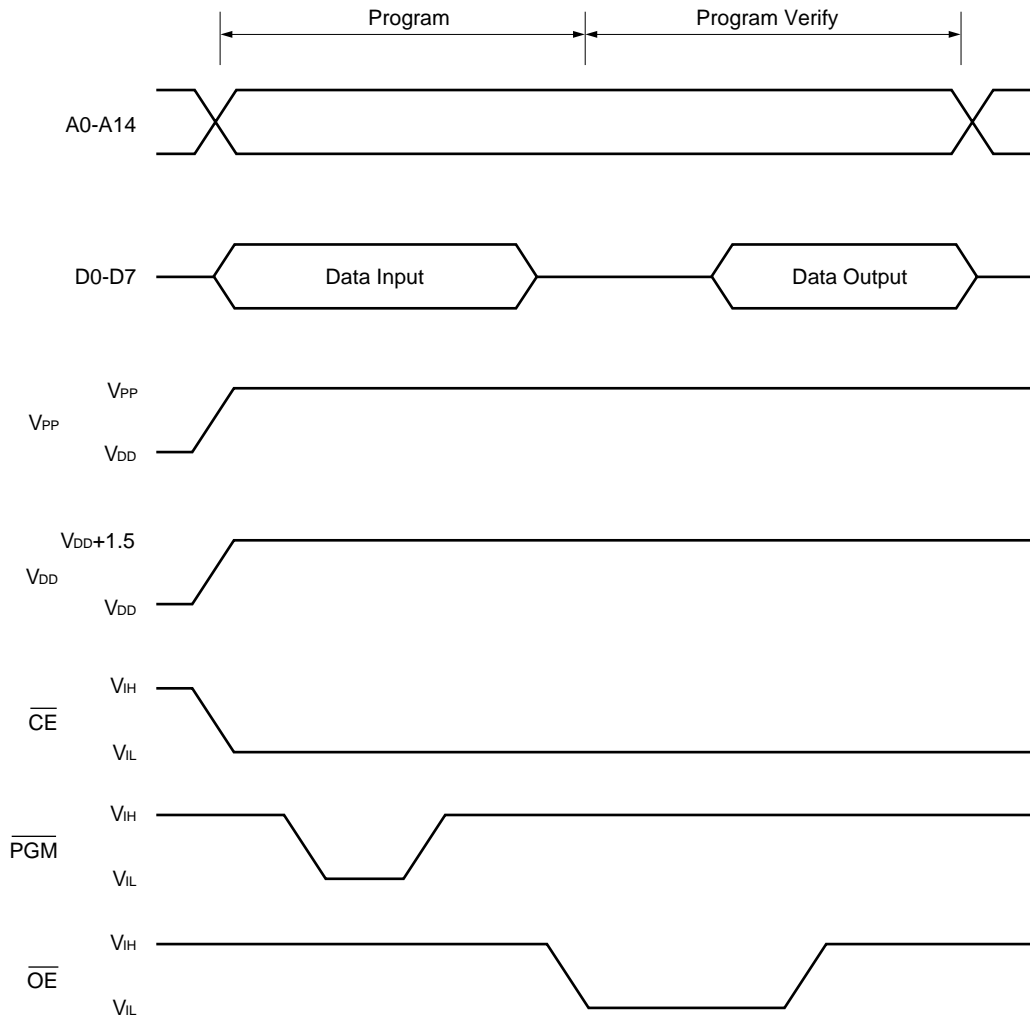


Figure 15-5. Byte Program Mode Timing



- Cautions**
1. Be sure to apply V<sub>DD</sub> before applying V<sub>PP</sub>, and remove it after removing V<sub>PP</sub>.
  2. V<sub>PP</sub> must not exceed +13.5 V including overshoot voltage.
  3. Disconnecting/inserting the device from/to the on-board socket while +12.5 V is being applied to the V<sub>PP</sub> pin may have an adverse affect on device reliability.

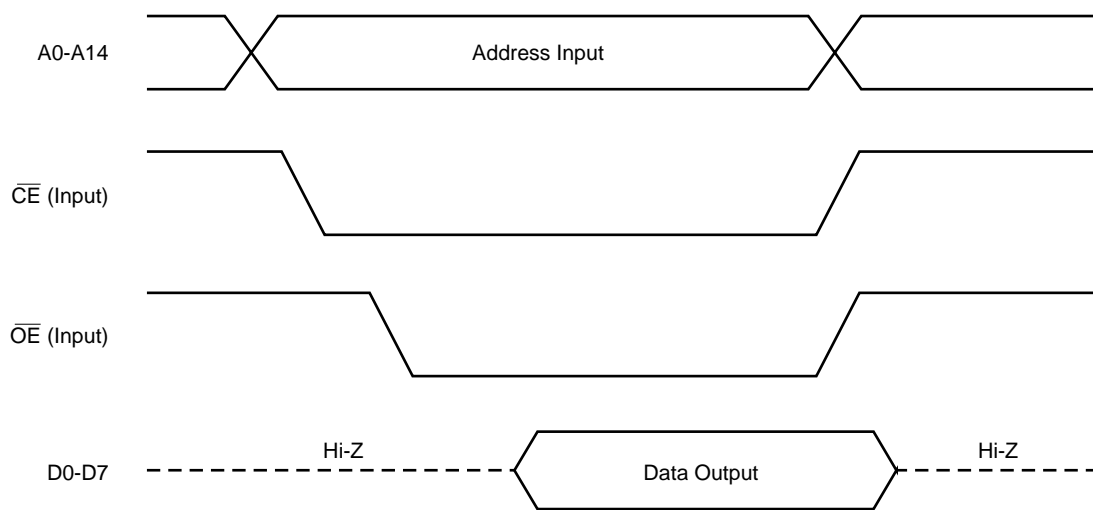
### 15.2.3 PROM reading procedure

PROM contents can be read onto the external data bus (D0 to D7) using the following procedure.

- (1) Fix the  $\overline{\text{RESET}}$  pin low, and supply +5 V to the  $V_{PP}$  pin. Unused pins are handled as shown in paragraph, **(2) "PROM programming mode"** in section 1.5 Pin Configuration (Top View).
- (2) Supply +5 V to the  $V_{DD}$  and  $V_{PP}$  pins.
- (3) Input the address of data to be read to pins A0 through A14.
- (4) Read mode is entered.
- (5) Data is output to pins D0 through D7.

The timing for steps (2) through (5) above is shown in Figure 15-6.

**Figure 15-6. PROM Read Timing**



### 15.3 Erasure Procedure ( $\mu$ PD78P083DU Only)

With the  $\mu$ PD78P083DU, it is possible to erase ( or set all contents to FFH) the data contents written in the program memory, and rewrite the memory.

The data can be erased by exposing the window to light with a wavelength of approximately 400 nm or shorter. Typically, data is erased by 254-nm ultraviolet light rays. The minimum lighting level to completely erase the written data is shown below.

- ★ • UV intensity  $\times$  exposure time: 30 W·s/cm<sup>2</sup> or more
- ★ • Exposure time: 40 minutes or more (using a 12 mW/cm<sup>2</sup> ultraviolet lamp. A longer exposure time may be required in case of deterioration of the ultraviolet lamp or dirt on the package window).

When erasing written data, remove any filter on the window and place the device within 2.5 cm of the lamp tube.

### 15.4 Opaque Film Masking the Window ( $\mu$ PD78P083DU Only)

To prevent unintentional erasure of the EPROM contents by light and to prevent internal circuits from malfunction due to light coming in through the erasure window, mask the window with opaque film after writing the EPROM.

### 15.5 Screening of One-Time PROM Versions

One-time PROM versions ( $\mu$ PD78P083CU, 78P083GB-3B4, 78P083GB-3-MTX) cannot be fully tested by NEC before shipment due to the structure of one-time PROM. Therefore, after users have written data into the PROM, screening should be implemented by user: that is, store devices at high temperature for one day as specified below, and verify their contents after the devices have returned to room temperature.

| Storage Temperature | Storage Time |
|---------------------|--------------|
| 125°C               | 24 hours     |

- ★ For users who do not wish to implement screening by themselves, NEC provides such users with a charged service in which NEC performs a series of processes from writing one-time PROMs and screening them to verifying their contents for users by request. The PROM version devices which provide this service are called QTOP™ microcontrollers. As regards the  $\mu$ PD78P083, preparations are underway. For details, please consult an NEC sales representative.

## CHAPTER 16 INSTRUCTION SET

This chapter describes each instruction set of the  $\mu$ PD78083 subseries as list table. For details of its operation and operation code, refer to the separate document “**78K/0 series USER’S MANUAL—Instruction (IEU-1372).**”

## 16.1 Legends Used in Operation List

### 16.1.1 Operand identifiers and description methods

Operands are described in “Operand” column of each instruction in accordance with the description method of the instruction operand identifier (refer to the assembler specifications for detail). When there are two or more description methods, select one of them. Alphabetic letters in capitals and symbols, #, !, \$ and [ ] are key words and must be described as they are. Each symbol has the following meaning.

- # : Immediate data specification
- ! : Absolute address specification
- \$ : Relative address specification
- [ ] : Indirect address specification

In the case of immediate data, describe an appropriate numeric value or a label. When using a label, be sure to describe the #, !, \$, and [ ] symbols.

For operand register identifiers, r and rp, either function names (X, A, C, etc.) or absolute names (names in parentheses in the table below, R0, R1, R2, etc.) can be used for description.

**Table 16-1. Operand Identifiers and Description Methods**

| Identifier | Description Method   |
|------------|--|
| r          | X (R0), A (R1), C (R2), B (R3), E (R4), D (R5), L (R6), H (R7),                                      |
| rp         | AX (RP0), BC (RP1), DE (RP2), HL (RP3)   |
| sfr        | Special-function register symbol <sup>Note</sup>   |
| sfrp       | Special-function register symbol (16-bit manipulatable register even addresses only) <sup>Note</sup> |
| saddr      | FE20H-FF1FH Immediate data or labels   |
| saddrp     | FE20H-FF1FH Immediate data or labels (even address only)   |
| addr16     | 0000H-FFFFH Immediate data or labels<br>(Only even addresses for 16-bit data transfer instructions)  |
| addr11     | 0800H-0FFFH Immediate data or labels   |
| addr5      | 0040H-007FH Immediate data or labels (even address only)   |
| word       | 16-bit immediate data or label   |
| byte       | 8-bit immediate data or label  |
| bit        | 3-bit immediate data or label  |
| RBn        | RB0 to RB3   |

**Note** Addresses from FFD0H to FFDFH cannot be accessed with these operands.

**Remark** For special-function register symbols, refer to **Table 3-2 Special-Function Register List**.

**16.1.2 Description of “operation” column**

|                                 |  |
|---------------------------------|--|
| A                               | : A register; 8-bit accumulator  |
| X                               | : X register   |
| B                               | : B register   |
| C                               | : C register   |
| D                               | : D register   |
| E                               | : E register   |
| H                               | : H register   |
| L                               | : L register   |
| AX                              | : AX register pair; 16-bit accumulator                                     |
| BC                              | : BC register pair   |
| DE                              | : DE register pair   |
| HL                              | : HL register pair   |
| PC                              | : Program counter  |
| SP                              | : Stack pointer  |
| PSW                             | : Program status word  |
| CY                              | : Carry flag   |
| AC                              | : Auxiliary carry flag   |
| Z                               | : Zero flag  |
| RBS                             | : Register bank select flag  |
| IE                              | : Interrupt request enable flag  |
| NMIS                            | : Non-maskable interrupt servicing flag                                    |
| ( )                             | : Memory contents indicated by address or register contents in parentheses |
| × <sub>H</sub> , × <sub>L</sub> | : Higher 8 bits and lower 8 bits of 16-bit register                        |
| ∧                               | : Logical product (AND)  |
| ∨                               | : Logical sum (OR)   |
| ⊕                               | : Exclusive logical sum (exclusive OR)                                     |
| —                               | : Inverted data  |
| addr16                          | : 16-bit immediate data or label   |
| jdisp8                          | : Signed 8-bit data (displacement value)                                   |

**16.1.3 Description of “flag operation” column**

|         |                                       |
|---------|---------------------------------------|
| (Blank) | : Not affected                        |
| 0       | : Cleared to 0                        |
| 1       | : Set to 1                            |
| ×       | : Set/cleared according to the result |
| R       | : Previously saved value is restored  |



## 16.2 Operation List

| Instruction Group   | Mnemonic       | Operands       | Byte       | Clock  |  | Operation                               | Flag  |                                     |     |  |
|---------------------|----------------|----------------|------------|--------|--|---|---|-------------------------------------|-----|--|
|                     |                |                |            | Note 1 | Note 2                                     |   | Z   | ACC Y                               |     |  |
| 8-bit data transfer | MOV            | r, #byte       | 2          | 4      | –  | $r \leftarrow \text{byte}$              |   |                                     |     |  |
|                     |                | saddr, #byte   | 3          | 6      | 7  | $(\text{saddr}) \leftarrow \text{byte}$ |   |                                     |     |  |
|                     |                | sfr, #byte     | 3          | –      | 7  | $\text{sfr} \leftarrow \text{byte}$     |   |                                     |     |  |
|                     |                | A, r           | Note 3     | 1      | 2  | –                                       | $A \leftarrow r$                              |                                     |     |  |
|                     |                | r, A           | Note 3     | 1      | 2  | –                                       | $r \leftarrow A$                              |                                     |     |  |
|                     |                | A, saddr       |            | 2      | 4  | 5                                       | $A \leftarrow (\text{saddr})$                 |                                     |     |  |
|                     |                | saddr, A       |            | 2      | 4  | 5                                       | $(\text{saddr}) \leftarrow A$                 |                                     |     |  |
|                     |                | A, sfr         |            | 2      | –  | 5                                       | $A \leftarrow \text{sfr}$                     |                                     |     |  |
|                     |                | sfr, A         |            | 2      | –  | 5                                       | $\text{sfr} \leftarrow A$                     |                                     |     |  |
|                     |                | A, !addr16     |            | 3      | 8  | 9                                       | $A \leftarrow (\text{addr16})$                |                                     |     |  |
|                     |                | !addr16, A     |            | 3      | 8  | 9                                       | $(\text{addr16}) \leftarrow A$                |                                     |     |  |
|                     |                | PSW, #byte     |            | 3      | –  | 7                                       | $\text{PSW} \leftarrow \text{byte}$           | x                                   | x x |  |
|                     |                | A, PSW         |            | 2      | –  | 5                                       | $A \leftarrow \text{PSW}$                     |                                     |     |  |
|                     |                | PSW, A         |            | 2      | –  | 5                                       | $\text{PSW} \leftarrow A$                     | x                                   | x x |  |
|                     |                | A, [DE]        |            | 1      | 4  | 5                                       | $A \leftarrow (\text{DE})$                    |                                     |     |  |
|                     |                | [DE], A        |            | 1      | 4  | 5                                       | $(\text{DE}) \leftarrow A$                    |                                     |     |  |
|                     |                | A, [HL]        |            | 1      | 4  | 5                                       | $A \leftarrow (\text{HL})$                    |                                     |     |  |
|                     |                | [HL], A        |            | 1      | 4  | 5                                       | $(\text{HL}) \leftarrow A$                    |                                     |     |  |
|                     |                | A, [HL + byte] |            | 2      | 8  | 9                                       | $A \leftarrow (\text{HL} + \text{byte})$      |                                     |     |  |
|                     |                | [HL + byte], A |            | 2      | 8  | 9                                       | $(\text{HL} + \text{byte}) \leftarrow A$      |                                     |     |  |
|                     |                | A, [HL + B]    |            | 1      | 6  | 7                                       | $A \leftarrow (\text{HL} + \text{B})$         |                                     |     |  |
|                     |                | [HL + B], A    |            | 1      | 6  | 7                                       | $(\text{HL} + \text{B}) \leftarrow A$         |                                     |     |  |
|                     |                | A, [HL + C]    |            | 1      | 6  | 7                                       | $A \leftarrow (\text{HL} + \text{C})$         |                                     |     |  |
|                     |                | [HL + C], A    |            | 1      | 6  | 7                                       | $(\text{HL} + \text{C}) \leftarrow A$         |                                     |     |  |
|                     |                | XCH            | A, r       | Note 3 | 1  | 2                                       | –   | $A \leftrightarrow r$               |     |  |
|                     |                |                | A, saddr   |        | 2  | 4                                       | 6   | $A \leftrightarrow (\text{saddr})$  |     |  |
|                     |                |                | A, sfr     |        | 2  | –                                       | 6   | $A \leftrightarrow \text{sfr}$      |     |  |
|                     |                |                | A, !addr16 |        | 3  | 8                                       | 10  | $A \leftrightarrow (\text{addr16})$ |     |  |
|                     | A, [DE]        |                |            | 1      | 4  | 6                                       | $A \leftrightarrow (\text{DE})$               |                                     |     |  |
|                     | A, [HL]        |                |            | 1      | 4  | 6                                       | $A \leftrightarrow (\text{HL})$               |                                     |     |  |
|                     | A, [HL + byte] |                |            | 2      | 8  | 10                                      | $A \leftrightarrow (\text{HL} + \text{byte})$ |                                     |     |  |
|                     | A, [HL + B]    |                |            | 2      | 8  | 10                                      | $A \leftrightarrow (\text{HL} + \text{B})$    |                                     |     |  |
| A, [HL + C]         |                | 2              | 8          | 10     | $A \leftrightarrow (\text{HL} + \text{C})$ |   |   |                                     |     |  |

- Notes**
1. When the internal high-speed RAM area is accessed or instruction with no data access
  2. When an area except the internal high-speed RAM area is accessed.
  3. Except “r = A”

**Remark** One instruction clock cycle is one cycle of the CPU clock ( $f_{\text{CPU}}$ ) selected by the PCC register.

| Instruction Group    | Mnemonic             | Operands             | Byte | Clock                                |                                 | Operation   | Flag |    |    |
|----------------------|----------------------|----------------------|------|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------|---|------|----|----|
|                      |                      |                      |      | Note 1                               | Note 2                          |   | Z    | AC | CY |
| 16-bit data transfer | <b>MOVW</b>          | rp, #word            | 3    | 6                                    | –                               | $rp \leftarrow \text{word}$                         |      |    |    |
|                      |                      | saddrp, #word        | 4    | 8                                    | 10                              | $(saddrp) \leftarrow \text{word}$                   |      |    |    |
|                      |                      | sfrp, #word          | 4    | –                                    | 10                              | $sfrp \leftarrow \text{word}$                       |      |    |    |
|                      |                      | AX, saddrp           | 2    | 6                                    | 8                               | $AX \leftarrow (saddrp)$                            |      |    |    |
|                      |                      | saddrp, AX           | 2    | 6                                    | 8                               | $(saddrp) \leftarrow AX$                            |      |    |    |
|                      |                      | AX, sfrp             | 2    | –                                    | 8                               | $AX \leftarrow sfrp$                                |      |    |    |
|                      |                      | sfrp, AX             | 2    | –                                    | 8                               | $sfrp \leftarrow AX$                                |      |    |    |
|                      |                      | AX, rp <b>Note 3</b> | 1    | 4                                    | –                               | $AX \leftarrow rp$                                  |      |    |    |
|                      |                      | rp, AX <b>Note 3</b> | 1    | 4                                    | –                               | $rp \leftarrow AX$                                  |      |    |    |
|                      |                      | AX, !addr16          | 3    | 10                                   | 12                              | $AX \leftarrow (\text{addr16})$                     |      |    |    |
|                      | !addr16, AX          | 3                    | 10   | 12                                   | $(\text{addr16}) \leftarrow AX$ |   |      |    |    |
| <b>XCHW</b>          | AX, rp <b>Note 3</b> | 1                    | 4    | –                                    | $AX \leftrightarrow rp$         |   |      |    |    |
| 8-bit operation      | <b>ADD</b>           | A, #byte             | 2    | 4                                    | –                               | $A, CY \leftarrow A + \text{byte}$                  | x    | x  | x  |
|                      |                      | saddr, #byte         | 3    | 6                                    | 8                               | $(saddr), CY \leftarrow (saddr) + \text{byte}$      | x    | x  | x  |
|                      |                      | A, r <b>Note 4</b>   | 2    | 4                                    | –                               | $A, CY \leftarrow A + r$                            | x    | x  | x  |
|                      |                      | r, A                 | 2    | 4                                    | –                               | $r, CY \leftarrow r + A$                            | x    | x  | x  |
|                      |                      | A, saddr             | 2    | 4                                    | 5                               | $A, CY \leftarrow A + (saddr)$                      | x    | x  | x  |
|                      |                      | A, !addr16           | 3    | 8                                    | 9                               | $A, CY \leftarrow A + (\text{addr16})$              | x    | x  | x  |
|                      |                      | A, [HL]              | 1    | 4                                    | 5                               | $A, CY \leftarrow A + (HL)$                         | x    | x  | x  |
|                      |                      | A, [HL + byte]       | 2    | 8                                    | 9                               | $A, CY \leftarrow A + (HL + \text{byte})$           | x    | x  | x  |
|                      |                      | A, [HL + B]          | 2    | 8                                    | 9                               | $A, CY \leftarrow A + (HL + B)$                     | x    | x  | x  |
|                      |                      | A, [HL + C]          | 2    | 8                                    | 9                               | $A, CY \leftarrow A + (HL + C)$                     | x    | x  | x  |
|                      | <b>ADDC</b>          | A, #byte             | 2    | 4                                    | –                               | $A, CY \leftarrow A + \text{byte} + CY$             | x    | x  | x  |
|                      |                      | saddr, #byte         | 3    | 6                                    | 8                               | $(saddr), CY \leftarrow (saddr) + \text{byte} + CY$ | x    | x  | x  |
|                      |                      | A, r <b>Note 4</b>   | 2    | 4                                    | –                               | $A, CY \leftarrow A + r + CY$                       | x    | x  | x  |
|                      |                      | r, A                 | 2    | 4                                    | –                               | $r, CY \leftarrow r + A + CY$                       | x    | x  | x  |
|                      |                      | A, saddr             | 2    | 4                                    | 5                               | $A, CY \leftarrow A + (saddr) + CY$                 | x    | x  | x  |
|                      |                      | A, !addr16           | 3    | 8                                    | 9                               | $A, CY \leftarrow A + (\text{addr16}) + CY$         | x    | x  | x  |
|                      |                      | A, [HL]              | 1    | 4                                    | 5                               | $A, CY \leftarrow A + (HL) + CY$                    | x    | x  | x  |
|                      |                      | A, [HL + byte]       | 2    | 8                                    | 9                               | $A, CY \leftarrow A + (HL + \text{byte}) + CY$      | x    | x  | x  |
|                      |                      | A, [HL + B]          | 2    | 8                                    | 9                               | $A, CY \leftarrow A + (HL + B) + CY$                | x    | x  | x  |
| A, [HL + C]          | 2                    | 8                    | 9    | $A, CY \leftarrow A + (HL + C) + CY$ | x                               | x   | x    |    |    |

- Notes**
1. When the internal high-speed RAM area is accessed or instruction with no data access
  2. When an area except the internal high-speed RAM area is accessed
  3. Only when rp = BC, DE or HL
  4. Except “r = A”

**Remark** One instruction clock cycle is one cycle of the CPU clock ( $f_{CPU}$ ) selected by the PCC register.

| Instruction Group | Mnemonic | Operands           | Byte | Clock  |                     | Operation                         | Flag |    |    |
|-------------------|----------|--------------------|------|--------|---------------------|-----------------------------------|------|----|----|
|                   |          |                    |      | Note 1 | Note 2              |                                   | Z    | AC | CY |
| 8-bit operation   | SUB      | A, #byte           | 2    | 4      | –                   | A, CY ← A – byte                  | ×    | ×  | ×  |
|                   |          | saddr, #byte       | 3    | 6      | 8                   | (saddr), CY ← (saddr) – byte      | ×    | ×  | ×  |
|                   |          | A, r <b>Note 3</b> | 2    | 4      | –                   | A, CY ← A – r                     | ×    | ×  | ×  |
|                   |          | r, A               | 2    | 4      | –                   | r, CY ← r – A                     | ×    | ×  | ×  |
|                   |          | A, saddr           | 2    | 4      | 5                   | A, CY ← A – (saddr)               | ×    | ×  | ×  |
|                   |          | A, !addr16         | 3    | 8      | 9                   | A, CY ← A – (addr16)              | ×    | ×  | ×  |
|                   |          | A, [HL]            | 1    | 4      | 5                   | A, CY ← A – (HL)                  | ×    | ×  | ×  |
|                   |          | A, [HL + byte]     | 2    | 8      | 9                   | A, CY ← A – (HL + byte)           | ×    | ×  | ×  |
|                   |          | A, [HL + B]        | 2    | 8      | 9                   | A, CY ← A – (HL + B)              | ×    | ×  | ×  |
|                   |          | A, [HL + C]        | 2    | 8      | 9                   | A, CY ← A – (HL + C)              | ×    | ×  | ×  |
|                   | SUBC     | A, #byte           | 2    | 4      | –                   | A, CY ← A – byte – CY             | ×    | ×  | ×  |
|                   |          | saddr, #byte       | 3    | 6      | 8                   | (saddr), CY ← (saddr) – byte – CY | ×    | ×  | ×  |
|                   |          | A, r <b>Note 3</b> | 2    | 4      | –                   | A, CY ← A – r – CY                | ×    | ×  | ×  |
|                   |          | r, A               | 2    | 4      | –                   | r, CY ← r – A – CY                | ×    | ×  | ×  |
|                   |          | A, saddr           | 2    | 4      | 5                   | A, CY ← A – (saddr) – CY          | ×    | ×  | ×  |
|                   |          | A, !addr16         | 3    | 8      | 9                   | A, CY ← A – (addr16) – CY         | ×    | ×  | ×  |
|                   |          | A, [HL]            | 1    | 4      | 5                   | A, CY ← A – (HL) – CY             | ×    | ×  | ×  |
|                   |          | A, [HL + byte]     | 2    | 8      | 9                   | A, CY ← A – (HL + byte) – CY      | ×    | ×  | ×  |
|                   |          | A, [HL + B]        | 2    | 8      | 9                   | A, CY ← A – (HL + B) – CY         | ×    | ×  | ×  |
|                   |          | A, [HL + C]        | 2    | 8      | 9                   | A, CY ← A – (HL + C) – CY         | ×    | ×  | ×  |
|                   | AND      | A, #byte           | 2    | 4      | –                   | A ← A ^ byte                      | ×    |    |    |
|                   |          | saddr, #byte       | 3    | 6      | 8                   | (saddr) ← (saddr) ^ byte          | ×    |    |    |
|                   |          | A, r <b>Note 3</b> | 2    | 4      | –                   | A ← A ^ r                         | ×    |    |    |
|                   |          | r, A               | 2    | 4      | –                   | r ← r ^ A                         | ×    |    |    |
|                   |          | A, saddr           | 2    | 4      | 5                   | A ← A ^ (saddr)                   | ×    |    |    |
|                   |          | A, !addr16         | 3    | 8      | 9                   | A ← A ^ (addr16)                  | ×    |    |    |
|                   |          | A, [HL]            | 1    | 4      | 5                   | A ← A ^ (HL)                      | ×    |    |    |
| A, [HL + byte]    |          | 2                  | 8    | 9      | A ← A ^ (HL + byte) | ×                                 |      |    |    |
| A, [HL + B]       |          | 2                  | 8    | 9      | A ← A ^ (HL + B)    | ×                                 |      |    |    |
| A, [HL + C]       |          | 2                  | 8    | 9      | A ← A ^ (HL + C)    | ×                                 |      |    |    |

- Notes**
1. When the internal high-speed RAM area is accessed or instruction with no data access
  2. When an area except the internal high-speed RAM area is accessed
  3. Except “r = A”

**Remark** One instruction clock cycle is one cycle of the CPU clock (f<sub>CPU</sub>) selected by the PCC register.

| Instruction Group | Mnemonic | Operands           | Byte | Clock  |        | Operation   | Flag |    |    |
|-------------------|----------|--------------------|------|--------|--------|---|------|----|----|
|                   |          |                    |      | Note 1 | Note 2 |   | Z    | AC | CY |
| 8-bit operation   | OR       | A, #byte           | 2    | 4      | –      | $A \leftarrow A \vee \text{byte}$                             |      | x  |    |
|                   |          | saddr, #byte       | 3    | 6      | 8      | $(\text{saddr}) \leftarrow (\text{saddr}) \vee \text{byte}$   |      | x  |    |
|                   |          | A, r <b>Note 3</b> | 2    | 4      | –      | $A \leftarrow A \vee r$                                       |      | x  |    |
|                   |          | r, A               | 2    | 4      | –      | $r \leftarrow r \vee A$                                       |      | x  |    |
|                   |          | A, saddr           | 2    | 4      | 5      | $A \leftarrow A \vee (\text{saddr})$                          |      | x  |    |
|                   |          | A, !addr16         | 3    | 8      | 9      | $A \leftarrow A \vee (\text{addr16})$                         |      | x  |    |
|                   |          | A, [HL]            | 1    | 4      | 5      | $A \leftarrow A \vee (\text{HL})$                             |      | x  |    |
|                   |          | A, [HL + byte]     | 2    | 8      | 9      | $A \leftarrow A \vee (\text{HL} + \text{byte})$               |      | x  |    |
|                   |          | A, [HL + B]        | 2    | 8      | 9      | $A \leftarrow A \vee (\text{HL} + B)$                         |      | x  |    |
|                   |          | A, [HL + C]        | 2    | 8      | 9      | $A \leftarrow A \vee (\text{HL} + C)$                         |      | x  |    |
|                   | XOR      | A, #byte           | 2    | 4      | –      | $A \leftarrow A \oplus \text{byte}$                           |      | x  |    |
|                   |          | saddr, #byte       | 3    | 6      | 8      | $(\text{saddr}) \leftarrow (\text{saddr}) \oplus \text{byte}$ |      | x  |    |
|                   |          | A, r <b>Note 3</b> | 2    | 4      | –      | $A \leftarrow A \oplus r$                                     |      | x  |    |
|                   |          | r, A               | 2    | 4      | –      | $r \leftarrow r \oplus A$                                     |      | x  |    |
|                   |          | A, saddr           | 2    | 4      | 5      | $A \leftarrow A \oplus (\text{saddr})$                        |      | x  |    |
|                   |          | A, !addr16         | 3    | 8      | 9      | $A \leftarrow A \oplus (\text{addr16})$                       |      | x  |    |
|                   |          | A, [HL]            | 1    | 4      | 5      | $A \leftarrow A \oplus (\text{HL})$                           |      | x  |    |
|                   |          | A, [HL + byte]     | 2    | 8      | 9      | $A \leftarrow A \oplus (\text{HL} + \text{byte})$             |      | x  |    |
|                   |          | A, [HL + B]        | 2    | 8      | 9      | $A \leftarrow A \oplus (\text{HL} + B)$                       |      | x  |    |
|                   |          | A, [HL + C]        | 2    | 8      | 9      | $A \leftarrow A \oplus (\text{HL} + C)$                       |      | x  |    |
|                   | CMP      | A, #byte           | 2    | 4      | –      | $A - \text{byte}$   | x    | x  | x  |
|                   |          | saddr, #byte       | 3    | 6      | 8      | $(\text{saddr}) - \text{byte}$                                | x    | x  | x  |
|                   |          | A, r <b>Note 3</b> | 2    | 4      | –      | $A - r$   | x    | x  | x  |
|                   |          | r, A               | 2    | 4      | –      | $r - A$   | x    | x  | x  |
|                   |          | A, saddr           | 2    | 4      | 5      | $A - (\text{saddr})$  | x    | x  | x  |
|                   |          | A, !addr16         | 3    | 8      | 9      | $A - (\text{addr16})$   | x    | x  | x  |
|                   |          | A, [HL]            | 1    | 4      | 5      | $A - (\text{HL})$   | x    | x  | x  |
|                   |          | A, [HL + byte]     | 2    | 8      | 9      | $A - (\text{HL} + \text{byte})$                               | x    | x  | x  |
|                   |          | A, [HL + B]        | 2    | 8      | 9      | $A - (\text{HL} + B)$   | x    | x  | x  |
|                   |          | A, [HL + C]        | 2    | 8      | 9      | $A - (\text{HL} + C)$   | x    | x  | x  |

- Notes**
1. When the internal high-speed RAM area is accessed or instruction with no data access
  2. When an area except the internal high-speed RAM area is accessed
  3. Except “r = A”

**Remark** One instruction clock cycle is one cycle of the CPU clock ( $f_{\text{CPU}}$ ) selected by the PCC register.

| Instruction Group   | Mnemonic     | Operands      | Byte | Clock         |             | Operation   | Flag |    |    |
|---------------------|--------------|---------------|------|---------------|-------------|---|------|----|----|
|                     |              |               |      | Note 1        | Note 2      |   | Z    | AC | CY |
| 16-bit operation    | <b>ADDW</b>  | AX, #word     | 3    | 6             | –           | AX, CY ← AX + word  | ×    | ×  | ×  |
|                     | <b>SUBW</b>  | AX, #word     | 3    | 6             | –           | AX, CY ← AX – word  | ×    | ×  | ×  |
|                     | <b>CMPW</b>  | AX, #word     | 3    | 6             | –           | AX – word   | ×    | ×  | ×  |
| Multiply/divide     | <b>MULU</b>  | X             | 2    | 16            | –           | AX ← A × X  |      |    |    |
|                     | <b>DIVUW</b> | C             | 2    | 25            | –           | AX (Quotient), C (Remainder) ← AX ÷ C   |      |    |    |
| Increment/decrement | <b>INC</b>   | r             | 1    | 2             | –           | r ← r + 1   | ×    | ×  |    |
|                     |              | saddr         | 2    | 4             | 6           | (saddr) ← (saddr) + 1   | ×    | ×  |    |
|                     | <b>DEC</b>   | r             | 1    | 2             | –           | r ← r – 1   | ×    | ×  |    |
|                     |              | saddr         | 2    | 4             | 6           | (saddr) ← (saddr) – 1   | ×    | ×  |    |
|                     | <b>INCW</b>  | rp            | 1    | 4             | –           | rp ← rp + 1   |      |    |    |
| <b>DECW</b>         | rp           | 1             | 4    | –             | rp ← rp – 1 |   |      |    |    |
| Rotate              | <b>ROR</b>   | A, 1          | 1    | 2             | –           | (CY, A <sub>7</sub> ← A <sub>0</sub> , A <sub>m-1</sub> ← A <sub>m</sub> ) × 1 time   |      |    | ×  |
|                     | <b>ROL</b>   | A, 1          | 1    | 2             | –           | (CY, A <sub>0</sub> ← A <sub>7</sub> , A <sub>m+1</sub> ← A <sub>m</sub> ) × 1 time   |      |    | ×  |
|                     | <b>RORC</b>  | A, 1          | 1    | 2             | –           | (CY ← A <sub>0</sub> , A <sub>7</sub> ← CY, A <sub>m-1</sub> ← A <sub>m</sub> ) × 1 time                                    |      |    | ×  |
|                     | <b>ROLC</b>  | A, 1          | 1    | 2             | –           | (CY ← A <sub>7</sub> , A <sub>0</sub> ← CY, A <sub>m+1</sub> ← A <sub>m</sub> ) × 1 time                                    |      |    | ×  |
|                     | <b>ROR4</b>  | [HL]          | 2    | 10            | 12          | A <sub>3-0</sub> ← (HL) <sub>3-0</sub> , (HL) <sub>7-4</sub> ← A <sub>3-0</sub> , (HL) <sub>3-0</sub> ← (HL) <sub>7-4</sub> |      |    |    |
|                     | <b>ROL4</b>  | [HL]          | 2    | 10            | 12          | A <sub>3-0</sub> ← (HL) <sub>7-4</sub> , (HL) <sub>3-0</sub> ← A <sub>3-0</sub> , (HL) <sub>7-4</sub> ← (HL) <sub>3-0</sub> |      |    |    |
| BCD adjust          | <b>ADJBA</b> |               | 2    | 4             | –           | Decimal Adjust Accumulator after Addition   | ×    | ×  | ×  |
|                     | <b>ADJBS</b> |               | 2    | 4             | –           | Decimal Adjust Accumulator after Subtract   | ×    | ×  | ×  |
| Bit manipulate      | <b>MOV1</b>  | CY, saddr.bit | 3    | 6             | 7           | CY ← (saddr.bit)  |      |    | ×  |
|                     |              | CY, sfr.bit   | 3    | –             | 7           | CY ← sfr.bit  |      |    | ×  |
|                     |              | CY, A.bit     | 2    | 4             | –           | CY ← A.bit  |      |    | ×  |
|                     |              | CY, PSW.bit   | 3    | –             | 7           | CY ← PSW.bit  |      |    | ×  |
|                     |              | CY, [HL].bit  | 2    | 6             | 7           | CY ← (HL).bit   |      |    | ×  |
|                     |              | saddr.bit, CY | 3    | 6             | 8           | (saddr.bit) ← CY  |      |    |    |
|                     |              | sfr.bit, CY   | 3    | –             | 8           | sfr.bit ← CY  |      |    |    |
|                     |              | A.bit, CY     | 2    | 4             | –           | A.bit ← CY  |      |    |    |
|                     |              | PSW.bit, CY   | 3    | –             | 8           | PSW.bit ← CY  |      |    | ×  |
| [HL].bit, CY        | 2            | 6             | 8    | (HL).bit ← CY |             |   |      |    |    |

- Notes**
1. When the internal high-speed RAM area is accessed or instruction with no data access
  2. When an area except the internal high-speed RAM area is accessed

**Remark** One instruction clock cycle is one cycle of the CPU clock (f<sub>CPU</sub>) selected by the PCC register.

| Instruction Group | Mnemonic | Operands      | Byte | Clock  |        | Operation                             | Flag |    |    |
|-------------------|----------|---------------|------|--------|--------|---------------------------------------|------|----|----|
|                   |          |               |      | Note 1 | Note 2 |                                       | Z    | AC | CY |
| Bit manipulate    | AND1     | CY, saddr.bit | 3    | 6      | 7      | $CY \leftarrow CY \wedge (saddr.bit)$ |      |    | ×  |
|                   |          | CY, sfr.bit   | 3    | –      | 7      | $CY \leftarrow CY \wedge sfr.bit$     |      |    | ×  |
|                   |          | CY, A.bit     | 2    | 4      | –      | $CY \leftarrow CY \wedge A.bit$       |      |    | ×  |
|                   |          | CY, PSW.bit   | 3    | –      | 7      | $CY \leftarrow CY \wedge PSW.bit$     |      |    | ×  |
|                   |          | CY, [HL].bit  | 2    | 6      | 7      | $CY \leftarrow CY \wedge (HL).bit$    |      |    | ×  |
|                   | OR1      | CY, saddr.bit | 3    | 6      | 7      | $CY \leftarrow CY \vee (saddr.bit)$   |      |    | ×  |
|                   |          | CY, sfr.bit   | 3    | –      | 7      | $CY \leftarrow CY \vee sfr.bit$       |      |    | ×  |
|                   |          | CY, A.bit     | 2    | 4      | –      | $CY \leftarrow CY \vee A.bit$         |      |    | ×  |
|                   |          | CY, PSW.bit   | 3    | –      | 7      | $CY \leftarrow CY \vee PSW.bit$       |      |    | ×  |
|                   |          | CY, [HL].bit  | 2    | 6      | 7      | $CY \leftarrow CY \vee (HL).bit$      |      |    | ×  |
|                   | XOR1     | CY, saddr.bit | 3    | 6      | 7      | $CY \leftarrow CY \oplus (saddr.bit)$ |      |    | ×  |
|                   |          | CY, sfr.bit   | 3    | –      | 7      | $CY \leftarrow CY \oplus sfr.bit$     |      |    | ×  |
|                   |          | CY, A.bit     | 2    | 4      | –      | $CY \leftarrow CY \oplus A.bit$       |      |    | ×  |
|                   |          | CY, PSW.bit   | 3    | –      | 7      | $CY \leftarrow CY \oplus PSW.bit$     |      |    | ×  |
|                   |          | CY, [HL].bit  | 2    | 6      | 7      | $CY \leftarrow CY \oplus (HL).bit$    |      |    | ×  |
|                   | SET1     | saddr.bit     | 2    | 4      | 6      | $(saddr.bit) \leftarrow 1$            |      |    |    |
|                   |          | sfr.bit       | 3    | –      | 8      | $sfr.bit \leftarrow 1$                |      |    |    |
|                   |          | A.bit         | 2    | 4      | –      | $A.bit \leftarrow 1$                  |      |    |    |
|                   |          | PSW.bit       | 2    | –      | 6      | $PSW.bit \leftarrow 1$                | ×    | ×  | ×  |
|                   |          | [HL].bit      | 2    | 6      | 8      | $(HL).bit \leftarrow 1$               |      |    |    |
|                   | CLR1     | saddr.bit     | 2    | 4      | 6      | $(saddr.bit) \leftarrow 0$            |      |    |    |
|                   |          | sfr.bit       | 3    | –      | 8      | $sfr.bit \leftarrow 0$                |      |    |    |
|                   |          | A.bit         | 2    | 4      | –      | $A.bit \leftarrow 0$                  |      |    |    |
|                   |          | PSW.bit       | 2    | –      | 6      | $PSW.bit \leftarrow 0$                | ×    | ×  | ×  |
|                   |          | [HL].bit      | 2    | 6      | 8      | $(HL).bit \leftarrow 0$               |      |    |    |
|                   | SET1     | CY            | 1    | 2      | –      | $CY \leftarrow 1$                     |      |    | 1  |
|                   | CLR1     | CY            | 1    | 2      | –      | $CY \leftarrow 0$                     |      |    | 0  |
|                   | NOT1     | CY            | 1    | 2      | –      | $CY \leftarrow \overline{CY}$         |      |    | ×  |

- Notes**
1. When the internal high-speed RAM area is accessed or instruction with no data access
  2. When an area except the internal high-speed RAM area is accessed

**Remark** One instruction clock cycle is one cycle of the CPU clock ( $f_{CPU}$ ) selected by the PCC register.

| Instruction Group            | Mnemonic     | Operands  | Byte | Clock  |                    | Operation   | Flag |    |    |
|------------------------------|--------------|-----------|------|--------|--------------------|---|------|----|----|
|                              |              |           |      | Note 1 | Note 2             |   | Z    | AC | CY |
| Call/return                  | <b>CALL</b>  | !addr16   | 3    | 7      | –                  | $(SP - 1) \leftarrow (PC + 3)_H, (SP - 2) \leftarrow (PC + 3)_L,$<br>$PC \leftarrow \text{addr16}, SP \leftarrow SP - 2$  |      |    |    |
|                              | <b>CALLF</b> | !addr11   | 2    | 5      | –                  | $(SP - 1) \leftarrow (PC + 2)_H, (SP - 2) \leftarrow (PC + 2)_L,$<br>$PC_{15-11} \leftarrow 00001, PC_{10-0} \leftarrow \text{addr11},$<br>$SP \leftarrow SP - 2$                             |      |    |    |
|                              | <b>CALLT</b> | [addr5]   | 1    | 6      | –                  | $(SP - 1) \leftarrow (PC + 1)_H, (SP - 2) \leftarrow (PC + 1)_L,$<br>$PC_H \leftarrow (00000000, \text{addr5} + 1),$<br>$PC_L \leftarrow (00000000, \text{addr5}),$<br>$SP \leftarrow SP - 2$ |      |    |    |
|                              | <b>BRK</b>   |           | 1    | 6      | –                  | $(SP - 1) \leftarrow PSW, (SP - 2) \leftarrow (PC + 1)_H,$<br>$(SP - 3) \leftarrow (PC + 1)_L, PC_H \leftarrow (003FH),$<br>$PC_L \leftarrow (003EH), SP \leftarrow SP - 3, IE \leftarrow 0$  |      |    |    |
|                              | <b>RET</b>   |           | 1    | 6      | –                  | $PC_H \leftarrow (SP + 1), PC_L \leftarrow (SP),$<br>$SP \leftarrow SP + 2$   |      |    |    |
|                              | <b>RETI</b>  |           | 1    | 6      | –                  | $PC_H \leftarrow (SP + 1), PC_L \leftarrow (SP),$<br>$PSW \leftarrow (SP + 2), SP \leftarrow SP + 3,$<br>$NMIS \leftarrow 0$  | R    | R  | R  |
|                              | <b>RETB</b>  |           | 1    | 6      | –                  | $PC_H \leftarrow (SP + 1), PC_L \leftarrow (SP),$<br>$PSW \leftarrow (SP + 2), SP \leftarrow SP + 3$  | R    | R  | R  |
| Stack manipu-<br>late        | <b>PUSH</b>  | PSW       | 1    | 2      | –                  | $(SP - 1) \leftarrow PSW, SP \leftarrow SP - 1$   |      |    |    |
|                              |              | rp        | 1    | 4      | –                  | $(SP - 1) \leftarrow rp_H, (SP - 2) \leftarrow rp_L,$<br>$SP \leftarrow SP - 2$   |      |    |    |
|                              | <b>POP</b>   | PSW       | 1    | 2      | –                  | $PSW \leftarrow (SP), SP \leftarrow SP + 1$   | R    | R  | R  |
|                              |              | rp        | 1    | 4      | –                  | $rp_H \leftarrow (SP + 1), rp_L \leftarrow (SP),$<br>$SP \leftarrow SP + 2$   |      |    |    |
|                              | <b>MOVW</b>  | SP, #word | 4    | –      | 10                 | $SP \leftarrow \text{word}$   |      |    |    |
|                              |              | SP, AX    | 2    | –      | 8                  | $SP \leftarrow AX$  |      |    |    |
| AX, SP                       |              | 2         | –    | 8      | $AX \leftarrow SP$ |   |      |    |    |
| Uncondi-<br>tional<br>branch | <b>BR</b>    | !addr16   | 3    | 6      | –                  | $PC \leftarrow \text{addr16}$   |      |    |    |
|                              |              | \$addr16  | 2    | 6      | –                  | $PC \leftarrow PC + 2 + \text{jdisp8}$  |      |    |    |
|                              |              | AX        | 2    | 8      | –                  | $PC_H \leftarrow A, PC_L \leftarrow X$  |      |    |    |
| Conditional<br>branch        | <b>BC</b>    | \$addr16  | 2    | 6      | –                  | $PC \leftarrow PC + 2 + \text{jdisp8}$ if $CY = 1$  |      |    |    |
|                              | <b>BNC</b>   | \$addr16  | 2    | 6      | –                  | $PC \leftarrow PC + 2 + \text{jdisp8}$ if $CY = 0$  |      |    |    |
|                              | <b>BZ</b>    | \$addr16  | 2    | 6      | –                  | $PC \leftarrow PC + 2 + \text{jdisp8}$ if $Z = 1$   |      |    |    |
|                              | <b>BNZ</b>   | \$addr16  | 2    | 6      | –                  | $PC \leftarrow PC + 2 + \text{jdisp8}$ if $Z = 0$   |      |    |    |

- Notes**
1. When the internal high-speed RAM area is accessed or instruction with no data access
  2. When an area except the internal high-speed RAM area is accessed

**Remark** One instruction clock cycle is one cycle of the CPU clock ( $f_{CPU}$ ) selected by the PCC register.

| Instruction Group  | Mnemonic        | Operands            | Byte | Clock  |  | Operation  | Flag |       |
|--------------------|-----------------|---------------------|------|--------|--|--|------|-------|
|                    |                 |                     |      | Note 1 | Note 2   |  | Z    | ACC Y |
| Conditional branch | <b>BT</b>       | saddr.bit, \$addr16 | 3    | 8      | 9  | PC ← PC + 3 + jdisp8 if(saddr.bit) = 1                       |      |       |
|                    |                 | sfr.bit, \$addr16   | 4    | –      | 11   | PC ← PC + 4 + jdisp8 if sfr.bit = 1                          |      |       |
|                    |                 | A.bit, \$addr16     | 3    | 8      | –  | PC ← PC + 3 + jdisp8 if A.bit = 1                            |      |       |
|                    |                 | PSW.bit, \$addr16   | 3    | –      | 9  | PC ← PC + 3 + jdisp8 if PSW.bit = 1                          |      |       |
|                    |                 | [HL].bit, \$addr16  | 3    | 10     | 11   | PC ← PC + 3 + jdisp8 if (HL).bit = 1                         |      |       |
|                    | <b>BF</b>       | saddr.bit, \$addr16 | 4    | 10     | 11   | PC ← PC + 4 + jdisp8 if(saddr.bit) = 0                       |      |       |
|                    |                 | sfr.bit, \$addr16   | 4    | –      | 11   | PC ← PC + 4 + jdisp8 if sfr.bit = 0                          |      |       |
|                    |                 | A.bit, \$addr16     | 3    | 8      | –  | PC ← PC + 3 + jdisp8 if A.bit = 0                            |      |       |
|                    |                 | PSW.bit, \$addr16   | 4    | –      | 11   | PC ← PC + 4 + jdisp8 if PSW. bit = 0                         |      |       |
|                    |                 | [HL].bit, \$addr16  | 3    | 10     | 11   | PC ← PC + 3 + jdisp8 if (HL).bit = 0                         |      |       |
|                    | <b>BTCLR</b>    | saddr.bit, \$addr16 | 4    | 10     | 12   | PC ← PC + 4 + jdisp8 if(saddr.bit) = 1 then reset(saddr.bit) |      |       |
|                    |                 | sfr.bit, \$addr16   | 4    | –      | 12   | PC ← PC + 4 + jdisp8 if sfr.bit = 1 then reset sfr.bit       |      |       |
|                    |                 | A.bit, \$addr16     | 3    | 8      | –  | PC ← PC + 3 + jdisp8 if A.bit = 1 then reset A.bit           |      |       |
|                    |                 | PSW.bit, \$addr16   | 4    | –      | 12   | PC ← PC + 4 + jdisp8 if PSW.bit = 1 then reset PSW.bit       | ×    | ×     |
|                    |                 | [HL].bit, \$addr16  | 3    | 10     | 12   | PC ← PC + 3 + jdisp8 if (HL).bit = 1 then reset (HL).bit     |      |       |
| <b>DBNZ</b>        | B, \$addr16     | 2                   | 6    | –      | B ← B – 1, then PC ← PC + 2 + jdisp8 if B ≠ 0                  |  |      |       |
|                    | C, \$addr16     | 2                   | 6    | –      | C ← C – 1, then PC ← PC + 2 + jdisp8 if C ≠ 0                  |  |      |       |
|                    | saddr. \$addr16 | 3                   | 8    | 10     | (saddr) ← (saddr) – 1, then PC ← PC + 3 + jdisp8 if(saddr) ≠ 0 |  |      |       |
| CPU control        | <b>SEL</b>      | Rbn                 | 2    | 4      | –  | RBS1, 0 ← n  |      |       |
|                    | <b>NOP</b>      |                     | 1    | 2      | –  | No Operation   |      |       |
|                    | <b>EI</b>       |                     | 2    | –      | 6  | IE ← 1(Enable Interrupt)                                     |      |       |
|                    | <b>DI</b>       |                     | 2    | –      | 6  | IE ← 0(Disable Interrupt)                                    |      |       |
|                    | <b>HALT</b>     |                     | 2    | 6      | –  | Set HALT Mode  |      |       |
|                    | <b>STOP</b>     |                     | 2    | 6      | –  | Set STOP Mode  |      |       |

- Notes**
1. When the internal high-speed RAM area is accessed or instruction with no data access
  2. When an area except the internal high-speed RAM area is accessed

**Remark** One instruction clock cycle is one cycle of the CPU clock (f<sub>CPU</sub>) selected by the PCC register.



### 16.3 Instructions Listed by Addressing Type

**(1) 8-bit instructions**

MOV, XCH, ADD, ADDC, SUB, SUBC, AND, OR, XOR, CMP, MULU, DIVUW, INC, DEC, ROR, ROL, RORC, ROLC, ROR4, ROL4, PUSH, POP, DBNZ

| Second Operand<br>First Operand     | #byte  | A  | rNote   | sfr        | saddr   | !addr16   | PSW | [DE]       | [HL]  | [HL + byte]<br>[HL + B]<br>[HL + C]                                 | \$addr16 | 1                          | None         |
|-------------------------------------|--|--|---|------------|---|---|-----|------------|---|---|----------|----------------------------|--------------|
| A                                   | ADD<br>ADDC<br>SUB<br>SUBC<br>AND<br>OR<br>XOR<br>CMP        |  | MOV<br>XCH<br>ADD<br>ADDC<br>SUB<br>SUBC<br>AND<br>OR<br>XOR<br>CMP | MOV<br>XCH | MOV<br>XCH<br>ADD<br>ADDC<br>SUB<br>SUBC<br>AND<br>OR<br>XOR<br>CMP | MOV<br>XCH<br>ADD<br>ADDC<br>SUB<br>SUBC<br>AND<br>OR<br>XOR<br>CMP | MOV | MOV<br>XCH | MOV<br>XCH<br>ADD<br>ADDC<br>SUB<br>SUBC<br>AND<br>OR<br>XOR<br>CMP | MOV<br>XCH<br>ADD<br>ADDC<br>SUB<br>SUBC<br>AND<br>OR<br>XOR<br>CMP |          | ROR<br>ROL<br>RORC<br>ROL4 |              |
| r                                   | MOV  | MOV<br>ADD<br>ADDC<br>SUB<br>SUBC<br>AND<br>OR<br>XOR<br>CMP |   |            |   |   |     |            |   |   |          |                            | INC<br>DEC   |
| ★ B, C                              |  |  |   |            |   |   |     |            |   |   | DBNZ     |                            |              |
| sfr                                 | MOV  | MOV  |   |            |   |   |     |            |   |   |          |                            |              |
| saddr                               | MOV<br>ADD<br>ADDC<br>SUB<br>SUBC<br>AND<br>OR<br>XOR<br>CMP | MOV  |   |            |   |   |     |            |   |   | DBNZ     |                            | INC<br>DEC   |
| !addr16                             |  | MOV  |   |            |   |   |     |            |   |   |          |                            |              |
| PSW                                 | MOV  | MOV  |   |            |   |   |     |            |   |   |          |                            | PUSH<br>POP  |
| [DE]                                |  | MOV  |   |            |   |   |     |            |   |   |          |                            |              |
| [HL]                                |  | MOV  |   |            |   |   |     |            |   |   |          |                            | ROR4<br>ROL4 |
| [HL + byte]<br>[HL + B]<br>[HL + C] |  | MOV  |   |            |   |   |     |            |   |   |          |                            |              |
| X                                   |  |  |   |            |   |   |     |            |   |   |          |                            | MULU         |
| C                                   |  |  |   |            |   |   |     |            |   |   |          |                            | DIVUW        |

Note Except r = A

**(2) 16-bit instructions**

MOVW, XCHW, ADDW, SUBW, CMPW, PUSH, POP, INCW, DECW

| Second Operand<br>First Operand | #word                | AX                   | rp <sup>Note</sup> | sfrp | saddrp | !addr16 | SP   | None                        |
|---------------------------------|----------------------|----------------------|--------------------|------|--------|---------|------|-----------------------------|
| AX                              | ADDW<br>SUBW<br>CMPW |                      | MOVW<br>XCHW       | MOVW | MOVW   | MOVW    | MOVW |                             |
| rp                              | MOVW                 | MOVW <sup>Note</sup> |                    |      |        |         |      | INCW<br>DECW<br>PUSH<br>POP |
| sfrp                            | MOVW                 | MOVW                 |                    |      |        |         |      |                             |
| saddrp                          | MOVW                 | MOVW                 |                    |      |        |         |      |                             |
| !addr16                         |                      | MOVW                 |                    |      |        |         |      |                             |
| SP                              | MOVW                 | MOVW                 |                    |      |        |         |      |                             |

**Note** Only when rp = BC, DE, HL

**(3) Bit manipulation instructions**

MOV1, AND1, OR1, XOR1, SET1, CLR1, NOT1, BT, BF, BTCLR

| Second Operand<br>First Operand | A.bit                       | sfr.bit                     | saddr.bit                   | PSW.bit                     | [HL].bit                    | CY   | \$addr16          | None                 |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|------|-------------------|----------------------|
| A.bit                           |                             |                             |                             |                             |                             | MOV1 | BT<br>BF<br>BTCLR | SET1<br>CLR1         |
| sfr.bit                         |                             |                             |                             |                             |                             | MOV1 | BT<br>BF<br>BTCLR | SET1<br>CLR1         |
| saddr.bit                       |                             |                             |                             |                             |                             | MOV1 | BT<br>BF<br>BTCLR | SET1<br>CLR1         |
| PSW.bit                         |                             |                             |                             |                             |                             | MOV1 | BT<br>BF<br>BTCLR | SET1<br>CLR1         |
| [HL].bit                        |                             |                             |                             |                             |                             | MOV1 | BT<br>BF<br>BTCLR | SET1<br>CLR1         |
| CY                              | MOV1<br>AND1<br>OR1<br>XOR1 | MOV1<br>AND1<br>OR1<br>XOR1 | MOV1<br>AND1<br>OR1<br>XOR1 | MOV1<br>AND1<br>OR1<br>XOR1 | MOV1<br>AND1<br>OR1<br>XOR1 |      |                   | SET1<br>CLR1<br>NOT1 |

**(4) Call/instructions/branch instructions**

CALL, CALLF, CALLT, BR, BC, BNC, BZ, BNZ, BT, BF, BTCLR, DBNZ

| Second Operand<br>First Operand | AX | !addr16    | !addr11 | [addr5] | \$addr16                     |
|---------------------------------|----|------------|---------|---------|------------------------------|
| Basic instruction               | BR | CALL<br>BR | CALLF   | CALLT   | BR<br>BC<br>BNC<br>BZ<br>BNZ |
| Compound instruction            |    |            |         |         | BT<br>BF<br>BTCLR<br>DBNZ    |

**(5) Other instructions**

ADJBA, ADJBS, BRK, RET, RETI, RETB, SEL, NOP, EI, DI, HALT, STOP

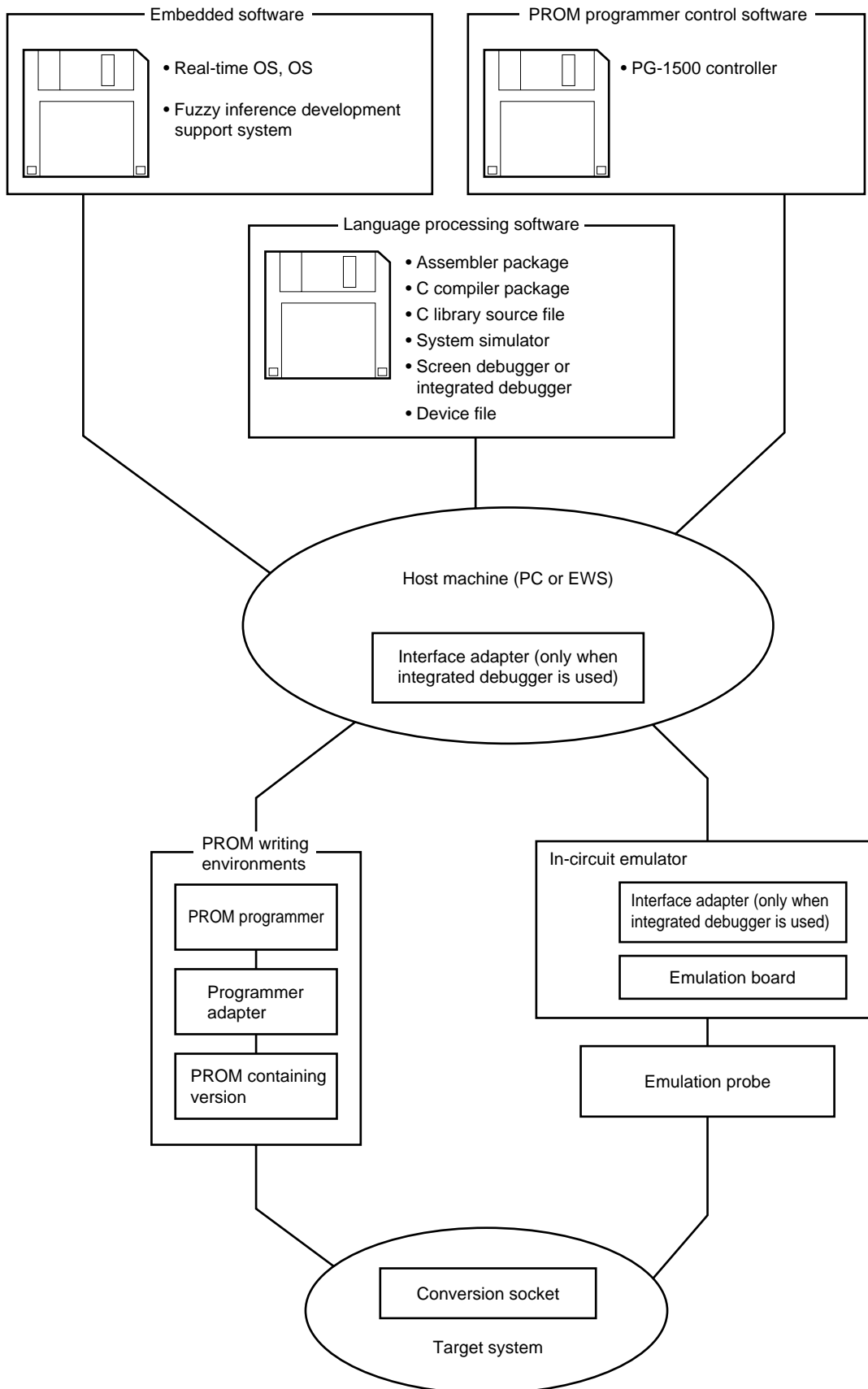
[MEMO]

## APPENDIX A DEVELOPMENT TOOLS

The following development tools are available for the development of systems which employ the  $\mu$ PD78083 subseries.

Figure A-1 shows the configuration of the development tools.

★ Figure A-1. Development Tool Configuration



**A.1 Language Processing Software**

|  |  |
|--|--|
| RA78K/0<br>Assembler Package           | This assembler converts a program written in mnemonics into an object code executable with a microprocessor.<br>Further, this assembler is provided with functions capable of automatically creating symbol tables and branch instruction optimization.<br>Used in combination with optional device file (DF78083).<br>Part Number: $\mu$ SxxxxRA78K/0 |
| CC78K/0<br>C Compiler Package          | This compiler converts a program written in C Language into an object code executable with an microcontroller.<br>Used in combination with optional assembler package (RA78K/0) and device file (DF78083).<br>Part Number: $\mu$ SxxxxCC78K/0  |
| DF78083 <sup>Note</sup><br>Device File | This is a file containing information inherent to the device.<br>Used in combination with optional RA78K/0, CC78K/0, SM78K0, ID78K0, or SD78K/0.<br>Part Number: $\mu$ SxxxxDF78083  |
| CC78K/0-L<br>C Library Source File     | This is a function source program configuring object library included in CC78K/0 C compiler.<br>Necessary for changing object library included in CC78K/0 in according to customer's specifications.<br>Part Number: $\mu$ SxxxxCC78K0-L   |

**Note** The DF78083 can be used commonly with all the RA78K/0, CC78K/0, SM78K0, ID78K0, and SD78K/0.

**Remark** xxxx of the part number differs depending on the host machine and OS used. Refer to the table below.

$\mu$ SxxxxRA78K0  
 $\mu$ SxxxxCC78K0  
 $\mu$ SxxxxDF78083  
 $\mu$ SxxxxCC78K0-L

| xxxx | Host Machine                            | OS                                  | Medium                   |
|------|---|-------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 5A13 | PC-9800 Series                          | MS-DOS                              | 3.5-inch 2HD             |
| 5A10 |   | (Ver. 3.30 to 6.2 <sup>Note</sup> ) | 5-inch 2HD               |
| 7B13 | IBM PC/AT and their compatible machines | Refer to <b>A.4</b>                 | 3.5-inch 2HC             |
| 7B10 |   |                                     | 5-inch 2HC               |
| 3H15 | HP9000 series 300™                      | HP-UX™ (rel. 7.05B)                 | Cartridge tape (QIC-24)  |
| 3P16 | HP9000 series 700™                      | HP-UX (rel. 9.01)                   | Digital audio tape (DAT) |
| 3K15 | SPARCstation™                           | SunOS™ (rel. 4.1.1)                 | Cartridge tape (QIC-24)  |
| 3M15 | EWS-4800 series (RISC)                  | EWS-UX/V (rel. 4.0)                 |                          |

**Note** The task swap function is not available with this software through the function is provided in MS-DOS version 5.0 or later.



**A.2 PROM Programming Tools**

**A.2.1 Hardware**

|  |  |
|--|--|
| PG-1500<br>PROM programmer                               | This is a PROM programmer capable of programming the single-chip microcontroller with on-chip PROM by manipulating from the stand-alone or host machine through connection of the separately available programmer adapter and the attached board. It can also program separate PROM ICs with a capacity from 256 Kbits to 4 Mbits. |
| PA-78P083CU<br>PA-78P083GB<br>PROM programmer<br>adapter | This is a PROM programmer adapter for the $\mu$ PD78P083, and is used connected to the PG-1500.<br>PA-78P083CU: 42-pin plastic shrink DIP (600 mil)<br>42-pin ceramic shrink DIP (with window) (600 mil)<br>PA-78P083GB: 44-pin plastic QFP (10 × 10 mm)   |

**A.2.2 Software**

|                    |  |
|--------------------|--|
| PG-1500 controller | This program controls the PG-1500 from the host machine through serial and/or parallel interface cable(s). |
|                    | Part Number: $\mu$ SxxxxPG1500   |

**Remark** xxxx of the part number differs depending on the host machine and OS used. Refer to the table below.

$\mu$ SxxxxPG1500

| xxxx | Host Machine                               | OS                                  | Medium       |
|------|--|-------------------------------------|--------------|
| 5A13 | PC-9800 Series                             | MS-DOS                              | 3.5-inch 2HD |
| 5A10 |  | (Ver. 3.30 to 6.2 <sup>Note</sup> ) | 5-inch 2HD   |
| 7B13 | IBM PC/AT and their<br>compatible machines | Refer to <b>A.4</b>                 | 3.5-inch 2HC |
| 7B10 |  |                                     | 5-inch 2HC   |

**Note** The task swap function is not available with this software through the function is provided in MS-DOS version 5.0 or later.

### A.3 Debugging Tools

#### A.3.1 Hardware

|   |   |   |
|---|---|---|
| ★ | IE-78000-R-A<br>In-circuit emulator<br>(supporting integrated debugger) | This in-circuit emulator helps users in debugging hardware and software of an application system that includes a 78K/0 series device. This in-circuit emulator supports integrated debugger (ID78K0). It is used with emulation probe and interface adapter that connects host machine. |
| ★ | IE-70000-98-IF-B<br>Interface adapter                                   | This is an adapter necessary when using the PC-9800 series (except notebook type) as a host machine for the IE-78000-R-A.   |
| ★ | IE-70000-98N-IF<br>Interface adapter                                    | This is an adapter and cable necessary when using notebook type PC-9800 series as a host machine for the IE-78000-R-A.  |
| ★ | IE-70000-PC-IF-B<br>Interface adapter                                   | This is an adapter necessary when using IBM PC/AT as a host machine for the IE-78000-R-A.   |
| ★ | IE-78000-R-SV3<br>Interface adapter                                     | This is an adapter and cable necessary when using EWS as a host machine for the IE-78000-R-A.<br>As Ethernet™, 10Base-5 is supported. With other mode, commercially available conversion adapter is necessary.  |
|   | IE-78000-R<br>In-circuit emulator<br>(supporting screen debugger)       | This is in-circuit emulator that debugs hardware and software when application system using 78K/0 series is developed. It supports screen debugger (SD78K/0), and is used with emulation probe. This emulator is connected to host machine or PROM programmer for efficient debugging.  |
|   | IE-78078-R-EM<br>Emulation board  | This board is used to emulate device-specific peripheral hardware (3.0 to 5.5 V), and is used with in-circuit emulator.   |
|   | IEP-78083CU-R<br>Emulation probe  | This is a probe to connect an in-circuit emulator to target sytem.<br>This probe is designed for 42-pin plastic shrink DIP (CU type) and 42-pin ceramic shrink DIP (DU type).   |
|   | EP-78083GB-R<br>Emulation probe   | This is a probe to connect an in-circuit emulator to target system.<br>This probe is designed for 44-pin plastic QFP (GB-3B4, GB-3BS-MTX types).<br>This probe set includes a 44-pin conversion socket EV-9200G-44 for easier development of target systems                             |
|   | EV-9200G-44<br>Conversion socket  | This adapter connects the EP-78083GB-R to the target system board designed for 44-pin plastic QFP (GB-3B4, GB-3BS-MTX types).   |

**Remark** EV-9200G-44s are sold in sets of five units.

A.3.2 Software (1/3)

★

|                            |   |
|----------------------------|---|
| SM78K0<br>System simulator | This simulator can debug target system at C source level or assembler level while simulating operation of target system on host machine.<br>SM78K0 runs on Windows.<br>By using SM78K0, logic and performance of application can be verified without in-circuit emulator independently of hardware development, so that development efficiency and software quality can be improved.<br>This simulator is used with optional device file (DF78083).<br><hr/> Part Number: $\mu$ SxxxxSM78K0 |
|----------------------------|---|

**Remark** xxxx of the part number differs depending on the host machine and OS used. Refer to the table below.

$\mu$ SxxxxSM78K0

| xxxx | Host Machine   | OS  | Medium       |
|------|--|---|--------------|
| AA13 | PC-9800 Series   | MS-DOS<br>(Ver. 3.30 to 6.2 <sup>Note</sup> )<br>+<br>Windows (Ver. 3.0 to 3.1) | 3.5-inch 2HD |
| AB13 | IBM PC/AT and their compatible machines<br>(Windows in Japanese) | Refer to <b>A.4</b>   | 3.5-inch 2HC |
| BB13 | IBM PC/AT and their compatible machines<br>(Windows in English)  |   |              |

**Note** The task swap function is not available with this software through the function is provided in MS-DOS version 5.0 or later.

A.3.2 Software (2/3)

|                                    |  |
|------------------------------------|--|
| ★<br>ID78K0<br>Integrated debugger | <p>This is control program that debugs 78K/0 series.</p> <p>This program employs Windows on personal computer and OSF/Motif™ on EWS as graphical user interface, and provides appearance and operability conforming to interface. In addition debugging functions supporting C language are reinforced. Trace result can be displayed at C level by using window integration function that associates source program, disassemble display, and memory display with trace result. Moreover, debugging efficiency of program using real-time OS can be enhanced by using function expansion modules such as task debugger and system performance analyzer.</p> <p>This program is used in combination with optional device file (DF78083).</p> |
|                                    | <p>Part Number: <math>\mu</math>SxxxxID78K0</p>  |

**Remark** xxxx of the part number differs depending on the host machine and OS used. Refer to the table below.

$\mu$ SxxxxID78K0

| xxxx | Host Machine  | OS   | Medium                   |
|------|---|--|--------------------------|
| AA13 | PC-9800 Series  | MS-DOS<br>(Ver. 3.30 to 6.2 <sup>Note</sup> )<br>+<br>Windows (Ver. 3.1) | 3.5-inch 2HD             |
| AB13 | IBM PC/AT and their compatible machines (Windows in Japanese) | Refer to <b>A.4</b>  | 3.5-inch 2HC             |
| BB13 | IBM PC/AT and their compatible machines (Windows in English)  |  |                          |
| 3P16 | HP9000 series 700   | HP-UX (rel. 9.01)  | Digital audio tape (DAT) |
| 3K15 | SPARCstation  | SunOS (rel. 4.1.1)   | Cartridge tape (QIC-24)  |
| 3K13 |   |  | 3.5-inch 2HC             |
| 3R16 | NEWS™ (RISC)  | NEWS-OS™ (6.1x)  | 1/4-inch CGMT            |
| 3R13 |   |  | 3.5-inch 2HC             |
| 3M15 | EWS4800 series (RISC)   | EWS-UX/V (rel. 4.0)  | Cartridge tape (QIC-24)  |

**Note** The task swap function is not available with this software through the function is provided in MS-DOS version 5.0 or later.

A.3.2 Software (3/3)

|  |  |
|--|--|
| SD78K/0<br>Screen debugger             | This program controls IE-78000-R on host machine with IE-78000-R and host machine connected with serial interface (RS-232-C).<br>It is used with optional device file (DF78083).<br>Part Number: $\mu$ SxxxxSD78K0 |
| DF78083 <sup>Note</sup><br>Device file | File containing device-specific information.<br>It is used with optional RA78K/0, CC78K/0, SM78K0, ID78K0, or SD78K/0.<br>Part Number: $\mu$ SxxxxDF78083  |

**Note** This device file can be used for any of the RA78K/0, CC78K/0, SM78K0, ID78K0, SD78K/0 devices.

**Remark** xxxx of the part number differs depending on the host machine and OS used. Refer to the table below.

$\mu$ SxxxxSD78K0

$\mu$ SxxxxDF78083

| xxxx | Host Machine  | OS                                  | Medium       |
|------|---|-------------------------------------|--------------|
| 5A13 | PC-9800 Series  | MS-DOS                              | 3.5-inch 2HD |
| 5A10 |   | (Ver. 3.30 to 6.2 <sup>Note</sup> ) | 5-inch 2HD   |
| 7B13 | IBM PC/AT and their compatible machines (Windows in Japanese) | Refer to <b>A.4</b>                 | 3.5-inch 2HC |
| 7B10 |   |                                     | 5-inch 2HC   |

**Note** The task swap function is not available with this software through the function is provided in MS-DOS version 5.0 or later.

★ **A.4 OS for IBM PC**

As the OS for IBM PC, the following is supported.

To run SM78K0, ID78K0, or FE9200 (refer to **B.2 Fuzzy Inference Development Support System**), Windows (Ver. 3.0 to Ver. 3.1) is necessary.

| OS       | Version  |
|----------|--|
| PC DOS   | Ver. 5.02 to 6.3                                 |
|          | J6.1/V <sup>Note</sup> to J6.3/V <sup>Note</sup> |
| IBM DOS™ | J5.02/V <sup>Note</sup>                          |
| MS-DOS   | Ver. 5.0 to 6.22                                 |
|          | 5.0/V <sup>Note</sup> to 6.2/V <sup>Note</sup>   |

**Note** Only English mode is supported.

**Caution** The task swap function is not available with this software through the function is provided in MS-DOS version 5.0 or later.

**A.5 System-Upgrade Method from Other In-Circuit Emulators to 78K/0 Series In-Circuit Emulator**

If you already have an in-circuit emulator for the 78K series or the 75X/XL series, you can use that in-circuit emulator as the equivalent of the 78K/0 series in-circuit emulator IE-78000-R or IE-78000-R-A by replacing the internal break board with the IE-78000-R-BK.

**Table A-1. System-Up Method from Other In-Circuit Emulator to IE-78000-R**

| Series Name    | In-Circuit Emulator Owned   | Board to be Purchased |
|----------------|---|-----------------------|
| 75X/XL series  | IE-75000-R <sup>Note</sup> , IE-75001-R   | IE-78000-R-BK         |
| 78K/I series   | IE-78130-R, IE-78140-R  |                       |
| 78K/II series  | IE-78230-R <sup>Note</sup> , IE-78230-R-A,<br>IE-78240-R <sup>Note</sup> , IE-78240-R-A |                       |
| 78K/III seires | IE-78320-R <sup>Note</sup> , IE-78327-R,<br>IE-78330-R, IE-78350-R                      |                       |

**Note** Maintenance product

★

**Table A-2. System-Up Method from Other In-Circuit Emulator to IE-78000-R-A**

| Series Name    | In-Circuit Emulator Owned   | Board to be Purchased           |
|----------------|---|---------------------------------|
| 75X/XL series  | IE-75000-R <sup>Note 1</sup> , IE-75001-R   | IE-78000-R-BK <sup>Note 2</sup> |
| 78K/I series   | IE-78130-R, IE-78140-R  |                                 |
| 78K/II series  | IE-78230-R <sup>Note 1</sup> , IE-78230-R-A,<br>IE-78240-R <sup>Note 1</sup> , IE-78240-R-A |                                 |
| 78K/III seires | IE-78320-R <sup>Note 1</sup> , IE-78327-R,<br>IE-78330-R, IE-78350-R                        |                                 |
| 78K/0 series   | IE-78000-R  | __ <sup>Note 2</sup>            |

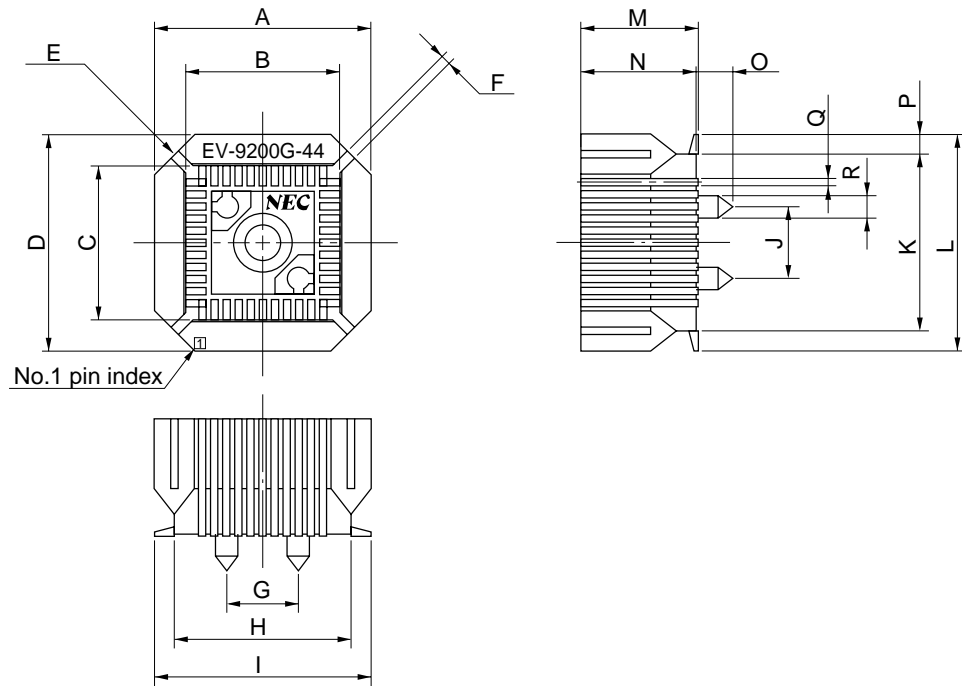
**Notes 1.** Maintenance product

**2.** Partial remodeling of the frame of the in-circuit emulator and replacement of the control/trace board with a supervisor board must be done by NEC.

Drawing and Footprint for Conversion Socket (EV-9200G-44)

Figure A-2. EV-9200G-44 Drawing (For Reference Only)

Based on EV-9200G-44  
 (1) Package drawing (in mm)



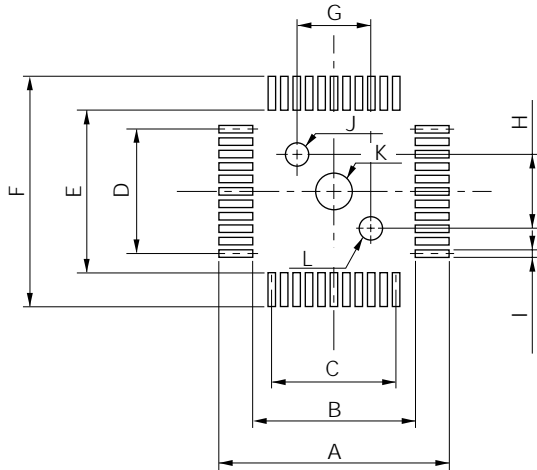
EV-9200G-44-G0E

| ITEM | MILLIMETERS | INCHES                                    |
|------|-------------|---|
| A    | 15.0        | 0.591                                     |
| B    | 10.3        | 0.406                                     |
| C    | 10.3        | 0.406                                     |
| D    | 15.0        | 0.591                                     |
| E    | 4-C 3.0     | 4-C 0.118                                 |
| F    | 0.8         | 0.031                                     |
| G    | 5.0         | 0.197                                     |
| H    | 12.0        | 0.472                                     |
| I    | 14.7        | 0.579                                     |
| J    | 5.0         | 0.197                                     |
| K    | 12.0        | 0.472                                     |
| L    | 14.7        | 0.579                                     |
| M    | 8.0         | 0.315                                     |
| N    | 7.8         | 0.307                                     |
| O    | 2.0         | 0.079                                     |
| P    | 1.35        | 0.053                                     |
| Q    | 0.35±0.1    | 0.014 <sup>+0.004</sup> <sub>-0.005</sub> |
| R    | φ1.5        | φ0.059                                    |



Figure A-3. EV-9200G-44 Footprint (For Reference Only)

Based on EV-9200G-44  
(2) Pad drawing (in mm)



EV-9200G-44-P1E

| ITEM | MILLIMETERS                             | INCHES   |
|------|---|--|
| A    | 15.7                                    | 0.618  |
| B    | 11.0                                    | 0.433  |
| C    | $0.8 \pm 0.02 \times 10 = 8.0 \pm 0.05$ | $0.031^{+0.002}_{-0.001} \times 0.394 = 0.315^{+0.002}_{-0.002}$ |
| D    | $0.8 \pm 0.02 \times 10 = 8.0 \pm 0.05$ | $0.031^{+0.002}_{-0.001} \times 0.394 = 0.315^{+0.002}_{-0.002}$ |
| E    | 11.0                                    | 0.433  |
| F    | 15.7                                    | 0.618  |
| G    | $5.00 \pm 0.08$                         | $0.197^{+0.003}_{-0.004}$  |
| H    | $5.00 \pm 0.08$                         | $0.197^{+0.003}_{-0.004}$  |
| I    | $0.5 \pm 0.02$                          | $0.02^{+0.001}_{-0.002}$   |
| J    | $\phi 1.57 \pm 0.03$                    | $\phi 0.062^{+0.001}_{-0.002}$                                   |
| K    | $\phi 2.2 \pm 0.1$                      | $\phi 0.087^{+0.004}_{-0.005}$                                   |
| L    | $\phi 1.57 \pm 0.03$                    | $\phi 0.062^{+0.001}_{-0.002}$                                   |

**Caution** Dimensions of mount pad for EV-9200 and that for target device (QFP) may be different in some parts. For the recommended mount pad dimensions for QFP, refer to "SEMICONDUCTOR DEVICE MOUNTING TECHNOLOGY MANUAL" (C10535E).

## APPENDIX B EMBEDDED SOFTWARE

This section describes the embedded software which are provided for the  $\mu$ PD78083 subseries to allow users to develop and maintain the application program for these subseries.

★ B.1 Real-time OS

|              |  |
|--------------|--|
| MX78K0<br>OS | <p>μTRON-specification subset OS. Nucleus of MX78K0 is supplied.</p> <p>This OS performs task management, event management, and time management. It controls the task execution sequence for task management and selects the task to be executed next.</p> |
|              | <p>Part Number: μS××××MX78K0-ΔΔΔ</p>   |

**Remark** ×××× and ΔΔΔ of the part number differs depending on the host machine and operating system used. Refer to the table below.

μS××××MX78K0-ΔΔΔ

| ΔΔΔ | Product outline        | Note  |
|-----|------------------------|---|
| 001 | Evaluation object      | Use for experimental production.  |
| ××  | Mass-production object | Use for mass production.  |
| S01 | Source program         | Can be purchased only when object for mass production has been purchased. |

| ×××× | Host Machine                            | OS                                  | Medium                   |
|------|---|-------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 5A13 | PC-9800 Series                          | MS-DOS                              | 3.5-inch 2HD             |
| 5A10 |   | (Ver. 3.30 to 6.2 <sup>Note</sup> ) | 5-inch 2HD               |
| 7B13 | IBM PC/AT and their compatible machines | Refer to <b>A.4</b>                 | 3.5-inch 2HC             |
| 7B10 |   |                                     | 5-inch 2HC               |
| 3H15 | HP9000 series 300                       | HP-UX (rel. 7.05B)                  | Cartridge tape (QIC-24)  |
| 3P16 | HP9000 series 700                       | HP-UX (rel. 9.01)                   | Digital audio tape (DAT) |
| 3K15 | SPARCstation                            | SunOS (rel. 4.1.1)                  | Cartridge tape (QIC-24)  |
| 3M15 | EWS4800 series (RISC)                   | EWS-UX/V (rel. 4.0)                 |                          |

**Note** The task swap function is not available with this software through the function is provided in MS-DOS version 5.0 or later.

**B.2 Fuzzy Inference Development Support System**

|  |   |
|--|---|
| FE9000/FE9200<br>Fuzzy Knowledge Data<br>Creation Tool | This program supports input of fuzzy knowledge data (fuzzy rule and membership function), editing (edit), and evaluation (simulation) FE9200 operations on Windows. |
|  | Part Number: $\mu S_{xxxx}$ FE9000 (PC-9800 series)<br>$\mu S_{xxxx}$ FE9200 (IBM PC/AT and their compatible machines)  |
| FT9080/FT9085<br>Translator                            | This program converts fuzzy knowledge data obtained by using fuzzy knowledge data preparation tool to RA78K/0 assembler source program.                             |
|  | Part Number: $\mu S_{xxxx}$ FT9080 (PC-9800 series)<br>$\mu S_{xxxx}$ FT9085 (IBM PC/AT and their compatible machines)  |
| FI78K0<br>Fuzzy Inference Module                       | This program executes fuzzy inference by linking fuzzy knowledge data converted by translator.  |
|  | Part Number: $\mu S_{xxxx}$ FI78K0 (PC-9800 series, IBM PC/AT and their compatible machines)  |
| FD78K0<br>Fuzzy Inference<br>Debugger                  | This software supports evaluating and adjusting fuzzy knowledge data at hardware level by using in-circuit emulator.  |
|  | Part Number: $\mu S_{xxxx}$ FD78K0 (PC-9800 series, IBM PC/AT and their compatible machines)  |

**Remark** xxxx of the part number differs depending on the host machine and operating system used. Refer to the table below.

$\mu S_{xxxx}$ FE9000  
 $\mu S_{xxxx}$ FT9080  
 $\mu S_{xxxx}$ FI78K0  
 $\mu S_{xxxx}$ FD78K0

| xxxx | Host Machine   | OS                                   | Medium       |
|------|----------------|--------------------------------------|--------------|
| 5A13 | PC-9800 Series | MS-DOS                               | 3.5-inch 2HD |
| 5A10 |                | (Ver. 3.30 to 6.2 <sup>Note2</sup> ) | 5-inch 2HD   |

**Note** The task swap function is not available with this software through the function is provided in MS-DOS version 5.0 or later.

$\mu S_{xxxx}$ FE9200  
 $\mu S_{xxxx}$ FT9085  
 $\mu S_{xxxx}$ FI78K0  
 $\mu S_{xxxx}$ FD78K0

| xxxx | Host Machine                               | OS                  | Medium       |
|------|--|---------------------|--------------|
| 7B13 | IBM PC/AT and their<br>compatible machines | Refer to <b>A.4</b> | 3.5-inch 2HC |
| 7B10 |  |                     | 5-inch 2HC   |

[MEMO]

## APPENDIX C REGISTER INDEX

### C.1 Register Index

|  |                    |
|--|--------------------|
| 8-bit timer mode control register (TMC5) .....             | 87                 |
| 8-bit timer register 5 (TM5) .....                         | 79, 84             |
| 8-bit timer register 6 (TM6) .....                         | 79, 84             |
| [A]  |                    |
| ADCR: A/D conversion result register .....                 | 121                |
| ADIS: A/D converter input select register .....            | 124                |
| ADM: A/D converter mode register .....                     | 122                |
| ASIM: Asynchronous serial interface mode register .....    | 141, 149, 151      |
| ASIS: Asynchronous serial interface status register .....  | 143, 152, 164      |
| [B]  |                    |
| BRGC: Baud rate generator control register .....           | 144, 153, 165      |
| [C]  |                    |
| CR50: Compare registers 50 .....                           | 84                 |
| CR60: Compare registers 60 .....                           | 84                 |
| CSIM2: Serial operating mode register 2 .....              | 140, 148, 150, 163 |
| [E]  |                    |
| External interrupt mode register (INTM0) .....             | 179                |
| External interrupt mode register (INTM1) .....             | 125, 179           |
| [I]  |                    |
| IF0H: Interrupt request flag register 0H .....             | 175, 176           |
| IF0L: Interrupt request flag register 0L .....             | 175, 176           |
| IF1L: Interrupt request flag register 1L .....             | 175, 176           |
| IMS: Memory size switching register .....                  | 206                |
| INTM0: External interrupt mode register 0 .....            | 175, 179           |
| INTM1: External interrupt mode register 1 .....            | 125, 175, 179      |
| Interrupt mask flag register 0H (MK0H) .....               | 175, 177           |
| Interrupt mask flag register 0L (MK0L) .....               | 175, 177           |
| Interrupt mask flag register 1L (MK1L) .....               | 175, 177           |
| [M]  |                    |
| MK0H: Interrupt mask flag register 0H .....                | 175, 177           |
| MK0L: Interrupt mask flag register 0L .....                | 175, 177           |
| MK1L: Interrupt mask flag register 1L .....                | 175, 177           |
| Memory size switching register (IMS) .....                 | 206                |
| [O]  |                    |
| OSMS: Oscillation mode selection register .....            | 71, 72, 76         |
| OSTS: Oscillation stabilization time select register ..... | 194                |

|       |   |
|-------|---|
| [P]   |   |
| P0:   | Port0 ..... 17, 55  |
| P1:   | Port1 ..... 17, 57  |
| P3:   | Port3 ..... 18, 58  |
| P5:   | Port5 ..... 18, 59  |
| P7:   | Port7 ..... 19, 60  |
| P10:  | Port10 ..... 19, 62   |
| PCC:  | Processor clock control register ..... 71, 76, 77                 |
| PM0:  | Port mode register 0 ..... 63                                     |
| PM1:  | Port mode register 1 ..... 63                                     |
| PM3:  | Port mode register 3 ..... 63, 114, 118                           |
| PM5:  | Port mode register 5 ..... 63                                     |
| PM7:  | Port mode register 7 ..... 63                                     |
| PM10: | Port mode register 10 ..... 63, 89                                |
| PR0H: | Priority specify flag register 0H ..... 175, 178                  |
| PR0L: | Priority specify flag register 0L ..... 175, 178                  |
| PR1L: | Priority specify flag register 1L ..... 175, 178                  |
| PSW:  | Program status word ..... 33, 175, 180                            |
| PUOH: | Pull-up resistor option register H ..... 66                       |
| PUOL: | Pull-up resistor option register L ..... 66                       |
| [R]   |   |
| RXB:  | Receive buffer register ..... 139                                 |
| [S]   |   |
| SAR:  | Successive approximation register ..... 121                       |
| SFR:  | Special-function register ..... 29, 37, 49                        |
|       | Serial operating mode register 2 (CSIM2) ..... 140, 148, 150, 163 |
| [T]   |   |
| TCL0: | Timer clock select register 0 ..... 113                           |
| TCL2: | Timer clock select register 2 ..... 106, 116                      |
| TCL5: | Timer clock select register 5 ..... 84                            |
| TCL6: | Timer clock select register 6 ..... 86                            |
| TM5:  | 8-bit timer register 5 ..... 79, 84                               |
| TM6:  | 8-bit timer register 6 ..... 79, 84                               |
| TMC5: | 8-bit timer mode control register 5 ..... 87                      |
| TMC6: | 8-bit timer mode control register 6 ..... 88                      |
| TXS:  | Transmit shift register ..... 139                                 |
| [W]   |   |
| WDTM: | Watchdog timer mode register ..... 79, 103, 108                   |

## APPENDIX D REVISION HISTORY

Major revisions by edition and revised chapters are shown below.

| Edition   | Major revisions from previous version   | Revised Chapter                               |
|---|---|---|
| 2nd   | The following products have been already developed<br>$\mu$ PD78081CU-xxx, 78081GB-xxx-3B4, 78082CU-xxx,<br>78082GB-xxx-3B4, 78P083CU, 78P083DU, 78P083GB-3B4   | Throughout                                    |
|   | The following products have been added<br>$\mu$ PD78081GB-xxx-3BS-MTX, 78082GB-xxx-3B4-MTX,<br>780P083GB-3BS-MTX, 78081GB(A)-xxx-3B4,78082GB(A)-xxx-3B4,<br>78P083CU(A), 78P083GB(A)-3B4, 78P083GB(A)-3BS-MTX,<br>78081GB(A2)-xxx-3B4 |   |
|   | Power voltage changed to $V_{DD} = 1.8$ to $5.5V$ .   |   |
|   | <b>1.6 78K/0 Series Development</b> has been changed.   | <b>CHAPTER 1 OUTLINE</b>                      |
|   | <b>1.9 Differences between the <math>\mu</math>PD78081, 78082, and 78P083, the <math>\mu</math>PD78081(A), 78082(A), and 78P083(A), and the <math>\mu</math>PD78081(A2)</b> has been added.   |   |
|   | Cautions regarding the use of functions in common with <b>2.2.5 (2) (d) ASCK</b> has been added.  | <b>CHAPTER 2 PIN FUNCTION</b>                 |
|   | Cautions concerning the Write to OSMS Command has been added to <b>5.3 (2) Oscillation mode select register (OSMS)</b> .  | <b>CHAPTER 5 CLOCK GENERATOR</b>              |
|   | Cautions concerning external clock input in <b>5.4.1 Main system clock oscillation</b> has been changed.  |   |
|   | <b>Figure 7-3. Watchdog Timer Mode Register Format</b> , notes and cautions have been added.  | <b>CHAPTER 7 WATCHDOG TIMER</b>               |
|   | Description of <b>7.4.2 Interval timer operation</b> has been changed.  |   |
|   | Cautions with regard to rewriting TCL0 to other than same data has been added to <b>8.3 (1) Timer clock select register 0 (TCL0)</b> .  | <b>CHAPTER 8 CLOCK OUTPUT CONTROL CIRCUIT</b> |
|   | The HSC bit has been added to the A/D Converter Mode Register in <b>Figure10-1. A/D Converter Block Diagram</b> .   | <b>CHAPTER 10 A/D CONVERTER</b>               |
|   | <b>10.3 (1) A/D converter mode register (ADM), 13.1.1 Standby function, and Cautions</b> have been added.   |   |
|   | <b>Figure 11-1. Serial Interface Channel 2 Block Diagram</b> has been corrected.  | <b>CHAPTER 11 SERIAL INTERFACE CHANNEL 2</b>  |
|   | <b>11.3 (4) (a), 11.4.2 (1) (d) (i) Generation of baud rate transmit/receive clock by means of main system clock</b> have been added. 76800 bps has been added to baud rate generated from the main system clock.                     |   |
|   | <b>Figure 11-10. Receive Error Timing</b> has been corrected.   |   |
|   | <b>11.4.3 (c) Baud rate generator control register (BRGC)</b> has been added.   |   |
| <b>15.1 Memory Size Switching Register</b> has been changed from W to R/W.  | <b>CHAPTER 15 <math>\mu</math>PD78P083</b>  |   |
| Items and cautions have been added to <b>Table 15-1. Differences between the <math>\mu</math>PD78P083 and Mask ROM Versions</b> . |   |   |
| A description of the QTOP icon has been added to <b>15.5 Screening of One-Time PROM Versions</b> .                                |   |   |



**APPENDIX D REVISION HISTORY**

| Edition | Major revisions from previous version  | Revised Chapter                     |
|---------|--|-------------------------------------|
| 2nd     | <b>Figure A-1. Development Tool Configuration</b> has been changed.  | <b>APPENDIX A DEVELOPMENT TOOLS</b> |
|         | <b>APPENDIX A DEVELOPMENT TOOLS</b><br>The following Development Tools have been added:<br>IE-78000-R-A, IE-70000-98-IF-B, IE-70000-98-N-IF,<br>IE-70000-PC-IF-B, IE-78000-R-SV3, SM78K0, ID78K0 |                                     |
|         | <b>A.4 OS for IBM PC</b> has been added.   |                                     |
|         | <b>Table A-2. System-Up Method from Other In-Circuit Emulator to IE-78000-R-A</b> has been added.  |                                     |
|         | <b>B.1 Real-time OS</b> has been added.  | <b>APPENDIX B EMBEDDED SOFTWARE</b> |

## Facsimile Message

From:

Name

Company

Tel.

FAX

Address

Although NEC has taken all possible steps to ensure that the documentation supplied to our customers is complete, bug free and up-to-date, we readily accept that errors may occur. Despite all the care and precautions we've taken, you may encounter problems in the documentation. Please complete this form whenever you'd like to report errors or suggest improvements to us.

*Thank you for your kind support.*

**North America**

NEC Electronics Inc.  
Corporate Communications Dept.  
Fax: 1-800-729-9288  
1-408-588-6130

**Hong Kong, Philippines, Oceania**

NEC Electronics Hong Kong Ltd.  
Fax: +852-2886-9022/9044

**Asian Nations except Philippines**

NEC Electronics Singapore Pte. Ltd.  
Fax: +65-250-3583

**Europe**

NEC Electronics (Europe) GmbH  
Technical Documentation Dept.  
Fax: +49-211-6503-274

**Korea**

NEC Electronics Hong Kong Ltd.  
Seoul Branch  
Fax: 02-528-4411

**Japan**

NEC Corporation  
Semiconductor Solution Engineering Division  
Technical Information Support Dept.  
Fax: 044-548-7900

**South America**

NEC do Brasil S.A.  
Fax: +55-11-889-1689

**Taiwan**

NEC Electronics Taiwan Ltd.  
Fax: 02-719-5951

I would like to report the following error/make the following suggestion:

Document title: \_\_\_\_\_

Document number: \_\_\_\_\_ Page number: \_\_\_\_\_

If possible, please fax the referenced page or drawing.

| Document Rating    | Excellent                | Good                     | Acceptable               | Poor                     |
|--------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| Clarity            | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Technical Accuracy | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Organization       | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |

## Free Manuals Download Website

<http://myh66.com>

<http://usermanuals.us>

<http://www.somanuals.com>

<http://www.4manuals.cc>

<http://www.manual-lib.com>

<http://www.404manual.com>

<http://www.luxmanual.com>

<http://aubethermostatmanual.com>

Golf course search by state

<http://golfingnear.com>

Email search by domain

<http://emailbydomain.com>

Auto manuals search

<http://auto.somanuals.com>

TV manuals search

<http://tv.somanuals.com>